A compendious history of the Goths, Swedes, and Vandals, and other northern nations / Written by Olaus Magnus.

Contributors

Olaus, Magnus, Archbishop of Uppsala, 1490-1557. Streater, John, -1677. Morris, William, 1834-1896

Publication/Creation

London: Printed by J. Streater, and sold by H. Mosely [etc.], 1658.

Persistent URL

https://wellcomecollection.org/works/a64xhthq

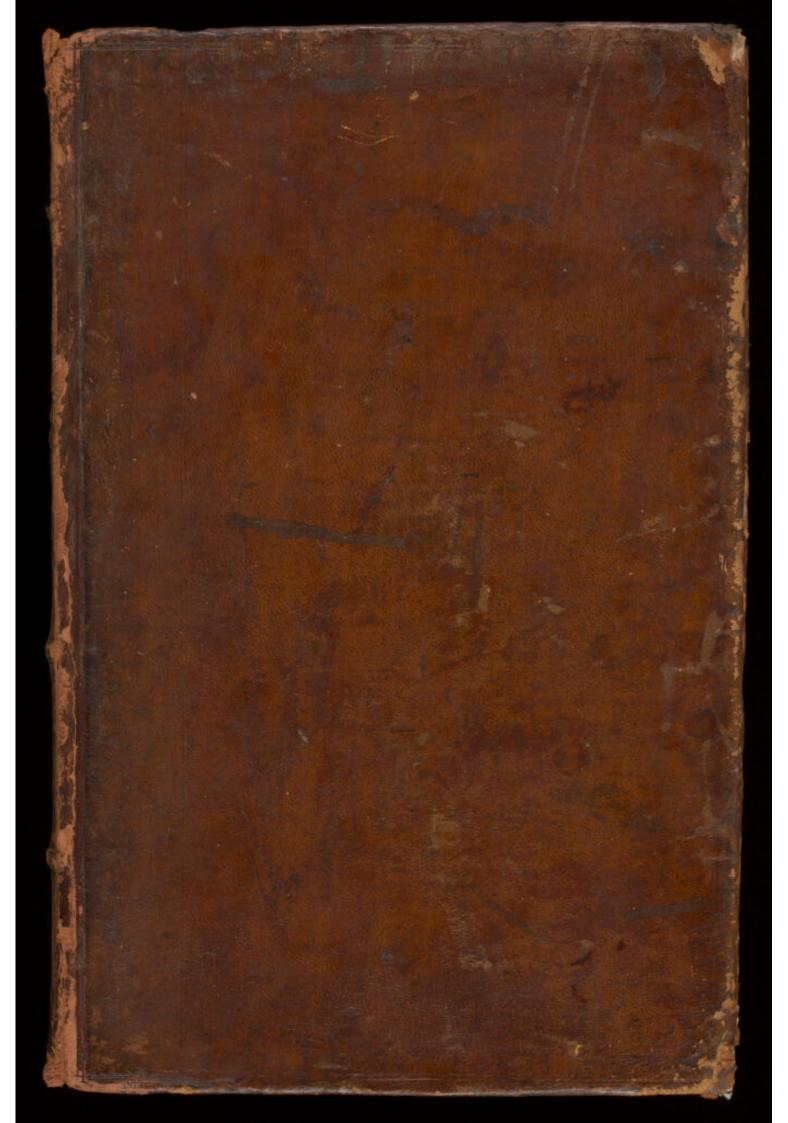
License and attribution

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.

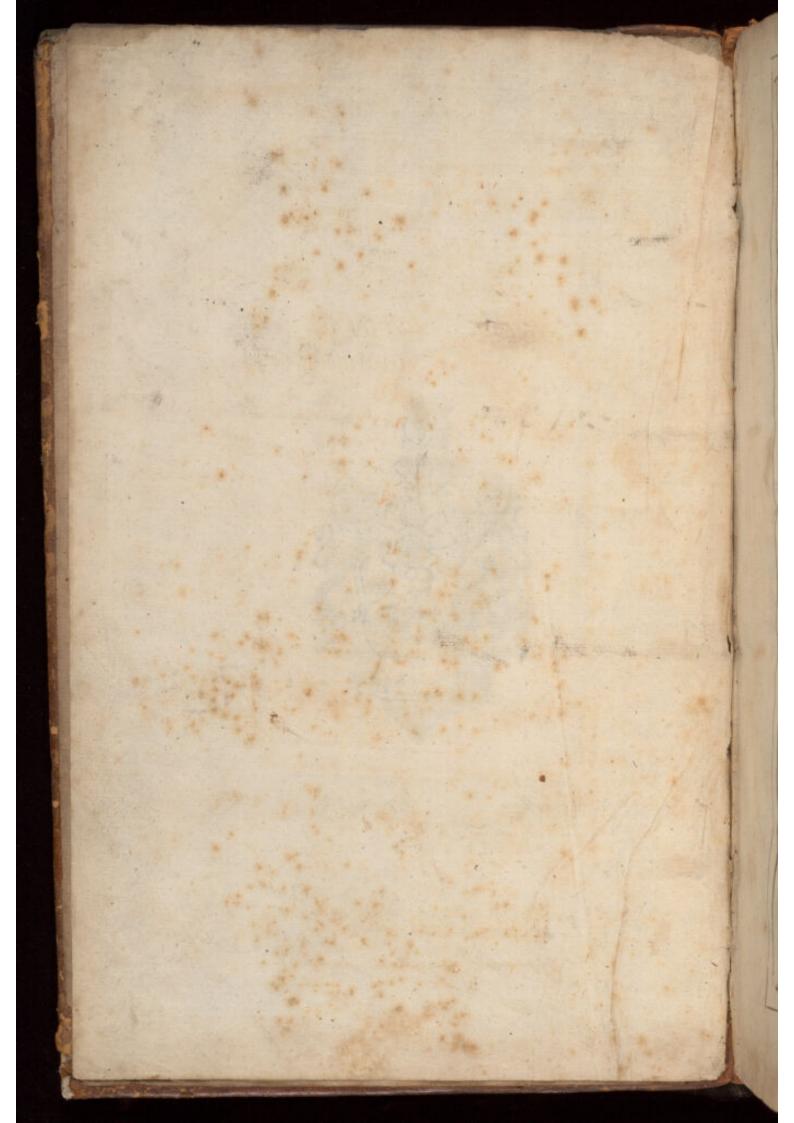


Wellcome Collection 183 Euston Road London NW1 2BE UK T +44 (0)20 7611 8722 E library@wellcomecollection.org https://wellcomecollection.org





3 2.550



A Compendious

HISTORY

OF THE

Goths, Syvedes, & Vandals,

AND

Other Northern Nations.

WRITTEN BY

Olaus Magnus,

Arch-Bishop of

UPSALL.

And Metropolitan of

SVVEDEN.

LONDON:

Printed by 3. Streater, and are to be fold by Humphrey Mofely, George Sambridge, Henry Twiford, Tho: Dring, John Place, and Henry Haringman, 1658.



RIGHT HONOUR ABLE,

Bulltrode Wilder of the ricks of the ricks of the range Eccentricks

ate Lord. Ambaffador to the Crown of Feafis MariNed Casus and I rades of

these Northern Mations: together with bor-

My Lord is clovels of Divels, is brown will Tis your honour, to be the great Patron of Learning; and its Proselites, when Kings (Saith an Ancient) be Philosophers, then Kingdoms enjoy the fruit of Learned Peace; the same may be said of inferiour Princes in their Spheres, the Europian World is sufficient Witness of Your polite Accomplishments, both infused and acquired, whereby You have shined like another Cassopeian Star in the Swedish Hemisphere: Yourown Native Countrey received the Reflexion of Your Wisdom, in that sirm Peace and Alliance we enjoy with that Heroick and Warlike Prince, the present Soveraign Commander of those famous Countries and Territories, described in this Treatise; whose Martial Progenitors destroyed the puissant Empire of Rome, and were the Hammer of Gods wrath, to break in pieces the Italian Luxury, and frowned the great Citie into ashes: Wherefore, it belongeth of right to Your Honour, to patronize the Description

Description of those Countries, in our own Language, especially, seeing that so Learned a Prelate, Prince of the Gowne-men in those Territories, bath in this Elaborate Work exposed to publick view, the Acts of their famous Heroes, the strange Eccentrick Customs, Fashions, Attire, Sports, Battels, Feafts, Marriages, Religion, and Trades of these Northern Nations: together with borrid Apparitions of Divels, the Antick Prestigations of Conjurers, and Magical Inchantments sthe Rarities and Observables of all the Four Elements; but especially the ripping up of the Bowels and Interels of Nature, in their various and admirable Minerals, with many other Stupendious Relations, that create excellent delight and wonder in the diligent and curious Inquirer. The Translation whereof, being not able to abide the Censure of Your scute Judgment: Yet being the Instrument and occasion of its Publication to the World in our Native Tongue, I have made bold humbly to present it to your Lordships acceptance, being confident, that under the Badom of Your Patronage, who have been, doubtless, an Eye-Witness of many of these Grand Wonders, it will shine with the more Orient Lustre.

Description

Your Lordships, in all due observance,

BOOK I.

CHAP, I. A Descriptionof Biarmia. 2 A Description of Finmarck. The Description of Scrichnnia. ibid. 4 Of the vehemency of the Southern Wind. 5 Of the violence of North-Winds. ib. 6 The divers Effects of Thunder and L chining in the Northern parts, 4 7 Of the fierceness of Cold. ibid. 8 Of Frosts and the falling of Snow. 9 Of the variety of from and glaffes. ib. 10 Of the Forts of Snow made by young people. 11 Of the running of Horses upon for Cloaks. 12 Of the running of men upon the Ice for a wager. 13 Of the Inns upon the Ice for Travellers. 14 Of the Passage upon the Ice between the Gulphs. 15 Of Instruments for the Ice. 16 Of the Warlike Obelisks of the Goths, and Stone-Monuments raifed. 17 Of Obelisks for Sepulchres. ib. 18 Of Stones with Figures. 19 Of Dials with shadows. 13 20 Of Sticks to design the Times by. 21 Of the Goths Alphabet.

BOOK II.

Chap. 1.	OfVe	ins of	Brimstone,	and
Combust	ion of t	he W	aters,	15

A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR
2 Of the admirable nation of some Moun-
taine 16
tains. 3 A Description of Iceland, and of the
Nation there, hoge A O i ibid.
a cot the hamille land of the hellow
4 Of the horrible found of the hollow
Caves by the Shores of the Sea. 17
5 Of the Rock of the Sea- Monk. 18
6 Of the Crowned Rock and the multi-
inde of Fish. 7 Of the flowing and ebbing of the Sez.
I all the flaming and coping of the 2cr.
8 Of Charybdis, and the wonderful Na-
town of Lea
of the Lands of the
9 Of the Leather-ships made of Hides,
used by the Pyrats of Greenland, 20
10 Of the inscrutable depths of the Coasts
of Norway. ibid.
11 Of the Ports of Iron Rings. 21
12 Of the dangerous passage of the Moun-
tains, Scars and Sula, between Swe-
den and Norway. ibid.
13 Of the Statues on the Wayes, in the
Snomey Mountains, 22
14 Of Passage in the Dark, 23
15 Of Lights, and Pitch Torches. 16.
16 Of the breaking forth of Standing- Waters. 24 17 Of the three famous Lakes of the Goths. ib. 18 Of dangerous Caves. 25
Waters.
17 Of the three famous Lakes of the
Goths. ib.
18 Of dangerous Caves. 25
+9 Of the excellent Antiquity of whe
Kingly Fort Agranes of the Vestro-
goths. 26
20 Of the wonderful Garden of the Moun-
tain Kindaberg, zear the faid Cuftle.

21 Of the beauty and pienty of the Island

22 Of the famous Island of the Goths

23 Of the Rucklers of Princes, engraven upon the Mountains of Hanga. 30

30 Of

Elandia of the Gothel

called Gothland.

The second secon	
24-Of the Mountains with Helmets.	The second second
25 Of the Straits in the Stoney-Ports	
22 93 111 1111111 3101169-1-0113	POOKIT WAR
26 Of Stoney-Rocks, and the dangerou	BOOKIV.
passagethrough Idebenckia, ibid	
27 Of Swift Torrents. 32	
28 Of the divers Forms of Stones upon	Chap. 1. Of the unbappy Battail of Reg-
the Coafes. 29 Of the Scones of Giants, and Springs	nerus King of Denmark, 52
29 Of the Stones of Grants, and Springs	2 Of the cruelty of the wild Inhabitants.
of Waters. ibid.	53.
110	3 Again concerning the cruelty of thefe
anoM and BOOK H. als als To	Wild men. 54
G.F. Commission of the commiss	4 Of the Five-fold Speech of the Nor-thern Kingdoms. ibid.
A Deferieur of Ic. one, and fin	5 Of bartring of Commodisies without
Chap. 1. Of the Superflicious Worthip	Moneys.
of the Pagans of Littuania, and 10 36	6 Of Fairs upon the Ice. 55
of the Superflicious Worthip of men	7 Of the Marriage of the Laplanders
under the Pole and I was all 1037	by fire and flint. 57
3 Of the three greater gods of the Goths.	
4 Ofthethreeleffer Godr. A ibid.	y of their Exercises by Moon-Lights.
5 Of the magnificent Temple of the Nor-	10 Of their Ships, Bands, and Reets,
therh gods, white man and 1010 39	bound together
6 Of the Religion, and Sacrificer of the	bound together. 59 11 Of the Art of shooting with the Boyre.
Goths, and aquilles to Jali 140	60
7- Of the Goths Superstition about	12 Of the hunting of the Laplanders,
Thunder, and the second of the	anner reason want to tree at the ibid.
8 Of their fighting against the Gods.	13 Of Horses passing over Snowie Monn-
9 Of the Fatal Siftens and Nimphs.	Jaims, 61
. bidi wa Sen ama bulu congress wee-	of the aangerous pallage between the
10 Of the Night-dances of the Fairies	Mountains, ibid. 15 Of the Law of killing Crows. 62
and Ghosts m and med ali 10 43	16 Of the Baprizing of Children of the
11 Of the War against the Fauni.	Wild Inhabitants, ibid.
.SidD Fraging anthe Dark.	17. Of the Conversion of North and East
12 Of D vination. 44	Finland, and their great Hospitality,
13. Of the Mugical Art of Ericus,	of the land in the 63
with his Windy-Cap, and af others.	to the ist extended the distriction
14 Of Women-Witches. 45	POOK W about
15 Of the Conjurers and Witches in Fin-	BOOK V.
land. 47	
16 Of the Magical Instruments of Both-	Chap.1. Of Giants. 64
nia. 48	2 Of the difference of Giants and Cham-
17 Of the Sea-Magicians, ibid.	pions. 65
18 Of the same Magicians, and the	3 Of the Sobriety of Giants and Cham-
like. 49	pions. 66
19 Of a Magician bound. ibid.	4 Of the Virtues of the most valiant
20 Of the pun shment for Witches, 50 21 Of the hurts done by the Devils, 51	Starchaterus. 67
or been proceeding	5 Of the Patronage he afforded to the afflicted, 68
Charles of Princes or process	AND THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY O
The state of the s	

32	Of the	fierceness	of men	, who b	7
4	Charms	are turned	into Wool	lves, 19	3

33 Examples of those menthat mere turned into Woolves, and contrarily. 194

BOOK XIX.

TOWNSON.	100
Chan a Of the Hands and the	Farme
Chap. T. Of the Hanks; and the t	tivers
kinds thereof.	195
2 More of the Nature of Hawks. 3 Of the Nature of Eagles and the	ibid,
3 Of the Nature of Engles and the	r dif
Jeteures*	- # 3/ -
4 Of the property of Engles, and	their
fitting.	197
5 Of the Duck, and its kind.	ibid.
6 Of the admirable Generation	of the
Ducks of Scotland.	198
7 Of Geefe.	199
8 Of Sea-Crows, or Cormorants.	ibid.
9 Of that Bird which is an Ent	
these Crows.	200
10 Of Faulcons, and their diffinit	lon
And a second sec	ibid.
II Of Smallame drawn fruit of al	a tera
11 Of Swallows drawn forth of th	****
12 Of Birds shut up under the Snow	201
to Of huming them and of the	. 10.
-3 Of whating them out of the Sni	TIP.
14 Of Snow-Diras.	ibid.
14 Of Snow-Birds. 15 Of the weighty Snows, and W	mer-
Gnats.	203
16 Of the Eggs of divers Birds	in I-
-tonds	ibid-
17 More of the Eggs of certain Bir	ds.
	204
18 Of Peacocks.	ibid.
18 Of Peacocks. 19 Of Birds whose name is not be	ibid
19 Of Birds whose name is not kn	ibid.
19 Of Birds, whose name is not kn	ibid.
19 Of Birds whose name is not kn the white Lake. 20 Of Birds called Alle, Alle.	ibid.
19 Of Birds, whose name is not kn	ibid. ibid. 205
19 Of Birds whose name is not kn the white Lake. 20 Of Birds called Alle, Alle.	ibid. 205 s. ibid.

Wood-Peckers.

BOOK XX

94	Later and the second se
	Chap. 1. Of the three fold Bothnia in
-8	the Noveh and the should be con:
	the North and the abundance of fishing
-	2 Of the Multitude of Fish at this
	Mart.
8	of fifting for Salmons. ibid.
3	a Of filling for Salmons. ibid.
5	4 Of fishing for Sea Calves. 209
	I TO INVESTED IN TOP PROME AND THE
d.	Physical use, 6 More of the Virtue of this Creatures
f	More of the virine of this Creature
6	the state of the s
ir	7 Of the parallering for fine ibid.
7	7 Of the perplexity of those that one No
-5 1	flesh of Sea Calves in Lent. 21 B
4.	THE THESE
75	x of catching the Pike.
8	10 Of hillians by Flaning
9	1 I Of Fishing in Summer and II
d.	of Fishing in Summer, and Ham-
to	12 More of ingenial ring
0	
n	13 Of their fishing on the Ice, ibid.
d.	14 Of fishing with Horses. 219
	1) Of Think ing on the less for Eta
4-	
1	I the aumitable event of the for
0.	
	17 Of Filher of the DI at no
2	ANCINE FOFF ON being and
1.	18 Of the garage 217
7	18 Of the strange Harper of this River.

3	- y VI I (II) 01 digiano him la
1-	20 Of Sals-fish dryed and smoaked.
l.	
	21 Of Salt-fifb. 218
4	22 Of the Hamiss
d.	22 Of the North Col . ibid.
in	- 3 - I LUE IN AFRINA AT FROM ELL.
	T I I'm I what and the Shaw fr.
d.	shes. ibid.
5	1010,
1	
d.	BOOK YVI

BOOK XXI.

206

8	Control of the contro
	Chap. I. Of the dangerous Fishing in the
	at angerous killing in the
	a transition of Colors
1	2 Of the Danger of the Fisher-men, and
1	the Eigher-men, and
1	The quality of the Filher
1	3 Of the Fisher of Iceland. ibid.
3	abid.

4 Of the wonderful abundance of Iceland	20 Of Winged-filb. 232
Rutter. 225	21 Of the Polypus. ibid.
5 Of the horrible Monsters of the Coast	
of Norway. ibid.	kimaness of others. 232
6 Of the Whirl-pool, and his cruelty a-	23 Of Sponges. ibid.
gainst the Marriners. 226	24 Of very long Worms. 234
7 Of the Fight of the Whale against the	25 Of the Fish which the Norway people
Orca. ibid.	
8 Of the many kind of Whales. ibid.	Monsters. ibid.
9 Of a monstrous Fish found on the North	
Shere of England, Anno 1532.	Monfe. 235
1011 th 101227	27 Of the greatness of the Norway
10 Of the Sword-fish, Unicorn, and Sam-	Serpent. ib.
0 file. 228	28 Of the several colour of Serpents.
11 Of the manner of fishing for whales.	236
blot ibid.	29, Of the habitation of Serpent (. ib.
12 Of the wonderful affection of Whales	30 Of the fighting of the Shepherds a-
towards their Young. 229	gainst Serpents. 237
13 Of Sperma-Ceri, which is called Am-	32 Of the strange Fish found in Pruffia.
ber-Greece, and the Medicaments	338
thereof. ibid.	igi saunes framme and 10 of
14 Of the use of the parts of Whales.	- All State of the
ibid.	BOOK XXII.
15 Of Buildings of Whale bones. 230	"di "att de teles forte
16 Of their kouses, by raising up whole	ant at maple of satisfaction of the
Ribs. ibid.	Chap. 1. Of the Northern Gnats. 239
17 Of Anchors fastued upon the Whales	2 A Remedy to prevent them. ib.
back, 231	3 Of Bees. 340
18 Of the monstroms Hog of the German	4 Of Honey. ibid.
Ocean. ibid.	5 Of Ants. 341
19 Of the Rolmarus, or Norway Mor-	6 Of Pearls, and the Generation of them
firs. ibid.	342.
3-Of garding the Some that must last	Strains to mountained stream or fr. or
bidi	Ser Camanas I sal
of the section of descript amount of the	- was more of proof to wanter the Law 189 Lt.
bidi	The state of the s
the Charles of Designation of Sales	28 Of their Branks Timbe States
the appropriate of comming sale interfer	
El listantes and an artist	The second second section and the second
I close Sicke proposition of Batters ibld	Children and the state of the s
the street and goodney's of them	to Of the Fall of Deer rook of make
THE REAL PROPERTY AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY AND	Alexander Alexander
en and the property of the	35 Of the Downing of the Engineer works
The state of the property of the state of the state of	The state of the s
	Wild men mixing dea- Olaus

7 Of the Moscovies way of Stealing.	" Of the month ful advantage of Technology
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	and the same
8 Of the same.	5 Of the branch; was sales, of the Confi
9 Of the way of receiving Embassadours	BOOK XII, WOOL
amongst the Moscovites. ibid.	
10 Of the Italian Embassadour cruelly	& the tober of and a country as
flam.	off things should not be duly of the
flain. 136	Chap. 1. Of the Variety and Ferms of
Mojcovia. 10.	their Stones. 148
12 Of the divers ways of the Finlanders	2 Of building their houses, and the divers
making War.	forms of them. 149 3 Of the same. ib.
13 More of their Arms and Ammuni-	
The Of the Name have Commenced in the	4 Of the great magnitude of Trees in the
14 Of the Northern Gev. mours, or the	Northern parts. 150
King of Sweden. ib.	5 Of the excellency thereof. ISI
15 Of burning the Forts of violent Go- vernours. 138	6 Of the diversity. ibid.
16 Of their Engines for the Ice. ib.	7 Of the quality of Fruits. 3152 8 Of the Fir-Tree Gum, or Rosin, and of
17 Of Fiery Chariots. 139	the original of Amber. ib.
18 Of their strange Artillery. 140	and original of himself and the lead
19 Of their manner of shooting, ib.	The state of the s
20 Of their hindring the waters to freez.	
	Shipe to the same of the same
21 Of Walls of Ice. ib.	BOOK XIII
22 Of watches kept on the Ice, and in the	ed of the boules be with a million
night.	AND THE PERSON NAMED IN
23 Of the more fortunate Battails in the	to the tal was to the linear soll as he
morning.	194
24 Of the besieging of Forts fenced with	Chap. 1. Of the diversity of gathering in
Tee. 143	of marvett.
25 Of assaulting the Enemies ships that are frozen in. ib.	2 Of their Bake-houses, and baking of
are frozen in. 26 Of the strange punishment of unfuith-	oreaa. 155
ful servants. 144	3 Of parching their Corn that must last.
27 Of their infliction, by cold frozen wa-	ibid.
ter. h45	4 The manner of drinking amongst the
28 Of their strange Horse-Races.	Tvorinern people. 101d.
ibid.	5 The variety of boyling of Salt. 156
29 Of the wild Asses running on the Ice.	The difficulty of carrying Salt into the
ibid.	Northern Kingdoms. lib.
30 Of the Ranged Deer running in the	7 The great quantity of Butter. ibid. 8 The greatnesse and goodnesse of their
Snow. 146	
31 Of the drowning of the Enemies in the	9 Of Weavers, ib.
Snowie Valleys. ib.	10,
32 Of Snow-balls sticking in the Horses	
heofs. ib.	

THE C	Officeres.
athing to the see that the survey of Smiths	10 Of the Chariots for men, drawn b
,0101	ranged Deer. 170
BOOK XIV.	11 Of the Winter Chariots for these Ran
TO MIX ROOM	gifers, ib
shide a gurante man at the state of	
Chap. 1. Of the diversity of Habits.	12 Of the Commodity of the Parts of this
to an absorbit of the party of 160	
2 Of the chaste adaming of the	
2 Of the chaste adorning of Virgins, and	
rigour of Chaffity. ib.	BOOK XVIII.
3 Of the Benedittion of the Catholick	pendang in part are courted by by
Exings.	E- process with the second
4 Of Knights, and their Oath. 162	Chap. I. Of the Elks or Wild-Affes, and
5 Of the Marriages of the Commons, ib.	the manner of taking them. 178
6 Of Adulterers, and their punishments.	2 Of the Battel of the Elks or Wild-Affe
	go sinft the Washing
171	against the Woolves. ib.
THE REAL PROPERTY OF A	3 Cf Harris and Does. 179
T. Of the reality of the last of the	4 Of Castors. ibid.
BOOK XV.	5 Of the Gulos. 180
the engine of Amber	6 Of honouring strangers, with the cove-
	ring of thefe skins. ibid.
Chap. 1. Of the Exercises of Children.	7 Of the way of hunting of Gulo's, 181
160	8 Of Hares. ibid.
2 Of their Custome of driving away the	9 Of the Lynnes and their skins. 182
Winter, and veceiving of Summer. 166	10 Of Waalaut and they for the
3 Of the same, ibid.	10 Of woolves, and their fierceness, ib.
	14 Of the many forts of Woolves. 183
S Of the May-Feasts. ibid.	12 Of Otters, and their diverfity und
5 Of their Dice playing, and playing at Tables or Chefs. 167	falfeness of their skine. 1b.
6 Of the 1	13 Of Squerrils. ib.
6 Of their dancing in Arms. ib.	14 More of this Creature, to fore-shew
7 Of their dancing in Rings. 168	things to come. 184
8 Of their dancing about the fire. ibid.	15 Of Marzin, and Subels, and their
MASS HOS THANKS THE CAMPACH WAS ARRESTED TO	.biSkins
Should be a second	16 Of the Ermins, or Pontick Mice.
BOOK XVI	EAT THE THE STREET
of third was been privated the y	17 Of the hunting of Ermins. 185
The state of the s	
Chap. I. Of the Custome of praying in	
The state of the s	19 Mare of the same. ibid.
	20 Of the Fishing-Besrs. 187
2 Of the Funerals and Burials of Princes.	21 Of the cunning in killing Bears, ibid
2 06-1	72 Of the crafty hunting of Beare 198
Of the variety of the Sick, and of their	23. Of the Battail between the Hedg hog,
Diseases and Medicaments. ibid.	and the Bear. ibid.
Mid	24 Of killing Bears with an Iron Club.
Annual and American in American Company of	
BOOK XVII.	25 Of the ravishing of a Maid, and the
est	becerring of 11 to
	begetting of Ulfo, a most cunning and
Chap. 1. Of Rams and Ews. 173	valiam man. ibid
	26 Of the Swinekerds that are taken away
2 Ofal AT L YE C	with their Pipes. 190
The state of the s	27 Of the dancing of the Bears in Li-
4 Of their War-Horfes. ibid.	thurbia.
5 Of their Cats. ib.	28 Of the Anillan CB
6 Of He and She Goats. ib.	
7 What gifts are given to the Married	20 (If Faver and chair Bill
o of Kangea-Deer. ibid	21 Of the crafes with of E
9 Of the profit of this Creature. ib.	31 Of the crafty Wit of Foxes. ibid.
AU's	

6. Of the Exercises of the Said Starchate-	6 Of the Art and Ingennity of Smiths.
Signs.	oca laigh soon ibid.
7. Of the sum of the Acts of Starchate-	7 Of the distinction of supple Metals.
8. Of the most great and terrible War be-	& More of the Same Metals. ibid.
tween the Swedes and Goths, where	9 Of the Divilianthe Mines, ibid!
Starchaterus was General against the	10 Of Lightning in those Mountains of
Danes. 71	- Mineralt, and had been 92
9. Of the death of Starchaterus. 73	ID Of Goldsmiths, or Refiners. ibid.
10 Of Haldanus, and other Champions	12 Of the Silver Ornaments of Maids.
whom he conquered.	S. OF Borelounded wanter of Filings
44. Of another cereain Haldanus, and his Actions, 475	S. Of the Man to the comments of the comments of the
12 Of Olo Vegetus. 76	de Of she merse, in on the remainded
13 Again of the same man, fighting va-	Jones 1907
Liamly for Chafting. 377	BOOK VIL
14 Of the Acts of the Champions Arns	Little Town town to the same
grinus and Arvarodus. 78	The Authorities to Communication of
the Charms of the Fins. ibid.	9 Clater Amina for of Kniehr, 15.
the Charms of the Fins. ibid. 16 Of the flaying of a Bear, and the drin-	Chap. 1. Of the Artificens of Slings and
king of his blood. O 0 1 1079	Darts. 94
17 Of Regnerus, called Hair-Coar.	2 Of Arrows, and Warlike Instruments.
of O nearly and her research	2 Of the Calling War to Committee of the Calling War to Calling Wa
18, Of Alfo, the Defender of Chastity.	3. Of the suddain calling the Communalty to Arms.
19 Of the Stratagems of Fridlerus.	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE
19 by the otrangeme by Friderius	4 Of the keeping of the Ways and Scones
20. Of the Same man's Stratagems by	0000 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11
Birds. 82	together. ibid.
21 Of the fight of King Harald, against	6 Of Battails on the Shores. 97
arame Dragon. ibid.	7 Of Slings for Stones, and red hot Iron.
22 Of the fight of Frotho and Fridlevus against a Serpent. 83	8 Of the Volts of the Centurians, 93
23 Of the Same Fridlevus. ibid.	9 Of the manners and time bringing
24 Of the Piracy of famom Virgins.	theje Velta.
shid one for the same bid	
- while deal technical danger at agree	Snares, ibid.
The real party at the same of the same	11 Of the Stratagems of King Hacho by
POOK WE	to Of punishing Hestile fires. 101
BOOK VI.	13 Of removing the same danger.
DO Clay of Sang were de from Call	ibid
421	14 Of the custody of Banks in time of
Spiritual appropriate by Abrillian	nostuity, about a place called Meler,
Chap, r. Of Minerals, and the finding of	in Upper-Swecia. 102
them. 86	Child I Of Come Park English St. A. 45
2 Of the Situation of Mineral Veins.	* Of Government March March at S.
3 Of the may to dig the Mines. ibid.	The solution of the branch of the
4 Of the distinction of Mineral Veins.	spide and property and analysis of
ibid.	A 2 BOOK
5. Of the Wheels, Instruments, and dan-	Billion & add or was constant or being to
gers of the Labourers. 88	bell The Company of the State o
THE PERSON LANGUE TO SERVICE TO SERVICE THE PERSON NAMED IN SEC. ASS.	100

воо	KI	/III.			
the Ele	100	0.650	C IV	- 73	

Chap, 1 Of 2 Of the Adoption of Noble-men by

3 Of the same form of the Adoption.

105 4 Of the Millitary Education of Illustrious and Noble men. 106

5 Of the reason and manner of Riding.

6 Of the choice of young souldiers for Arms. 107

7 Of the Same by an outward Ceremony. ibid.

8 Of the manner of the old Warfare of the Goths.

9 Of other Antiquities of Knights. ib. 10 Of Military Exercises and Disciibid.

1.1 Of their Arms and Provisions for Knights and Horsemen. 109

on of their Governors. · ib.

13 Again of the same most wicked Ru- 2 Of the form and use of the old Norters. 110

14 Of the Causes of perpetual Discord, 3 Of another form of Northern ships. that the Swedes or Sweons, and the Goths have against the Danes. III

15 Of the same Canses.

16 Of the Same Causes ont of the 24. book of the History of Gorhland, of Johannes Magnes, the Author's Brother.

113 17 Of the severity of King Christiernus the second.

18 More of the cruelty of the Same King. ibid.

BOOK IX.

Chap. 1. Of turning Swords in Wheels.

2 Of their Chariots with Hooks.

118 3 Of Brazen Horses that vomited out ibid.

4 Of the Guns of the Northern People. IIg

5 Of Triangular Guns. ibid. 6 Of Organ-like Guns. ibid.

7 Of the burning the Frundations of Ca-

8 Of burning the Foundations of Forts.

9 Of the cruelty of Flatterers, Traytors, and Strangersy often committed most fearfully in the Kingly City Stockholm.

10 Of the Original and Soirmasion of the Kingly City.

II Of the scitnation of the Mountain Bruncaberg, beyond the Kingly City Holm, and of the Battels fought in it.

12 Of feeding their Cattle in the houses of the besieged. fur Craft on ibid.

13 Of sapplying their want of water. 123

14 Howto supply want of bread, ibid.

BOOK X,

12 Of the tyrannical severity, and exactio Chap. 1. Of Eights in Linkes, and of Bridges broken down.

thern (hips.

4 Of the muenal flaughter of the Merchants, for the Harbours of Iceland.

5 Of the punishment of the Rebellious Marriners.

6 Of the swimming of Horsemen. 7 Of the swimming of their Foot Souldiers in Arms, especially such as are

BOOK XI.

Chap. 1. Of the Bloody Wars in the

Northern Countries. 2 Of Fights upon the Ice.

3 Of the breaking forth of the Moscovices, or Ruffians.

4 Of a fearful founding Cave, the common people call Smellen. 正文品 5 Of the Same.

6 Of the Battel of the Finlanders, ng ainft the Moscovites. abid.

OLAUS MAGNUS

GOTH, Arch-Bishop of VPSAL:

CONCERNING

The Rites of Nations, and Nature of Things, and Custome of making War; used by the Northern People.

An Epitome of the First Book.

CHAP. I. A Description of Biarmia.

Po e, and the Horizon is the same with the Equinoctial Circle which cutting the Zodiack into two equal parts, makes the half year one artificial day, and the other half one night: so that the whole year is there but one natural day. Now Biarmia is divided, according to Saxo Sialandiem, into the surthermost, and hi-

thermost: In the hithermost, there are Mountains that are covered with snow perpetually but they do no hurt, for they are never melted by the Sunsbetween these there are Woods and Groves in abundance, and it is most sertile with Patture Grounds and there are Beasts very frequent, that are not usual elsewhere. There are many Rivers in it, because there are so many Rocks in the Channels, and these run with a notice and soaming, as they are carryed on. But in the surther Biarmia, there are some monstrous strange people, to whom the passage is difficult, and tull of danger, that men can hardly come unto them. For the greatest part of the way is constantly blocked up by Mountains of snow, and if any man would pass over them, he must ride in a Chariot, drawn with

B

Stavs

Scags, (as there is a great number of them in that place, as there is in Italy of Affes) and by the incredible lwiftness of them, he may pass over the Citts that are exceedingly trozen. Saxo mentions one Meningus, a Satyr of the Woods, who was very rich and inhabited there; unto whom one Hotherus, King of the Swedes was brought by tame Scags, and became very tich and happy with great spoils: yet both thele Countries are distinguished with Valleys and Fields, and would afford good Corn, if it were fowed there: But there is fuch plenty of Fish there in all places, and to much hunting after wild Beasts, which is the can exhat men do not much defire Bread for use. When those of Biarmia go to fight, they commonly change their Arms into Art, and are wont by Charms to the Clouds, to open the Air, and to turn a fair day into rainy weather. The men of Biarmia are Idolaters and Wain-drivers, as the Southians are, and very cunning to bewitch men. For they will so bind men by the Witchery of their eyes, or words, or fome other way, than they cannot be at liberty, or in their right mind but oft-times pine away and dye of a Confumption.

CHAP. II. A The Description of Finmarck.

Inmarck is a Northern Countrey, of the part of Norway; of old, by reason of the largeness of it, it was honoured with the Title of a Kingdome. This place is leated in the coldest part of the world. yet the men there are of strong bodies, and flout minds and they are wont manfully to defend themselves against the assaults of their Enemies. The Ayr of that and the Neighbour Countries is alwayes cold, clear, yet agreeing with the bodies of men; and in Summer there are very few showers: and the clemency of the Ayr there, is so good, that Fishes never salted, but onely dryed in the Ayr, will last uncorrupted ten years. There is a continual day from the 8th of the Calends of April, unto the fixth of the Ides of September, without any darknesse coming between, and the Sun is feen from the fourth of the Nones of May, unto the Calends of August without any night coming between. The distance from this Northern Fine marck, unto the more Sonthern parts of the Goths, is above 350. Gothick miles, where at midnight, about the Summer Solflice, in divers places, namely at Lin-Copia, and Scares the smallest Letters may be read without any Candle, and moneyes told. Also in these places, under the Elevation of the North Pole, in 60. degrees, from the beginning of May, untill the beginning of August no Stars are to be feen: Befides the Moon, which at the Full appears like a Burthing Bulh formerhing toward the Superficies of the Earth, for that space of time, to the admiration and horrour of those who see it.

ther sile salem exact language and charteness the tent the

The Description of Scricfinnia.

Scriefinnia is a Countrey between Biarmia, and Finmarck; yet it hath one ong corner that thretcheth Southward and towards the Bothrick Sea; it is called a Tail principally, because the Inhabitants of it flide very swift, having their feet fallned to crooked pieces of Wood made plain, and bended like a Bow in the former part, with a flaff in their hands to guide them; and by thefe, at their pleasure they can transport themselves upward, downward, or obliquely, over the tops of now . yet ever observing that proportion, that one of these pieces of Wood shall be longer then the other a hill foot according as the men women are in tallness: fo that if a man or women be eight foor high, the one piece of wood shall be just so long, and the other piece of wood shall be

nine toot. Moreover, they provide that those pieces of wood be covered beneath with the tender skin of a young Fawn; the form and colour whereot is like to a Deer Skin but it is fat longer and larger. But why the e pieces of wood are covered with these tender Skins there are divers cames given; namely that they may transport themselves the swifter over these high Snows, that they may the more nimbly avoid Chirs of Rocks, and theep places with an overchwart motion that when they afcend to a place, they may not fall backward : because the Hair will rite like Spears, or Hedg-Hogs Brittles, and by an admirable power of Nature hinder them from falling down. Therefore with fuch Instruments, and the Art they have to run, they are wont, e pecially in Winter time, to patte over the unaccessible places of Mountains, and Valleys; but not to easily in Summer, though the Snow be there, because the Wood foon finks into them. Not is there any Rock to prominent, but they can cunningly run up to the top of it by a winding course. For first leaving the deep places or Valleyes, they passe over the feet of the Mountains, with a crooked motion round about; and they focus to and fro, untill they come to the his helt parts of those winding Hills : sometimes they do it in heat of Hunting, sometimes to try their Skill, and to contend for mastery therein, as those who run Races to win the

CHAP. IV.

Of the Vehemency of the Southern Wind.

Here is a Port in Island, (a Land that is next to the Frozen Sea, under the Dominion of the Kingdome of Norway, commonly called Vestrabort) named the West part; neer which about the Sea shores and Fields, men riding in Armour, by the mighty blaft of the Southern Wind, are blown down to the ground like Towe. E kewife neer those that dwell in Rocks and Caves, especially in that time of Winter, that the Sun goes back to the Solflitial Signes, when the Windes are more temperate amongst the Waves of the Seas. Moreover there are Mountains in Ireand not very high, that stick forth in many places; upon which if any man strive to go when this Southern Wind blowes, he must not onely look for danger, but to be suffocated in Bogs and Quick-Sands. But how formidable and hurrful the Windes are on the Western Banks of Normay, the Inhabitants, nor fuch as travel there, can be ignorant : For they shall see no Shrub nor Tree to grow there, by reason of the violence of this Winde: Wherefore for want of Wood, they are forced to burn great Fish-bones to make Fire, and to boy! their Meats. The Inhabitants that dwell on the West Coasts of Bothnia, to the great hurt oft-times, have the tryal of it, how cruelly that wind fageth there. For it will carry away the whole tops of houles and fcarrer them upon the Land in feveral pieces, at vast distances.

CHAP. V.

Of the Violence of North-Winds.

Virilwinds and Northerly Tempests, to have a most terrible and dangerous lorce, no man can be ignorant, who hath learned or searched out the secrets of Nature respecially since the cause and matter of its Oiginal, is manifold and indeficient. Therefore oft-times they take away the Waters of the Sea from under the ships, and carry the ships up into the Ayr: Also they let fall stones, and other living Creatures, which they have taken up something high; and not onely those, but the Lead that covers Churches, and divers houses, and the strongest Beams are carried into the Air, and then another more vehement blast comes, they are carried a great way. Also sometimes whole mills with huge stones being compassed about with a Whirlwind, are transported into places far off, the people being safe; and sometimes such a mighty Whirlwind descends that it involves Cities, Castles, Villages, and scatters houses afar off in the Fields, as I said. In Summer, Winds blow from the West and the North with so great violence, that they will take up whole handfuls of stones from the ground, and will make great heapes of stones, like to heaps of Sand; and sometimes they will draw from men their weapons and clothes, and sometimes take the Rider off of his horse. Also it sometimes sell out in Vietria or Norway, that great Fish which were to be dried in the Air and Sun, were taken off from poles like planks, by boysterous winds, in great numbers, and carried from rich Fishers houses, unto poor mens, and are received as a gift given them by God.

CHAP. VI.

The divers Effects of Thunder and Lightning in the Northern Parts.

Thunding and Lightning have a most formidable effect in the Northern parts, especially in places opposite to the South. There appeares often in the North parts, in clear weather, all the night, in September, continual Lightnings, that threaten rather then hurt the Beholders of them. But Thunder rising from the Nature of the Clouds, and the Thunder-bolt falling, do bring grievous mischies to men, and other Creatures in those parts. For it kills many men and cattle that are found upon places that are high, and consumes with a slame, not to be put out, the highest Towers, and houses, that are daubed over with hard Pitch, and this is no wonder; it cleaves down-right the lostiest Trees from the very top; or else beats them down, corroding them obliquely.

Of the fierceness of Cold.

IT may be demonstrated by many Reasons, rather then Examples by Sense, what great power Frost and Snow shath in the North, as in its proper place. For the season multitude of living Creatures, seels its force and piercing, though they be many Furlongs from it, and the body and parts are perished and benummed with a little of it falling upon them. What can it not do, where Cold it self rules in its sull force, and according to the Law of Nature; under which, because I was born and bred, (about the Elevation of the North Pole in the Degree 86.) I think I can more clearly demonstrate it in this, and the many following Chapters, than other men that write by uncertain Opinion, how horrible and vehement the Cold is there: because from thence by succession, as it were Beames from the Center, it spreads it self into the whole World, as all Nations that it pierceth into, moved by the sharpness of it, can testifie.

Of Frosts, and the falling of Snow.

So great sometimes is the sorce of Frosts, and the falling of Snow in the Nor-thern parts; and so sharp are the Tempest, and vehement Darkness, obscuring the Air, that Travellers cannot shun nor know the next man that comes, be he Foe or Friend. That which breeds the greatest difficulty, is that on both fides, there hang over mens heads either high Clifts, or Snow hardned, and fo high, that those who carry burdens, can neither get forth to the right hand, nor to the left: But because they can seldome find a defired Remedy against these steep places, for the standing of their Cattel, they dig down the Snow with mutual labour, and they turn their wains uplide down upon them : that so they may finish their intended Journey. And they do this with that celetity, as if they were urged to do it suddenly, to put away some dangerous Fire, or some most hurtful Danger; least if they should use any delay by the sudden falling of Snow and Frost, the wayes should be filled, and the Woods, that they should hardly know which is the way, or the field. There is little or no difficulty in the Ice, because it is ever every where, and pleasing to Passengers, onely they must be careful where the Ice breaks, to look to the Signs that are opposite to the Orifice of the breach; which Signs appear by the crazy pieces of Ice lett at the mouth of it lying open or by the green boughs of Firr or Juniper congealed in the Ice, and flicking forth; and that in a long order for many miles, is carefully lookt to at the cost and by the diligence of the Fisher-men, least Travellers might mistake their wayes. But in the Wood sometimes men meet with no small Obflacles, when they fall together by breaking, or moving of Trees: especially the poplar Trees stand by reason of the thickness of Snow, as bent bowes loaded with Snow: by the least motion whereof great heaps of Snow, falling on the Travellers, do not a little hinder them: Also the Trees themselves falling across, being broken down by the weight of the Snow, makes the way altogether impassible, that they cannot get forth but by Axes, which they carry with them for that use; as I testifie it fell often out with me and others of my company.

Of the variety of Snow and Glasses.

IN one day and night you shall see fifteen or twenty distinct Forms of Snow; and there is no less variety in Glasses that are set for Windows in their Stoves to keep out the cold. For whilest these places are kept hot with fire against the excessive cold, those Glasses seem to be so painted with the external cold, and Workmanship of Nature, with divers sashions, that any Artist who shall behold them, shall better admire Natures excellence, than imicate it: yet Wit and Industry of Workmen, bath invented and made many kinds thereof for the Ornament and setting forth of houses; the like whereof can hardly be got by other Nations for love or money: and they are made so ingeniously that many of their Cups are thought to be silver: Moreover there are many Woollen and Linnen pretious woven Ornaments, and admirable Pictures, very decent; as I shall speak hereafter something concerning Painters and Weaving Works.

CHAP. X.

Of the Forts of Snow made by Young People.

T is the custome of the young Northern People, by a provident sagacity, to make Castles to sight against, and to employ for divers Arts and Exercises of War, they especially who take pleasure to make their first Attempts against thele, without any danger of being wounded or killed: and therefore early in Winter, whileft the Snow lafts, the young men meet in Troops provoked thereunto by their Parents, upon some eminent place, bringing with them, by each mans labour, huge heaps of Snow; and of thefe, especially on Holy-dayes, they make Forts like to Cattle walls, alwayes iprink ing water on their Building, diffinguished with Windows, that the Snow thus incorporated with the Water, when it grows cold, may freeze the harder. By which diligence they are to fortified that they can endure not onely light blows, but brazen bullets, and the battering o. Engines, to far as need is. These things thus prepared, the said young men divided into leveral Troopes, part of them goes to defend the walls; the other part fland without to fight against them. And in these white Castles they want not black or dark Flags, or green Bushes of Juniper : under which nor for money but for delire of glory, hey enter upon a plealant Combat, and it is fought on both fides with no other wespons, then with Snow-balls, cast by their hands one against the other. For there is a penaltyset, that any one shall have his naked body plunged into cold water, who shall in a Snow-ball wrap up a stone, iron, wood, or ice to cast at one another. There are also amongs the Assailers, somethat like Pioneers, mine under the lower part of the Walls or Snow, and enrely that they may beat off the Defendants at the Fort from their flations. And they are not flow to come to handy-blows, until the Standard being taken away, the conquered part yeeld, that another time, if it be possible, renewing the Combit, may triumph over the conquering part. And they doe not more idly or weakly fight these Battails, and endure them, than if they fought for their Lives, their Countrey, their Laws and Reli ion, in a publike spectacle. But such as are Cowards and run away, they thrust Snow-balls between their shirts and their skims of their backs, when they can catch them, and abiolve them punished, first with in olent words and hard language, that another time when they come again, they may fight more valiantly, and defend their cafiles. They punish some with Ice let drop down between their head and neck when it reezeth hard; as I shall underneath explain it more, when I speak of punishments by Ice: And all these are pleasant Spectacles, to appoint milder punishments for Rebels and Cowards.

CHAP. XI.

Of the running of Horses upon Ice for Cloaks.

Of old time it was a Custome among the antient Goths, in Winter, about the end of the moneth of December, (whilest the Lakes, Standing-waters, and all the Countrey, were covered with Snow, and bound up with very firm Ice) in every Province to collect all the best horses, that were more comely then Cows with Calves, to adorn their publick shews. But for what concerns their shews for delight, on the 26.day of December, infinite Inhabitants of those Countries in every Province (though of distinct Societies) do meet to contend on

fwitten Hories for the prize and g ory, upon the Frozen Lakes and Rivers, that shine like g asse. The Bounds or Ends of this Race, contain about four or six Italian miles. The prize is some measures or bushels o Corn to bew soed, and new Grunents are deposited also, on this condition, there the Horse that comes not to the Mark, shall be the Conquerom's. But these Spectacles are shewed in no place in all the North more frequently upon the Ice, than amongst the Ostrogothian and Vistrogothia. For their Land abounds with plentiful Passure, to feed Herds of Horses to many thousands in most code Grasse where they naturally meet, though it be in very spacious and disperied Fields, and not in one Meadow.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Running of men upon the Ice for a Wager.

TWo forts of men are found in these places, that run Races for Wagers most swift y, in a compendious way of the Art fore-she ved. The first is the Wild or Laplander, becau e upon crooked Stilts, or long Stakes fastened to the to es of his icet, he transports hi niel: u on the Snow in Dales and Mountains, in a dingerous way by a winding and arbitrary motion; and he doth it with a mon perfect Art whether he be to encounter with ad er e accidents or he doth it for port in Hunting whereby he gets his it ingrand he obtains greater riches, or whether he unde t kes this for a prize, or g ory. This kind is the chiefest amongst the Scriefinni. Here it shall suffice now to have faid , That thefe men , have such nimble agility in running over the cops of the Snowy Mountains also when they run for a Keward, that others who use more plain and shorter Instruments can bordly attain unto woon the even and slippery Ice. More ver those that runover the Snow and come to the Mark appointed, will kill a wild Beast in the way with their arroues. But he that holds on his course on the Ice is searce secure from Pitsthat are screet underweath; as I shall say hereafter concerning wars upon the Ice. But the other kind runs fwiftly onely upon the flippery Ice, and a ways continues running upon the e en Ice, having a plain po ifhed Iron, or plain Deers or Sheeps bones; namely, the mank-bores that are naturally slippery, by reason of their imbrediatness, and are a foot in length, talened to the bottome of their feet. In which kind also there are tound men everywhere striving for pleasure and prices the Goal they let is over the congealed Lakes, as smooth as Glasse, for eight or twelve Italian miles from both ends, or fomewhat leffe. The prize is Silver Spoons, Bratte Veffels, Swords, New Garments, and young Horfes; but the empetrequently than the other. They that win the prize, must come first to the Mirk. They fasten Deers shanks polithed broad, to the soles of their tect be meared with Hogs-grea'e, because to they cannot be hindered or frop by the co d drops of water, that in the most vehement cold weather will ri e upas it were through the pores of the Ice : lo it is with any Iron that is polished or greated o er. For no greating is more fit for Iron, than for the thank-bones of Deer, or Bulls, that have a natural flipperinesse in them. And this way to o t as the Ice is clear and uncovered of fnow, and is two or three fingers thick, then is the time to exercise the esports more easily and freely. But otherwile not at all, because it is never more dangerous, nor is a man neerer to his death than when he runs upon the Ice covered with a very thin now. For the Ralers or small tireams, with a filent swiftness, entring the Lakes from the sho es by their corroding and continual mo ion prevail to far, that the Ice cannot grow thick and strong, un esse it be frozen with the greatest Frost : yet it falls out that rash Runners, such as know not, or despite the Nature of the Ice,

running more boldly than warity, the Ice breaking, a.e drowned, with their body downward, and their heads above, cut off with the sharp Ice, as with an Axe, and to miterably left behind. But the Inhabitants seldome perish by that or the like danger, only strangers that travel to descry Countryes: who making more half to serve them elves with the shortest way to make their discoveries, are juddenly destroyed by the fallenesse and brittlenesse of the Ice.

Of the Inns upon the Ice for Travellers.

T is the custome that the publick wayes which are obstructed by the fall of Woods, by reaton of Tempetts, should be mended by the common charge and labour, with Axes and Pick-axes: but when they are barred by the thicknesse of the Snow, they are to be opened by the passage of Cattel and Waggons going over the Snow, by every man particularly, or elle the way must be made neere the shoares of the Sea, or upon the Sea congealed, markes being set upon the Ice, whereby the way may ly open to mens habitations. But leaft by the fame reason, the lower Germans that inhabit the Cities & Countries of the Vandals should be stopt by the great Snows, filling the Woods and Champion wayes, in their great commerce of Merchants; they place Inns upon the Sea shores and plain Rocks, or upon the open Ice, by a wonderfull industry. For they ordain long beams, elevated two or three teet, above the Ice for a diffinction of the Foundations and Houses; and upon these they build necessary Houses, and those boarded, standing side by side, and they use a cold fire in their Stoves plentifully, (as they do all things elfe that are required for joyfull banquers) and tearing no craft of any spies or thiers, or deceivers, they rejoyce because they have gaind more security upon the lice, than they could have in a Palace: and they stay there more secure y and merrily, the sharper the cold-weather is, and the stronger the winds are: which blowing underneath the Foundations of their Inns, make them to be more firm and tolid, and preferve them untill fuch time as all this building about the vernall Equinoctial is dissolved by the hot blasts of the South-Wind, and is carried into the continent, no Pension being paid for their standing place, But as for the cold of that German or Getick Sea, Albertus Crantzius (peaks many things, who was a most diligent describer of these Countries. For he faith, that in the yeare, 1323, the Sea was extreamely Frozen that men paffed on foot over the Ice from Lubec to Denmark & to Prufia by Sea, Inns being made upon the Ice in convenient places. In the yeare of our Lord, 1399, all the Winter the Frost bound up both Sea and Land that went dry-foot from Luber by Sea into the City Sunden, & from thence to Denmark. In the year 1523, the Frost was all the Winter incomparable never the like heard of. So that Horsemen passed from Gedan in Prussia to Lubeck, the same way taylers do, and then from Magnopolis by Sea into Denmark, having Inns upon the Ice. In the year 1294, the Cimbrie Sea was frozen, that men rid from Jachia to Aflogia, Moreover, though for many ages after, most bitter cold followed, and freefing of the seas, yet because they fell so common, they are scarce sound to be objerved,

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Passage upon the Ice between the Gulphs,

Since in the former Chapter concerning Inns on the too little is spoken, by what marks Travellers are guided in Snowy and Frosty weather that they may come to the Inns they appoint to stay at; for that the way is to plain and large on all sides, that oftimes men can see nothing but the Heavens, and Ice, and Snow, for that they attempt in the bitter Winter, to passe by the agility of Hories, where in Summer-time the greatest Ships Sayle, being driven with the Winds: Therefore you must observe that the Ice being a little bored, into it Juniper or Fire-Trees at every furlongs end, standing upright are Frozen in, being let in the Sea, by the way side, especially where the Ice is grown thicker, and proved by the overfeers for high ways. And if there marks were nor, the fear would be no lesse, nor the dinger of a mans life amongst the Gulphs on the Ice, than it would be on the open Sea, when unarmed Marriners light amongst cruel Pirats, or in a horrid delart, when men fall amongst tayage Beafts: wherefore it is ordered by a most levere Law, that no man shall alter or carry off thele water marks, unlesse it be in time of hostility, by reason of Spies and Traytors. And farther how dangerous it is for men to passe amongst those Gulphs formerly mentioned, I shall shew by the following reasons. But beforeall I must premile, that generally all lakes and standing-waters begin to be Frozen in October, and the Ice to be so condensed in many places by the increating of the cold, that where no Veins of Spring-water run not into those lakes and standing-pools, the fish are found to be choked when the Ice thaws. But that this suffocation may not be too great a losse, by the diligence of the Fishermen, the Ice is constantly broken, that it may not Freeze, as I shall shew under this, in my book concerning Winter fishing. Wherefore the Ice at beginning and middle of Winter is to throng and tenacious, that at the thicknesse of two fingers a man may walk upon it, and when it is three fingers thick, a Horseman in Armour: when it is a hands breadth and halfe, whole Troops and Companies of Souldiers; when it is three or four hands breadth, a whole legion of thousands of people, as I shall shew underneath, concerning Winter Warrs. This strength of the Ice, though it feem to be so strong, yet naturall Veins and exhalations, springing forth underneath in many places, do so make it cleare and open, that for a long way it will leave an empty place like a paifage or path upon the Land : yet the prudent Traveller penetrateth that fiffure by compassing about, that he may not lose his time and appointed journey. But when such fiffures happen, especially at night, they are heard afarr off, like cruel Thunder or Land Earth-quakes. But for all this the carefull Traveller leavs nothing unattempted, but that he will go forward on his journey amongst the Whirl-pools. But when the Ice melts about the beginning of April, no man will trust to the thicknesse of it, and lesse to the strength thereof, unlesse it be to walk upon it in the morning : because by the Sun-shine in the day it is made so brittle, that what had a little before born armed Horsemen, can hardly bear a man without Arms. But the Winter ways, by reason of the hardnesse of the cold, whereby they are made thicker, and more folid, will remain longer like bridges in the Lakes. But when Travellers would defcend from the Ice upon the Land or contrarily, he must needs have a bridge of Planks, for the Sun heating the shore, melts all the congelation of the Ice there. I think not fit to let it passe here, that there is a Lake called Veter, which is 60 Italian miles long, and 20 broad, in the Kingdome of the Ostrogoths: which is of fuch

a Nature, that whenit is trozen by a tempessuous wind, and the time comes for it to thaw, it begins to boyle at the bottom with a most vehement noyse, and to be moved, and with great violence to break into small chops, or scissures, that are made in the Ice, and make these in a small time very great, though the Ice then be more than an arme or two in thicknesse; and then the upper sorce co-operating with it, all the Ice is divided into many small peices, upon which Travellers being lest can scarse come to shore, otherwise than by the providence of God, because the force of Nature works more secretly there, and more wonderfully, than in other Lakes. Also there is a Lake neere the Metro-polis of the Kingdome of Norway, called Nidrosia, that is never frozen.

CHAP. XV.

Of Instruments for the Ice.

A Sthe people of a hot or temperate Climate feem to be free from cold, Ice, Snow, Frost and Winter noyses, so they can scarle find by what diversity of acts remedies and instruments those that live under this Northern cold, do defend and help themselves against all these sharp weathers, since it is impossible to run over the flippery Ice, or by it to transport the most weighty burdens, at so great a distance to the places appointed, unlesse it were done by art, to ease our strength. We spake before of wodden shoos, that were covered under with points of Iron, because they are agreeable to the scalonable use of Travellers, Fithermen and Souldiers. Moreover three points of triangles with iron points are made with three corners for going the more fure: and lastly flexible Circles with points every way, sharpened like to teeth : to all which that they may flick fast to their feet, strong bands are tied, that by that firmnesse every man may be the more secure in running or going, and any burden may be carried the berter by the strength of one or two men; which otherwise in the Sand or Snow would not be drawn by the strength of horses. They have Axes also that are the chiefest and fittest Instruments to cut all Ice: for by such instruments they open frozen Rivers for many furlongs, when they fet out a Navy against Robbers : or when the Common-wealth thinks fit to mannage the bulineffe fo, to fend messengers beyond the Seas. And in this case small ships by the labour of Cattel are carried to the broad Sea in Carts from Citties and Castels fuddenly upon the Ice, that by the agility of the Winds and Sayles, they may fwiftly dispatch their Voyage by Sea, which they could hardly perform in many days by Beafts. They have also iron Spades made for a certain purpose, because by thefe, the thick and hardned Ice that will not yeeld to other iron tools is more eafily broken, whilft other Axes mingled wirh feel in a vehement cold with a blow onely upon the Ice or a green Tree, will break like glaffe, where, as the forelaidSpades of iron spears, endure firongly; moreover they have harping irons made with a crooked point, whereby the pieces of Ice broken with other instruments are more easily drawn which way they please, or thrust out also in the open Sea, at the time of the Winter Solftice, when they must not only torefee to keep off such a huge weight of Ice, that it break not their Ships, but also against the Rocks that are not seen, and lastly when they are to fight with their cruel enemies. They have also Socks, with which they can walk the more securely upon the slippery Ice, at their pleasure, in a fight on the Ice, to refift strongly, or fly away cunningly. ages to metaltes. The when Tracel corwoold descend from the Land or committee, he would need to have a bridge of Plants.

miles borg and so broad, in the bingdome of the Offregular which is at last

CHAP.

Ot

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Warlike Obelisks of the Goths, and Stone-Monuments raised.

IT was the most antient custome of the old Goths and Sneons , that when they had had the sharpest battels in the fields or Mountains, they were wont there to raile itones, as it were Piramids of the Egyptians: and upon their engraving, the famous fasts with some short inscription, they supposed that the memory of their deeds should be perpetuall, as the usual Songs composed in veries compendiously, and by succession derived to these daies, have propagated this matter to the memory of posterity. For in the Northern parts, there are seen most hard Mountains of an Ash colour, that are far harder than Marble: thele lometimes by an Earth-quake or Thunder, or other motion of Nature nie sometimes to be so shaken, that the stones cut forth, and falling downwards, receive the form partly of a Pyramis, and partly of square Pillars, partly of four Corners and Obelisks, as if they were made by the excellent work of Nature, and it is uteleffe, and vain to adde any more to them. But these Pyramids or Pillars are found amongst the Hestengi in greater quantity than ellewhere in the North. But Obelisks of high stones, raised by the forces of Gyants, and Champions are feen no where more frequently than in the publick high wayes amongst the Oftrogothi, and Vastrogothi, and Sucons: and also in vast detarts, which long fince have been made desolate of Inhabitants, by Famine, Warr, Plague, and are not yet reduced to their former condition, by reason of the fluggishnesse and negligence of the Indwellers, the Land not yet, or very rarely, becoming fallow ground. And these stones, raised in very many places, are 10. or 15. or 30. foot long, and 4, or 6. foot broad, notably scituated, but in a more wonderfull order, and, with some notable Character, for many reasons were placed there : and they fignifie by a learned, right long order, the battels of Champions; by a square order, Troops of Warriers; and by a round order the Burialls of families: and by a wedge fashion, they shew that there, or neere that place, the Armies of Foot or Horse had there fortunately prevailed. But the writings are begun on the right hand at the foot of the stones, end in the top, and then turning about they end in the left foot; or else the letters are in the same order elevated or pressed down within. And every letter bath the thicknesse and length of the greatest singer of a man. And though many of them by the injury of weather and dirt, and many at the bottom of the Hones, by length of time out of memory are eaten away, yet the like effects of them are clearly read in the same manner. I Uffo fighting for my Country, killed 32. Champions, and at last flain by the Champion Rolvo, rest here. Moreover; I Jugolvas that conquered all violent men, and defended the oppressed, being full of Scars, and grown old, girt about with my sword; am placed here, when as other men fought for glory by Warrs, I Halften striving for peace, deserved immortal praise.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Obelisks for Sepulchres.

Blit neither the old Goths not other Northern Nations, wanted a Remembrance of their Ancestors, but for those they were pleased to lay up in the ground, they fet up Honourable Statues of high flones, as we fee at this day mighty stones wonderfully joyned together, like to a most high and broad gare,

raised upwards and overthwart by the Brength of Giants, especially two large miles from the City Scare as one goes to the Church of Kelby upon a Rock. For there are seen in the High-way three most huge Stones (as I said before) anost curiously engraven with Gothick Charafters. And if any man who is a curious searcher for such like stones, would go over Delasts, as well as open Fields, to search for them, he shall find infinite Spectacles, that I need not now be more tedious to mention. But there may be one cause more ready, by real in that not far from that most antient City Scare there was a Kingly Castle called Maranes, (whereof I shall speak particularly elsewhere) about which in former Ages and Generations most cruel Wars were tought: Conferning which my most dear Brother and Predecessour John, Arch-Bishop of Upsal, writ woncerful things.

There are also amongst the Offrogothi, and the Upper Sneons, Castles of great and Noble-men, built every where in the Countries, in places fortified by Nature: neer whole Walls and Fields, you shall bee huge Stones of the Antients, truck full ir to the ground, in a wedge fashion, round, ong, and upriget cituation: the upper parts whereof being adorned with tome Writings of the Goths, do teach, as it were by the command of fome Governour then living, what their Successiours ought to fly from or follow; namely, to embrace Vertue, and to deteit Vice, &c. Nor may we doubt but in that Age the like Edict was observed in the Northern Countries against the imbalming of the bodies of wicked Princes and Tyrants, that they should not have a seemly burial. The Obelisks of good Princes, and Stone Monuments, are yet plainly feen; many years before the Catholick Faith was planted in the Northern Kingdomes . Signed with the Sign of the Cross, having such like In crip ion : After that I, feduced by the fraud of Devils, had erred, I Germundius dy converted to the God of the Christians, and here lie buried expecting bis Indoment: Moreo et ellewhere upon a stone their words are found; I Holmstam being dead, who had relinquished worshipping of Idols am living in the Faith of Christ.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Stones with Figures, &c.

A Lio in other places there are found very broad Stone Tables, and very high iet into the Earth, by the strength of Gyants, having the Images of Dragons, Serpents, and Bears, engraven upon them: against which they observed no effective upon that against armed Enemies; as I shall shew underneath in the Book of Gyants and Champions. Moreover there are huge Stones set upon the Shores of Waters, which shew in old Character; That in those places some Noblemen, by divers accidents of Rivers, Tempests, Lightnings, which winds or Robbers, were killed. And from thence the Name imposed, endureth to perpetual Generations.

There are also high Stones, by the aspect and signature whereof, the antient Possessin Provinces, Governments, Forts, Communities of Noble and Countrey-men, are suffered to continue to every man in peace, without Laws, Suits, or Arbitration, giving an Example to other Nations, that amongst these Nations there is more Right to be found in these Stones, that are Boundmarks, than elsewhere in the large Volumes of Laws, where men think themselves to be more learned and civil. There are also Stones on the Shores that are very high, without Writings, by the industry of the Antients, turned towards unfaithful Ports, without any notable Sign, informing the Marriners, that they may avoid shipwrack.

There is also a huge round Stone-having about 12, lesser Stones lying neer it, with Wedg tashioned stones, raised a little from the Earth, not far from the Metropolis

d

Metropolis of Upstal, called Morasten: Upon which a new King to be chosen, is received by an infinite company of people that are present, and afterwards is confirmed with more Solemn Ceremonies by the Catholics, Bishops, taking an Oath before-hand to defend the Faith.

state, and any avolation of the CHAP. XIX, and we amis anything from

Of Dials with Shadows.

You must know that the Inhabitants of the farthest North that dwell beyond the 86. Degree of the Elevation of the North Pole, have no use of a Sun-Dial, such a one as Anaximenes Milesius, the Lacedemonian, is first said (as Pliny writes) to have found out; nor of any other Diall that is made with Weights, Wheels, Waters, Measures, by Lines and Distances: but they use onely the high Stones of Rocks, that are placed partly by Nature, partly by Cunning, that by an infallible Conjecture, do over-shadow the Sun-Beams, and distinguish the parts of the Day: as also in Winter both by Night and Day (the Moon not shining) they clearly measure the Account of Times by Experience, by the Cryes and Actions of Birds and Beasts; whereof there are infinite companies there, and they are content with such obelisks or Rural Marks.

CHAP. XX.

Of Sticks to design the Times by.

A S both the Latine and Greek Authors testifie, that the Gatha have a perfect ters tay that they have both at home and abroad, the knowledge of many profitable things, and experiments thereof, especially the knowledge of the Stars, whereby they can for the most part divine suture things. For the Goths, both old and young have a Staff, marked with the Characters of the Goths, forengraven, that it may be seen, by what Instruments in old time, when there was no use of Books, they knew by infallible Events the influences of the Moon, Sun, and the other Stars, as at this day almost all the Inhabitants acknowledge: Wherefore a stone made so long as a man on both sides, with the number of the Weeks of the Year; for every week having 7. Gothick Letters, whereby the Golden Num-bers, and Dominical Letters (after Christianity was embraced) are distinguished in their Countrey Language and Figures: Nor did they we other Books in the manifold Revolution of Times, for the interpretation of the Stars. Moreover, Fathers instruct their Lay-Sons, and Mothers their Daughters, at home on Holydayes, or at their coming to Church, that they are daily made more perfect, as well by Learning as by Experience. For by an old Cultome of the Nation, the Laicks lean upon these Stakes, in long Journeys they take to visit Countrey-Churches; and so meeting together, by alleaging certain Reasons, they shew the qualities of the following year, by more true conjectures, than perchance others can by their speculative sciences, or that rely on their jugling Prognoffications.

Moreover they wonderfully observe the Artick Pole, as the Gnomon of the whole Heavenly Dial; also the Bears, or Wains, Venus's Distaff and Spindle, as familiar Signs of their antient Diety; and by looking into the Nature of them, they wonderfully provide for Accidents that shall happen.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Goths Alphabet.

F most antient time, when there were Gyants in the Northern pares, that is, long before that Latine Letters were found out, and be ore that Carmenra came out of Greecesto the Ports of Tyber, and came to the Romane Land with Evander, and expelling the Aborigines, taught that rude people, and almost wild, both Manners and Letters, the Northern Countries had their own Letters: A Token whereof is shewen by Stones of a huge bigness, fastened on the Tombes and Monuments of the Antients. And if any man doubt of what was done by the force of Gyants in old time, let him come thither, and he shall see greater Wonders that will amaze him, more then any Writing can promise or perform. Wherefore they carving these Actions upon Stones, left them to perpetual memory, as I read in the first Book, and 7. Chapter, of the History of my most dear Brother John Magnus, my Predecessout, Arch-Bishop of Upfal. Also others for private accounts, like the Egyptians, used many Figures of Living Creatures, instead of Letters and do yet use them by a Domestick Ingennity ; as I shal shew underneath by & by: Some like to these are to be seen now at Rome amongst the old Obelisks, wherein leveral Lerrers fignified a several name; as a Woolf, a covetous man; A Fox, a deceitful person; A Bee, the King; because it behoves the Governour of the people, to have the Honey of Clemency, mingled with the Sting of Justice. Moreover, as Epiftles written in Paper are now fent amongst men, to formerly the Northern people appointed Letters engraven upon Wood, for a famous kind of Paper to be fent from one to the other; and now adayes when they want Paper in the Camp of Souldiers, or in the belieging of Cities, they fiely use the Bark of Birch, cut into leaves, or thin plates, to write their Letters upon; and it is so much the lafer, for that this Rind is spoiled by no accident of Rain or Snow. Moreover there are found some Northern people of so quick wit, who having never learned Latine Letters, nor yet the Alphaber of the Goths, they make an Alphabet for themselves, from the Figures and Instruments of Things, and they we these to help their Memories, writing them single on a Skin, Paper, or Rind. And they communicate this Secret to none but fuch as are of their own Families, caufing Ink to be made of a Cole powdred, and Milk, or Common Water. or the Year on over the basing of Golden's Arrive and Solden Myear in the fact, and I was all and a fact, and I was all and a fact, and I was all and a fact, and I was a fact, and a fact

OLAVS

OLAUS MAGNUS

GOTH, Arch-Bishop of VPSAL:

The Wonderful Nature of Northern Things.

An Epitome of the Second Book.

CHAP. I.

Of Veins of Brimstone, and Combustion of the Waters.

Here are some Veins of Brimstone, neer to the Rivers of Waters, which being often kindled very wide, like to slames, they spread ready to destroy all round about: which sight, the Inhabitants in Island, and Scotland, very cold Countries, behold by a continual increase of heat? Moreover in the South Goths Land, not far from the City Vexian, there is a champion and muddy Lake; which by its siery vertue, doth as it were in a moment, or in a very short time, boyl or burn whatsoever is let down into it to be boyled, and drawn up again with a Cord. And it is found out, that the like Lake neer to the Metropolis of Nidrosum, in the Kingdome of Norway, hath the same Nature, especially from this Argument, That in the greatest cold it never freezes.

CHARLE

CHAP. II.

Of the Admirable Nature of some Mountains.

Believe that the whole World have had the Experience, of what Nature the Mountains of Iceland are; because beyond the Relation of the Antients, in our Gothick Maps, that may serve to supply the Description of Ptolomes we shew the Scituation and Nature of these Mountains to be singular; namely that there is on the top of them almost a perpetual Snow, and at the bottome a fire of Brimstone, alwayes burning forth without any consuming of it self. Those that come too near are easily choked by the force of the dust and sparks, and especially because many burning Gulphs, in many places, appear with the Ashes of burnt Mountains and Valleys: which again growing anew by a silent increase of Brimstone, as it were in a circular measure of time, are disposed again for combistion. For there are within the Bounds of Normas, most vast and most high Mountains, that men are ascending four days, and as many dayes are they coming down.

CHAP. III.

A Description of Iceland, and of the Nation there.

TCaland is a Land lying under the North Pole, opposite to the Winds, especially to the South-Weit, and neer to the Frozen Sea, and therefore it is defervedly called The Frozen Countrey, or The nemoff Thule; which was ce ebrated by all the Antients; whole Inhabitants are faid by Saxo Sialandicus, to be most continent; and very good Christians in Religion, having their own Writings, and a Hiltory of things acted valiantly : And they now write the A Sts of their own Time, which they honour with Songs and Rimes, and they engrave them on Promontories, or Rocks, that they can never fail Politerity, unless it fall out by fome injury of Nature. The scituation of the Island is extended between the South and North, a hundred German miles in length: For the greatest part, it is mountainous, and not manured, especially toward the North Countrey, by reason of the sharp blasts of the aforesaid South-West Wind, which will not let any Shrubs to grow: It is an Island to be praised for the extraordinary Miracles in it; for there is a Rock or Promontory in it, that boyle like to Mount Atma, with perpetual fires; and there it is supposed that the place of Hell is, and of Purgatory, to purge foul fouls. For there are found Spirits or Ghofts, shewing themselves open for mens Ministery, or by reason of some violent chance where men are killed, some Apparitions do offer themselves so manifestly to lye with those they know, that they are received by ignorant people, as though they were alive, and they shake hands with them; and the Errour is not perceived untill these Visions be vanished. The Inhabitants very often presage the sates of Princes; and by the Revelation of Ghosts appearing, they are not ignorant what is done at a great distance from them in the World.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Horrible found of the hollow Caves by the shores of the Sea.

Oreover there is in the Northern parts, a notable Province called Anger Mannia, the Inhabitants whereof are most cunning hunters: for by that gaine namely by felling of pretious hides, they obtaine great wealth. There are also excellent husbandmen, so that they know how by the benefit of the Snow and fire, not only to make plain fields, but also the high tides of Mountains to become fruitful grounds. For they put fire about the Autumnal Equinostiall into the thick fhrubs and herbs , and they to care unly dispose of the ashes and dust that arises thence against the fall of the Snow that will come upon it, that by the viscolity thereof they grow as fat as with Oxe dung? Hence it is that they carry off from thence a greater crop of Corn, and have a more plentifull harveit. But I shall speak of these things underneath concerning husbandry. For this Province harh many most high Mountains, the tops whereof make a high appearance to those that faile in the Bothrick Sea , all the yeare by reason of the constant whitenesse of the Snow, so that seeing this eminent Sea-mark, they can avoid many hideous dangers, and more fecurely come to fale Havens. Moreover when they come to the bottoms of them which stand in the deepest Seas, either by to ne accident or purpose of Nature, they are so frighted by the high roring waves, that unlesse they can escape with fall rowing down, or by aftrong wind, they are all most killed with fear alone; and in many days they can fearle recover their former health of mind and body, by reason of the trouble of their heads. The bottoms of those Mountains have winding creeks at the entring and going out of the waters, or clifts made by the wonderfull work of Nature, wherein by reason of the long cavities, that formidable noise is made like to Thunder under the ground, the cause whereof when rash youth hath gone in to leek more curiously than securely, their thips have been prefently filled with waters from the clifts above, and by the force of the winds, that they have loft their lives with admiration. But to avoid this danger, the wonderfull height of the Mountaines, by the Snow that lies alwayes on the tops of them do clearely warn Sea-men a farr off to take heed, and to prevent the danger, least nature which is the Mother of this inferneable noise, might seem to have provided no remedy against this secret and fubtill danger. Also for many miles that terrible found flying through the Ayre, being lent from the same Mountains, is heard by the Marriners, warning them to e cape and fly farr from the ruine of that lad noile, for if they be neere, they cannot away with it. But what Vincentius in spec. hist. lib. 31. cap. 24. thought of the like matter, I shall shew in his own words. Among st the Tartars there is a certain small Mountain, wherein there is reported that there is a bole, whence in Winter such great tempests of winds come forth, that men can hardly, and that with great danger passe by it. In Summer time there is alwaies beard a noise of the winds , but little comes forth at the hole. But in the Northern Lakes that are Frozen, under the Ice, by reason of the wind inclosed, no lesser noise is heard than of a most cruel Thunder, shut in on all sides by the thicknesse of the Clouds. Of this I thall thew tomthing in the Chapter concerning fifthing in the Ice.

CHAP.

D

Of the Rock of the Sea-Monk.

Here is a high Mountaine in the Sea, it was formerly under the dominion of the rich Kingdom of Norwey, neer to the Island Tarens, which the Marriners by a conformable appellation call, the Monk. For it hath by its naturall scituation and incision of parts, especially of the Crown, a wrought hood, and also the propriety of it, fo that in cruel tempests all that fly to it are confolated and received fecurely. Moreover wo to all those that being driven by the violence of wind, cannot come to the skirt of ir, or to ride neere it : because the South-West winds are so fierce there, and the North winds, that Marriners who would avoid the sharpnesse thereof, are constraind every moment with all their skill and force, and labour, and experience to look unto it, and to watch, how they may escape to that Monk as the most secure port. Moreover in the Northern Seas, there are many high Mountains that are fignes as it were of secure Ports, that are to be made against what tempest whatsoever, or calmnesse of weather. But before the entrance of them there lye hid many blind Rocks, which as they drown'd many Ships when the wind is but small, so when there is a tempest, they save them more wonderfully, by reason of the waves of the Sea rifing high. There are also Mountaines of Faulkons, Eagles, Crows, that shew security to Marriners that retire, or a caution to those that shun them, that they may not come neere to them. Moreover there are Mountains of firife, and most firing Castles, especially in Bast-Finland, raised upon the mouths of the Rocks by reason of the Warrs with the Muscovite, and they are so fortified by Nature and Art, that the besiegers which way soever they make their approach, may more eafily intercept the Mountaines than they can the fores.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Crowned Rock, and the multitude of Fish.

"Hat no work of Nature may be concealed, it is here shewed that in the the Western Bothnia toward the utmost parts of the North, in the Parish of Lula, and Diocesse of Upfall, there is a Rock in the Sea, men call it commonly Bioga Blubben, which with its high top is feen by those that fail farr from it, to have three tops, or else to be round. And if the Inhabitants want the Aspect, shadow or harbour of it, who are most skillfull fishermen at Sea, their way would not be fafe, nor could they find food convenient. For by the wonderfull height of it, when a most thick darknesse of the Clowds rose, being seen in the middle of the waters (as I had tryal of it in the yeare, 1519) those that are out of their way are faved. For so great useth to be the obscurity of the darkneffe and ayre condenfed, that one that in a small Ship holds the fore-Castle, can scarce be discerned to the hinder Castle. But by applying to the shore, there is such an infinite multitude of fish to be seen at the foot of the Mountaine, here and there, that one is much amased to behold it, and is satiared in his stomack by it. For part of this fish being sprinkled with Sea water in the plain at the foot of the Mountaine, and to be torrefied by the wind, is wont to be dispersed upon the earth for 2, or 3, Acres of ground : and part of them are put upon spears, and stretched upon the hatches of the Ship, especially the fishes of the greater kind, that they may be dried in the Sun and Aire.

But they are all kept either to spend in their Houses, or for to make profit of by Merchandise, and also for their necessities and pleasures beyond Seas, but chiefly that by bartering with them, they may provide themselves with plenty of Corn, (which doth stenderly grow ripe there; by reason of the cold round about) and that they may be able to afford them to Country people in place of dainties, and against they may receive costly skins which are the Country wealth, in lieu of them. At the foot therefore of this Crown'd Mountaine, there ariseth a smell of fish hanged up, that such who at a long distance saile that way, can smell it coming to them. And when they perceive that smell, though they be tossed in a tempestuous dark night, they know how to preserve themselves and their goods from eminent Ship-wrack.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Flowing and Ebbing of the Sea.

Here are certain Bosoms of the Sea, in my Gothick Map, or Description of the Northern Countries, that are engraved on the shore of Norway; name-Ty Roeff, and Lo Hoeth; betwixt which, fo great is the Gulf, that the Mariners that come thither unawares, are in a moment sucked in by its sudden circumvolution, all force and industry of the Pilot being taken away, especially those who know not the Nature of the place, or are otherwise driven on by the force of Tempelis; or that, by contempt, little regard this imminent danger: Wherefore those that would fail thither from the Coasts of Germany, hire the most experienced Marriners and Pilots, who have learned by long Experience; how by fteering obliquely, and directing their course, they may avoid the danger better: and there are wont to bend their course over a great part of the Sea, by direction of a Compasse, that they may not fall into the Gulph; and chiefly about the most populous Ciries Andanes, and Trondanes, and three other Islands, where part of the Sea is called Mofta Stroom; in which place the Flood is greater then in other waters about it. Also the Sea there, within the hollow Cave, is blown in when the Flood comes, and when it ebbs, it is blown out, with as great force as any Torrents or swift Floods are carryed. This Sea, as it is faid, is sailed in with great danger, because such who sail in an ill time, are suddenly sucked into the Whirl-pools that run round. The Remainders of Shipwracks, are feldome restored again; and if they be restored again, they are so broken against the Rocks, that they feem all in shivers, and covered with hoarinels,

CHAP. VIII.

Of Charybdis, and the Wonderful Nature of Ice.

In the Chapter immediately before, was faid, how dangerous it is to fail in the Seas of Norway especially where the Marriners are put in hazard by a vast Gulph; the reason where of is inscrutable, unless they be very provident to prevene it. For here the Nights are very long, most bitter cold, and hidden Rocks are in many places, like to Towers, and there are most hideous Sea-Monsters, and terrible; as I shall shew underneath concerning Monsters. Moreover, the Ice is very hard, like to the walls of huge houses, cast down with Tempests, which are ready to cause inevitable ship-wracks: yet all these are more tolerable, in D 2

undertaking any dangerous Voyage, than to try the mercy of the Irish Nation; which (as I can prove by many Examples here omitted) are wont to invite men in milery with tears, that when they have spoiled them of their Goods, they may send them half dead to their torn ships. But what belongs to admiring the Nature of the Ice, this is a certain Rule; That the Ice (as Saxo session) is brought in great sholes upon the Island shore; and if a piece of it be kept in a vessel, though with great diligence it will presently melt; but the rest of the Ice of that kind goes back from the Promontory into the Deep; yet it is preserved in vast Desarts, especially under Inniper Bushes, and also under the Chaff of suge Barns, and under the shingles of Pitchtrees when the Sun is yet in Leo; and Drunkards that take their pleasure, take it out from thence, in the heat of Summer and melt it in Wine or Beer, But none put in Snow to drink any Liquour with because it is clammy, and not purged from it; for there are in it secret reed-worms slike as woollen cloth bath.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Leather-ships made of Hides, used by the Pyrats of Greenland.

The high Rock in the Sea called Hatifark, which is half the way to Green-land; wherein there is found a kind of Pyrats, that whe Leather-ships, and by an arbitrary Navigation not so much above as beneath, they lye in wait, boring holes in the ships of Merchants about the Pump. I saw two of these Leather-ships in the year 1505, above the West-part, within the Cathedral Church also, dedicated to St. Halvard, and they were hanged up against the Wall, as to be seen; which Haquinus, King of the same Countrey, passing near the shores of Greenland, with a Warlike Navy, was reported to have taken, when they thought to have drowned his ships. For the Inhabitants of that Countrey are wont to get no small profits by the spoils of others, by these and the like treacherous arts, who by their thieving wit, and by boring a hole privately in the sides of the ships beneath (as I said) let in the water, and presently cause them to sink.

CHAP. X.

Of the inscrutable Depths of the Coasts of Norway.

So unmeasurable is the Depth in many Mountainous Coasts of Norway, that Smen can find no bottome with Cords, as many as a ship can hold, the Plummer of Lead being let down; and such is the force of Nature; that the higher the Mountains are, the more inscrutable is the depth of the water at the foot of them; though their height, in respect of Heaven, is held to be very small above the Earth: Also the feet of these Mountains are so hollow and deep, and crooked, that letting down plumb Lines, it can hardly be known which way their hollowness bends. Moreover in the Island Bornholm, which is under the King of Denmark, there are some Lakes sound not very large, whose depth cannot be sounded. Lassly, by the Dalacarly, by the Mountains, that is, men of the Valleys, there is the Lake Rundon, therefore called Round, because the ground of it cannot be measured. Moreover, not far from the Kings Palace Holm in Smethland, there is a place amongst the Rocks of the Seas, commonly called Rundin ship, that is, the Round Gulph, that there one cannot find how deep it is to the bottome of it, Further, many more Pits and small Lakes are found,

rom

ont ont whose depth hath been often sought for, but could never be found. There are seen also very long, but very narrow Caves of Rocks and Mountains, as if they were cut out, and made hollow with Iron Influments, running into dark places of Retreat, wherein the waters making a noile, that come thicker by Tempett, or by calm Weather, a terrible sound is raised: from which, unless such as come neer, quickly with-draw themselves, their Ears are so overcome with a mighty noise in them, that for many hours they remain deaf, and hear nothing, by reafon of the violence of the Object.

Of the Ports of Iron Rings.

I shewed in the former Chapter, how inscrutable the depth of the Sea is upon the Coasts of Norway, between the most high Mountains: now I shall shew how between the Winding Gulphs and Rocks, those that fail thicker, may more securely, without Anchors, find and sashion their stations. Wherefore here are feen Iron Rings, larger then a Souldiers Buckler, fastned in meited Lead, at the fides of many Mountains, as the Sea runs on, by the munificence of good Princes, and at their cost, especially toward the rich City Berge, that when the Flood or Tempelt urgeth, Cords being suddenly put in the greatest ships ride lafe, as in fecret places. But it behoves them not to be ignorant of the ways, who commit themselves to so dangerous a Labyrinth: For the Coast is so full of Rocks, that such who know not the way, can scarce go forward or backward from thence. Also by reason of the difficulty, and roughness of that and the like places (as I shall shew underneath more particularly, concerning ships of enemies) they will fuffer shipwrack; and it ships of War, or of Pyrats, come thither with force of Enemies, or are driven in by Tempests, being destitute of counsel and helpsthey are oft-times confumed by Famine, Cold, or by the Inhabitants that fer upon them, and are made a miferable spectacle, as though they sought against the Elements. And if any man read the Chronicles of Normay and Denmark, especially about Christian the second King thereof, he shall find a most horrible infelicity in all-concerning the lamentable event in such like cases. Wherefore the Enemies are often frighted from entring within these Rocks, least they should be more severely broken in pieces, and more secretly, by the open of secret Rocks between the Mountains, and in the Gulphs, than by any open Ene-

CHAP. XII.

Of the Dangerous Passage of the Mountains, Scars and Sula, between Sweden, and Norway.

There is a Province in the Northern Kingdoms called Jemphihia, that is subject to the Arch-bishop of Opfat, with the Mannor or Court of Vesterhusia, time out of mind. From which Jemphihia, over those very high Mountains spoken of in the Title, the Inhabitants of the Land, and strangers in Summer time, make no less terrible, than dangerous Voyage: who yet in Winter over the Frozen Lakes, Pools, and Rivers, can make a shorter cut, and go which way they please. For these huge Mountains, the like whereof are scarce sound in Europe, on the Eastern part, at the entrance at the foot, have Gates or Passages of most hard Flint, partly cut by Nature, and partly at the charge of bountiful

Princes



thefe

care

fem-

And

re.

Sno

find

ring

C COL

este

gh :

un-

Do

22-

all

lly ps

Of Passage in the Dark.

Sometimes also, when either profit or necessity urgeth them, the people of the North have a very ingenious manner, to pass through Woods in the night time; and also in the day time, when in the most remore parts Northward, before and after the Winter Solstice, there is a continual Night. And they that want these Remedies, search out for corrupted Barkor Oke; and these they place at a certain distance in the way they purpose to go, that by the Light thereof they may travel which way they please. And it is not the Bark onely that will do this, but the body rotten; and that Mulirom called Agarisk, that grows on the top of a Tree bearing Acorns, whose Vertue and Nature it is to shine in the Night; as also those Winged-Worms, that fly to the Antumnal Equinottial: but there, because they presently fall, being killed with cold, are used for no use. Wheretore more frequently they gather the putrid Oke, and Agarick, that difcover themselves by their own light, for the foresaid use in Woods, and at home also; that by the light of it, as by a lighted candle, they may more securely go into places full of combustible matter, as are Barns for Winter, that are full of ripe Corn and Hay. Also there are some men there so sharp sighted, who will boaff, that without any material Light, they can almost see and handle all things.

CHAP, XV.

Of Lights, and Pitch-Torches.

Lights, that they may do their necessary Offices for their Houshold benefit. Wherefore we acknowledge that men who live under the Pole, live by using the fat of Sea-monsters in Winter time, in doing all their occasions. They call this fat by a vulgar name Traan, or Lyse, from Lighting; for put into Lamps, it shines most clearly and largely, especially in the houses of great Families, and in Churches, where there is required a perpetual Light in reverence to the Lords Body.

But least it should be drank up by Night-Ravens, or Owls, or Bats, they keep the mouth of the Lamps alwayes that with Iron Bars.

Moreover they use in all the North, Pine-Tree Torches, that have natural Pitch upon them, by reason of an universal scarcity; as also other common Candles: namely this way, that employing both their hands, they put the shingles of Pine-Tree, finely divided to a certain number, under their Girdles; which burning at the other end, they hold in their mouthes, or under their Hats: and thus they walk which way they please, being hindered by no blasts of wind, and do what other things they are minded to do. Some of them use to light common candles, as long as ones arm, according to the length of the night. But in the time of Wars, which are more frequently fought in the dark long Winter, than in Summer, they go through their Troops of Horses and Foot, with Torthes of the best pitch, and better made with the Rosin of the Firr-tree,

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Breaking forth of Standing-wa-

A Mongst the wonders of the Northern parts, the fight of waters is one, which is not to frequent as hurtfull to the Innabitants of the Pro ince of avianiepas toward the upper places of Sweeden, where commonly is the greater part of men, they are called Huns, as being people which formerly did more tamoully make warre against, and Triumph over the Huns. In that Province there is a vall River, the falling of the water where f, is carried down with to freepa descent, that it o times beats down Creatures that cannot wim brongly; For flowing from the top of high Mountaines whilst it is broken by the Cifts of Rocks, and runs into them, it als into the deep Valleys with a mamio d not e of waters. But being alwaies beaten back by thenes in the way, at runns alwaies at the lame pace and witt force. Therefore in all the Channel, the water being every where troubled alike, there is atwates a white troth upon it. Yer the terrible nature of it is to be connected in this, that every yeare a little before the Summer solflice, in three places it is filled and bound up with lo great a heap of Ice and Trees, fatt together, that tho e who dwell beneath the lower banks of its Channel, when it is ready to break lotth, are lotced to fly to higher grounds. But in the mean-time they lend forth Scouts to find in what part that terrib e breach is tike to be made, least the witt course of it, should dogreat michiet, wherefore the River it selfe, though in every breach it makes, it lyes upon all the neighbours to it, yet by the aboundance of choile fifth, as Salmons and others, it brings great wealth to them all: which do not only ferve to furp y the Inhabitants there, but they tran port them into forraign parts beyond the Seas in great Ships: and it perpetually remines this verrue, that the neerer it flows to the Channels of the Sea, the more it abounds with better fish. Nor are they wanting in a liberall and free offering and giving of fish, if any stranger come that please to accept of them by way of

CHAP. XVII.

Of the three famous Lakes of the Goths.

Here are many famous Lakes in Northern Climates, that are wonderfull or their magnitude and (circuation; the chief whereof is in the Country of the Vestrogoths, ailed Vener, which is I o Italian miles in length, and almost as many in breadth, which is divided into many and various Iff and, and being charged with many vaft Rivers that run into it, and those very large, about 24, it hath but one place to run out, whereof I shall speak underneath by and by. In this Lake and about it there are many magnificent houses of noble men, the chiefe whereof is the Callle Leckio, built upon a high Rock, by the work of the Bilhops of Scars, having a well in it cut out of the hard flone above 200. feet deep. This cutting was not done with iron infiruments alone, but by flame which was daily fed with 300, fatter flitches of Bacon successively day by day, fire being put in and taken out. For it is found by experience that nothing will fooner penetrate the hard Rock there, than lard and hogs greafe. There are also adjoyning to this Lake many antient Towns, as Lindecopia and Trignallia, which out of mines of the most choile iron and seel make a plentifull gaine. There is also another Lake called Verber, that hath waters to clear and bright

one,

ct of

1914

nore

ince

110

mg.

the

ma-

12y,

nn-

roth

ery

ind

eil

CYT-10

rle ту ce do

full

y of

nort

De-

OUL

nd

ble

the 0.0 but

day DOale. and

miand

bright, though they are of a perfect green colour, that a man may see a halfepenny at the bottom of it, which is very deep. Above this Lake, there is a famous Monastery of St. Brigit, otherwise Brigid, and another daughter St. Gatharine, which was founded and endowed by the wealth and devotion of them both. Moreover there is another Town called Jonacopia, in the Southern parts, memorable to all following ages, by realon of the magnificent Parliaments of the Kings. There are also Mines in this Lake that cannot be exhausted toward the Coast that is opposite to the North. Lastly there is the Monastery Aivastra, that was sumpenously built, and endowed in the times of St. Bernard. Neere this place in the Village Talftada, King Suercherus was killed on Christs Birth night by his own groom, who nied a bridle for weapons. The third Lake is ealled Melet : on the banks whereof are built Cities, Castles, and Magnificent Houses of Noble men. Moreover not far from thence on the firm land, there are unexhausted Mines of Silver, Copper, and iron, that are rich beyond mans estimation. And hence it comes that the King of Sweeds and Goths is no way inferiour in all manner of treature and riches to the real of the P inces of Europe. Also there are Lakes of fresh water in the Mountaines of Lapponia called Lalatresch, that are in length 300 Italian miles, and 120 in breadth. Moreover there are many more collaterall standing waters besides, and Lakes not altogether so long and broad, so full of fish - that the like are not sound in all Europe, I may fay in the whole wold. Then there is the most famous Lake Albus under the Pole : last of all Pienthen in Finland, with such like infinite Lakes, standing waters, Rivers and deep mineralls.

Of dangerous Caves.

I said in the Chapter before, that 24. great Rivers ran into that one Lake Vener, from the most high Mountains of Sweeden & Norway. And although at their entrance they make a great noile, and are full of whirl-pits, all the way it descends; yet the Mountains for so large a circuit making relitance, they never find any more but one place to run forth, and this is to twift and lowd, that it may be heard above 20 Italian miles, The common name is Trotherra, that is the Devills cont, it may be by reason of the noyse and sound it makes when it falls into a Laky plain, or became under the head long descent of it, there is found a most notable den of Thieves : to which there was a narrow passage, that none frequented but Thieves and Robbers, because that River is swift, and full of Whirl-pits, and so it was not suspected, that Malefactors did meet there especially in Summer. But in the Winter they were taken by reason of the exhalation of moke, and so were suddenly drawn to punishment, and all their (poils of most pretious stuffe, of Silver, Gold, and costly skins, were confiscate to the King. But no lawfull accuser coming against them in half a yeare, to whom there might be made restitution of the goods stoln from him , as it is according to law and cultome, by the Kings command, to maintaine the publick peace, with them ships were built, and these were sent into Rivers that run into the Sea, or were deputed by the wifdome of provinciall Governours to defend the ditches and walls.

singesteed out Land \$75, when the moltimeral man Mary Claus, whole

menter del promo en esperante de la compansa del compansa de la compansa de la compansa del compansa de la compansa del compansa de la compansa del compansa de la compansa de la compansa del c

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Excellent antiquity of the Kingly Fort Aavanes of the Vestrogoths.

"Hhough formerly the Prince of the Goths were more enflamed to warrs, than they took pleafure in any other delights, for they held warre to be the chiefest comfort both to their bodys and minds, so handle the hard weapons, and in most cruel battles to win divers Triumphs. Yet many of them Handing how to adde to this delight for thing more magnificient, they left to their polietties lumptious and profitable buildings : even as one Scarinus the third Monarch of the Goths, a most mighty Prince is found to have done by a fingular example, especially in the Country of the Vestrogeths, which he did illustrate with his more frequen presence; and that by reason of a neighbour King of Norway Sidagems; to whom as he was allyed by blood, to also he defired to be more neer to him in the Icituation of his Country, and in friendship. He built so witely the City Scata called so, from his own name in a place amongst the Vestrogoths that was senced about with Lakes and standingwaters, as his successors have been unwise to let it fall down and come to defolarion. This was the antient leat of the Kingdome of the Goths. But not farr from it, there are some prints remaining of another Kingly Caffle, called Aaranes, the scituation whereof walls and structure do so allure the beholders to admire it, that they firmely judge that no more starely building at that time wasto be found in all Europe: But what will not length of time change? Yet the fignes at those rumes put posterity in mind of the magnificence of their anceftors. This Cattle had about it all commodities, which never any feat of mortall men could alike obtaine from Heaven. For on the one fide it had toward the West and North the vast Lake Vener to full of fish, as we faid before, to furnish the Kings Table with delights: on the otherfide toward the South for a long space, for a perpetual security, there was a muddy dirty Lake, the superficies whereof was all covored with green graffe, and shrubs, upon which a man cannot goe, and if he do but tread upon it, it fucks him in. For the mud finking down, ir turns to Clogg Boys, and fifthy moisture that actracts those that come unto it. There are also many small and deep Rivers like veines running through these Lakes, that will not let a man come to the Castle, that it were impossible but by the multitude of bridges, (which were formerly 40.) by long turnings like tabyrinths to come thither. And the fame difficulty continues in the most sharp, Winter: For those Lakes seldome freeze, by reason of the hot exhalations of the Mines of Brimstone. But in the East fide, which is opposite to the first part of the Caltle, which had but one approach by land, there were fuch pleasant Meadows and fruitfull fields, that nothing more could be defired for the benefit of Nature, there were also present grounds, and excellent places for Hunting, in the Fields and Woods, which you may fee at the first fight of that Land : which though it look horridly by the thickneffe of Woods, and hath not been tilled for many ages palt, by reason of Warres, Famine, Pestinance, and Domestick discords: Yet any man that views it, may fee the prints of turrows and plows, and frequent heaps of flones (whereof the fields use to be cleanled and freed to make them the more fruitfull) which are there to be feen among the highest Trees; A certaine argument being thus left to posterity, that the people of former ages were fart more in number, and contented with narrower fields, than men are feen to be now adays, wherefore this Castle feems to have been more storishing about the the yeare of our Lord 955, when the most magnificent King Olaus, whole furTS,

to he

12 ile

de de

智力は此時

79 e,

ort 曲,

沙水

et

做

nes

ent cia

ON the g - name was Scot-kanung, was baptized by St. Sigfrid, Arch-Bishop of Tork, who went out of England to preach the Faith of Christ, to the same King Olam, by the Exhortation or intreaty of Eldred, or Mildred, King of England, who also staid a while in this Caltle, until another Seat of the Kings called Hufaby, could be provided &confecrated for the use of the same St. Sigfrid and his Clergy. This being done he baptized Pagans and Idolarers, first instructed in the Catholick Faith; which also three Nephews of the faid Bishop did; namely, Unamannus, Sunamannus, and Vinamannus, (one of which was a Priett; the second, a Deacon; the third, a Sub-Deacon) whom the Bishop lest behind him : Yer all three of them, like to bleffed St. John Baptist, by the indignation of an adulterous woman, were flain with the fword: whole bodies are worthipped by all men with great great honour, in the Cathedral Church of Veven. But of this matter, more at large, as is shewed in the History of my dear Brother, and Predecessour, Johannes Magnus, the Goth, in the proper places.

CHAP. XX.

Of the wonderful Garden of the Mountain Kindaberg, neer the said Castle.

Here is a most high Mountain amongst the Vestrogoths, not far from the faid Kingly Castle, and the Lake Vener, and it is commonly called Kindakulle, it is to high, that it appears to Marriners that are 40. Italian miles from it in the same Lake, like to a black Cloud in the Ayr. Wherefore mamy that are driven by Tempelis, and force of the Winds, endeavour by all means to come to the foot of it, where they know that there is a most fafe Harbour, on the top of this Mountain there are such pleasant Boughs, Herbs, and Fruits, of divers kinds (excepting the Vine) that come up of themselves, nor more rare than fweer, as if they were fowed or planted, that there scarce can be found a more delightsome place in all the Northern Climats. There is a sweenesse that cannot be related, and that is multiplyed by the concent of divers Birds, except the Papingay. That most pleasant place is known to very sew, and they onely old men. Nor is it easily to be discovered to young people, least being released from more severe Discipline, they should cast themselves down to all pleatures, or rather Beaftlinesse, and would hardly or never be reclaimed to good manners. For pleasure it self brings on life and Custome , and constrains men ; Cultome Necessity; and Necessity, Despair, without this mountainous place, and elsewhere. Also, farther toward the North, there are found very good and Iweet Fruirs, as Pears, Apples, Cherries, Prunes, but none before Mid-June, and then hardly any full ripe. And some kinds of these Fruits, as well at home, as in the Woods, grow ripe onely by the cold approaching, and they last hanging the greatest part of Winter upon the naked boughs, without leaves. But these Fruits are better than any Vineger, for pleasant sauce; yet they are but small, by reason of the constant Cold round about. But Forraign Fruits soon brought from the Coasts of Germany by Sea, as are Apples, are most greedily eaten by the Inhabitants, by reason of the sweet Juyce that is in them, that very seldome or never do they escape the danger of divers Difeases (especially French Diseases) or fuch as are mortal.

E 2 CHAP, 21.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Beauty and Plenty of the Island Elandia of the Goths.

Landa. or Oclandia is one of the Islands of the Gothick Sea, divided from the Southern Gothland by a short cut of the Sea, the fairest of all Islands. For it is to replenished with many Goods, whereby it makes recompense for the short cut (that can be passed over in two dayes) and by the fruitfulness of the ground. The Meadows and Fields are admirable, for the unspeakable sweet smell of Herbs.

There are many Heards of small Horses, but they are very strong; for by their strength and agility they exceed many greater bodied Horses; and Forraign and Domestick Chapmen buy them for their pleasures, and transport them into remote Lands, to be sold as Wonders of Nature. For they are most ingenious, that they can be taught by them to dance and jump, at the sound of the Drum, or Trumpet; and it is their Exercise by such shews to get gain. Moreover, they are taught to leap through Hoops of Iron or Lead, not very large, as Dogs do, and they will turn themselves about with wonderful swiftness. Also being called by their proper names, they do it more or less, as they are commanded.

These Horses seed, when there is necessity, with nothing but broiled Fish, and Fir-tree Wood; and they will drink Ale and Wine till they be drunk, as I shall shew underneath concerning Elks. Wherefore this Island abounds so much with Fruits, Palture grounds, Cattel, Heards, and Fish, that it is sufficient to serve it self, and other places; and the Oxen, Sheep, And Butter thereof are so much approved beyond Seas, as if they were Physical. This Island of Old had many Castles, built in fit places senced both by Nature and Art, and well fortified; whereof some are changed into Christian Churches, serving at this day no less to desend Religion, than the Countrey: some of them are wholly made desolate by Wars. But there is one yet lest unto this day, which is the highest and strongest of them, called Borcholm; and the height of it serves such as sail far off in the Gorbick Sea, as a Watch-Tower, to direct them for their Winds and Ports, escaled the English, Scotch, Zealanders, Hollanders, who stand in need

of noted places in that Sea.

This Island is almost all compassed in with Marble stopes, upward and downward, neer the shore 20, or 30. Foot high, as if they were purposely placed there by Art. Also in the Eastern Coasts thereof that stand open to the wide side, there are many fair Harbours; to which Strangers coming by Sea, no less for curiofity, than necessity, are wont to view it, as 2 spectacle of Nature. In this Island in the time of peace, the Kings of Goths and Sweens, were wont to pass their times, because of the great pleasure of it, and their Exercise of Hunting. Also Forrain Princes at a neerer cut over Sea, could more commodiously meet them there, in the expedition of weighty Affairs. Again, neer the North Sea thereof, there ariseth a very high Mountain, which the Marriners to avoid an ill Omen, and Tempeffs at Sea, call the Virgin; for fuch as flay in the Harbour of it, use to please the Maids with small friendly gifts that are wont to be given to them, as with Gloves, Silk Girdles, and the like. And they feem to think that the Diety of that Mountain doth not take it ill, or will be ungrateful, as we read that it was done of Old, when a voyce was heard, that bad him who gave his Gift to change his port least he should be in danger, and in so doing he escaped; whereas all the reft were in hazard of all.

nd

or it hore and.

titit

and

018-

ım,

280

ing

111-

and side of order

n- te con in in

re

nd

ale

ith

y of

W25

總

In

In that Mountain men tay at let times of the yeare, there is a meeting of all the Northern Hags, that they may try their witchery: he that comes late to the Devills Ministery, is cruelly tormented. But these are but opinions, and no affertions to be granted.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the famous Island of the Goths called Gothland.

He Eastern part of Gothland is called so, as you would say a Good Land, or Land of the Goths, For Goth in their Mother tongue, fignifies good, or God, and Landia I gnifies Land. For it is good for many reasons : there are good people in it, there are good and secure Harbours round about it; there is good choise fields; it is good for Heards, Horles, Oxen; Fishing, Hunting, Water, Woods, Paltures, most fair Marble, and in all things necessary for mans nie. There is also in the North part of it, the famous Town Vifby, in which there is a most firm Castle. This City was once the principal Marts Town of the Goths, and of many other Lands, so frequented by Marchants-Wares, and plentifull with Riches, that the like to it was not found in Eu-The Goths, Sweeds, Ruffians, Danes, Pruffians, English, Scots, Flemmish, French, Fins, Vandals, Saxons, Spaniards, fingular nations, had their severall streets and Houses to dwell in, and all might be free Men. And coming in by Sea and Land they found all peaceable, untill by discord which is the most pernicious destroyer of all Kingdoms and men, it was overthrown: as also infinite other nations which flourished in former times. There are this day extant Marble Mines, that testify what the antient glory amplitude and comlinefle thereof were. There are yet Houses covered with scolop shell, dores of iron, windows of braffe or copper: they were formerly guilded and filver'd over, being an argument of mighty Treatures. Thence afterwards when hatred grew up and fraud, by the superfluous use of them, the Inhabitants divided, went into the Cities of the Vandals, who where no little enriched by the wealth of such guests, as Rome of old when Carthage was destroyed. The first armed Camp of the Goths descended into this Country, after they came forth of their own land, feeking in Europe and Asia new Lands, by reason of the insupportable multitudes of their Nations. Also many ages past, the Longobardi departing from the Island Scandia, for the like, or some more grievous cause, passed through this Island in Rugia, and went with infinite companies into other nations, and at last making a Kingdome, they fat down in Italy: which also Paulus Diaconus, their Hiltorian, restifies in his first book. Moreover the great King of Sweedland in the yeare of our Lord, 1288, appealed a dangerous Warr, that was between the Citizens of the City of Visby, and the common people of the faid Island, and he suffered the Citizens to repaire the Walls of the City that were fallen down, and to fortifie them with Bullworks and Fores. Albertus King of Sweeden being asked by the Princes of lower Germany, that our of their Sea he would eject the Vitalians that were most potent Pirats, he pawned this Island of Gothland to the Mr. of Pruffia for 20000 Crowns, the summe whereof Queen Magaret that succeeded him, collected in Swethland, and reflored that Iffind of the Kingdome of Sweeden, to its right and properties, to be possessed by a perpetual right, And Saxo Grammaticus, a most farrous Danish Historian, in many of his writings, afferts without doubt that this Island belongs to Sweeden. By this one of many arguments, becau'e they allwayes use the same language, Laws, Customs, conformity of manners and neighbourhood : also because they are subject to the Bilhop of the

six

質な

ijes

date date

111

EE 10

Atm

CIL

Na

teg of I

Y

and

by co

ingia

Ros

Goths of Lincopia, as to the first planter of the faith: from whom they ask, and fetch Episcopall rights. Also from this Island in all Mariners controversies, especially from the consulthip of Visby, there is fetcht and given Law, and a definitive sentence, what every man shall have or lose. This Law of Merchants and Marriners is very wisely made; and sooner ends controversies concerning unconstant waters, than other Courts do for firm Land.

CHAP, XXIII.

Of the Bucklers of Princes, engraven upon the Mountaines of Hanga.

How great care formerly the Kings and Princes of the Goths had to perpetu-Bucklers engraven in famous places, and left to their posterity do evidently shew, especially in Ostrogothia, Vestrogothia, and South Finland, in the Magnificent Port called Hanga: which is so pleasant and sate, that in the whole Northern Sea, and perhaps the large Ocean, it hath not one to equallit, or to be compared with it. For it freely receives all that come fayling thither from all partts, and it securely defends them within it, by its naturall strength, from all enemies ships, and from tempelis, so they be carefull themselves. For that harbour, like to a very large fort is pleasantly scituated in the midst of Mounraines and Valleys : and on the Rocks it hath the most antient Arms of the Goths & Sweens, in a larned order, engraven according to the antient simplicity, especially to let posterity know that there rid continually, a Navy for the defence of the Kingdoms, against all affaults of enemies, and from thence as oft as need was, they proceded to open Warr. And at this day for the like reason both the Prince and Nobi ity have a Navy in the same port, especially because the neighbouring places can afford all things that may be suddenly required for to furnish a Navy of confederates : and all things will turn contrary to Enemies, if they intending milchiefe should come into this Harbour, Formerly Divns Ericus King of the Goths and Sweens, offering peace, when it was despited, he by a Warlike Fleet at Sea, and an Army of Horse conquered the Tavesti Careli, and Bothnii; and forced them to embrace quickly the Christian Religon. For Babarous people are indocile, and cannot be drawn or invited to take upon them the Yoke of Christ, unlesse they be compelled by force of Arms. For (as Albertus Crantzins, Lib. 9. c. 37. reports of Vandalia) Great is the love men beare totheir Ancestors Traditions. In this Harbour the King of Sweeden, when they are provoked by great injury are wont to proclaime Warr, with a Navy furnished, or to be furnished, especially against the Russians or Muscovites : and again in the same Port, upon equal terms, are they wont to prescribe, and receive conditions of peace from the Embassadours of the faid Princes. But that this is observed more frequently in this place than any other is by reason of the old custome of their Ancestors which they follow, who engraved their Armes there in the Mountains, that the perpetuall firmnesse of thele, things being een, which they judged good for the Common-wealth, they might establish them to posterity to hold them with one consent, and an Oath given, by the Arms and liberry of their Ancestors. But what Armes and Buellers, the old Goths and Sweeds used hath at home and abroad, may be observed by those present Ensignes, and be shewed by reasons also. For the Goths of old had a Lyon rampant regardant with a Crown on his head, leaping fiercely upon three Silver streams in a field of a sky colour, and they now have the fame, onely that dwell at Origan, that in conquering they may spare, and looking back they may take heed, how fuddenly those that leap, cease from

when they made Wars in Forraign Lands, and conquered. had a Boar on their Standards. But those that descend from the same Goths, as from their Parents, were distinguished by variety of Arms, according to the diversity of their Families; as the Cimbri by a Bull; the Silavanians, by a Dragon; the Gepides, by a smalthip; the Alavi. Burgandians, and Swedes, by a Cat, in their Warlike Standards as Plutareh thinks. But the Smedes, or Sweans, had Arms of Old; namely two Virgins crowned, with Golden Cloths, mutually embracing one the other in a Green Field, as shewing the excellency of the Nymphs Goddesses in that Country.

Bu now the Kings of Sweden use three Golden Crowns in a Blew Field, by reason of the inscrutable largeness of their Dominions, and their magnificent Warlike Deeds, and the unexhausted plenty of Minerals. There are also the Arms of many private Noble-men, that are distinguished with a wonderful variety; also of Cities and Provinces, that in Warlike Expeditions, undertaken for their Laws and Countrey, such multitudes of men might be more orderly directed to one end; as I shall shew more at large underneath, concerning the directed

ction of armed multitudes.

CHAP, XXIV.

Of the Mountains with Helmets.

S you fail from the German Ocean toward the North, three dayes before Athe entrance into the Kingly City Holm, of the Kingdom of Sweden appears, you meet with an admirable Port, called in the Vulgar Tongue, Hielms. nabben, or Elgunabben; because that Wild Affes, which are named Elgs, are wont to come thicher, because of the attrastion of the sweet Blasts: or also because the Mountains, in whose sides the Heavens are, seem so to be framed by Nature, that you would think that Souldiers Helmets were engraven upon them; as if Art were not sufficient to forge Stones, unless Nature should direst her, and shew what belongs to the Warlike Northern People, for handling of their Arms. But indeed as that Part is famous, for keeping away all Winds and Tempests, that there is hardly the like in all Europe; so also is it sprinkled with the Enemies blood, that there almost you may find the Original, Middle, and End of all the Northern Wars. For oft-times the Enemies thipping, which by the violence of Tempelts was driven in here, and could not in the vaft Sea fight in doubtful battail, was either compelled to ask Conditions of Peace from the Adversary; or else did willingly, or fraudulently, after the same, or was confrained to run the inevitable hazard of Death or Captivity. For there was no way to escape by force of Arms. For if they go from the Coast or Port, blind Rocks threaten raine, and with a light motion cast the Enemy into a Gulph, that he may make peace. But if he would go forth into the open Sea, there is a horrible Tempelt against him, that one caunot endure to look upon for the twinkling of an eye, because the North and East Wind is alwayes tempestuous upon those places. Moreover in times of Hostility the Inhabitants by those Coasts take away all Sea-marks by the shores, that the Enemy may have no place to escape punishment; otherwise with an inaccessible cruelty, the ships of Pirats, and Sea-Rovers would assault this Port: yet the beginning of Battails at Sea, are frequently begun here,



So ph to a o d sole he st- il

Is

The Admirals of the Warlike Fleet, using stratagems of War in these places, are wont to place some ships of War, or some like them, of purpose in time of War, that have the Enemies Flags, that when the Enemies see them, they may the more securely run into danger; concerning which, mamely when the Enemies ships were thus intercepted, the Annals of the Countrey testifie; though I should say nothing of it, and the bones of the Enemies cast upon the Rocks, do apparently demonstrate what is to be avoided with great care.

Of Swift Torrents.

There are almost infinite swift Torrents, chiefly at the time when the Snow and Ice melt; which after the end of April, in the Northern parts, are found to bring great ruine to the Inhabitants: For by the force of them, which is vehement and terrible, they not onely take away and carry with them. Farms, Houses, and Stone-Bridges, but Trees also that are dug up by Art, or else are yet growing on the grounds; as I said of the irruption of Lakes, and in another case before.

These Torrents give the Name according to their impetuous Nature, to thole Cities and places they run by, as the most ancient Towers of the Offrogoths, called Scheningia, from the River, or rather the Torrent, which by reason of its most swift course is commonly called Schens, as it were a horse, that having cast off his bridle, is inflamed to run headlong every way. Moreover, there is a Name given to a River, not far from thence, from a continual cracking noise of the Teeth. So also, to the swift Torrent in the Province of Middelpadia (as I said before) is the name Nodau given; because like to knobs it takes and carryeth away with it, when it melts, Trees bound up in heaps of Ice, like hard crufts, & most huge stones also : and this is the more formidable, by how much sooner it is wont to fright and over-run Provinces and People. And hitherto there hath been no other remedy found for this horrid depopulation, than by every mans labour, and by easting up Banks, to turn the course another way : which, though the Northern people in many places turn from them; yet they fuffer this Tor-rent, that they may involve a rash Enemy, by opening the Sluces, and the Falls or Waters being let loofe. And though before, Names were given to Torrents, from the unhappy event, (as I shall also shew elsewhere, concerning the Bishops that preached the Golpel, which were drowned, and the Marriage (ports, and ravishing of Virgins) yet the wifer men thoughtfit to give the Names from Trinmphs and Victories, and not from Calamities.

F

CHAP.28

but

日本

die

加工

tim

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the divers Forms of Stones upon the Coasts.

N the Coasts of the Offrogaths, that is, the Eastern Goths, of the Narrow Sea called Broniken, where also a most vehement Torrent runs through the Town of Norcep, there are tound divers Figures of the Stones upon the Coasts, as if they were engraven by mans Art, or polished : which doubtless is conjectured to be done by the secret influence of the Heavens and Elements. Some also of these Stones are like to mens heads, hands, seet, or fingers; not joyned together in a whole body, but so wrought by a Distinction of Nature : But that Nation accustomed to such Spectacles, takes no care for these or such like things, any further than as they ferve to make their Walls and houses flrong. There are also found in the Mountains, which are far from the Seas, Rocks that are naturally made round and concave, that you would take them to be some Brass Cauldron, or Bowl of hot Baths: as you may fee it amongst the Oftrogoths, in a Mountain called vulgarly Ketilberg, (that is, the Mountain of a Ketil) neer the City Lincop, where I was born. Moreover, in many Valleys of the Mountains, there are infinite store of stones to be seen, fashioned round, as big as Calves heads, or Goole eggs, bigger or leffer, which without any Art are fit for great Guns. Also there are Whet-stones that are plain and long, and are applyed to good use : likewife, there are Rocks of marble amongst the Vestrogothi, to great and of so various colours, that without any Iron Instruments, as if they were made by Art, they are fit for Grave-flones; as I shall say in the 12. Book, concerning the natural variety of stones, to be applyed for all Buildings. Also there are Crystal stones, not far from the Town of the Offrogoths, called Sudercop, that have fix corners, that hang as big as ones fift, or finger: with whole iplendour, for the greater Ornament houses may be made, if the Inhabitants regarded Ornament more than they do Strength. But confidering that the rage of Enemies, both could and would more cruelly waste all, by reason of the fair Buildings, they more fortifie than beautifie their houses; though commonly the infides are most curiously adorned : but chiefly, as I shall shew underneath, with glittering Arms, Breaft-Plates, Head-pieces, and Bucklers; wherein that Nation conceives all comeliness to confist, because great part of desending themselves, depends on these : yet some of them are pitched, and of a black colour, for some Reasons I shall assign hereafter concerning Wars.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Stones of Giants, and Springs of Waters.

A S I said before in my first Book concerning the Obelisks of the Gentiles, of Kings, Champions, and Giants, whereby they thought to make their magnificent Deeds most known to Posterity, as Saxo Sialandiem speaks of his Regnerus, King of the Danes, who having sought five years in the North against the Rufeians, and Moscovites, lest his Actions engraven upon the high Rocks, that he might not be forgot, because he had sought them for his honour, when he was pressed with so many streights and difficulties: so also it is concerning many of the Kings of the Goths and Sweens, and heroical persons, the greatness of whose Actions, is yet discerned in the most eminent places of the Northern Countries.

Amongst

fa

11-

he

いいいの

Amongst which those are reckoned and esteemed to be the most famous and memorable, who so moderated their care of Warlike Glory, that they seem most to have brought profit to the Common-wealth: such a one was that most excellent King Vbbo, the Bustder of the most antient City Vpfal, and Scarings, and Ericus, with many more, whose indelible memory, seems not onely to be written on Stones in the Fields and Mountains, but is continued in their Countrey Veries, and with Musical Instruments, in the most famous places, and eminent dayes, with perpetual Dancings. For the more faithful care of these men was (when there was a general peace) to command the Governours or Provinces, for the publick good, besides arms, to bring the Springs of Waters that fell down tumbling, to drive Mills, for the good of the Inhabitants, or to make necessary Fountains for the general profit. Moreover, there run out of the Rocks such abundance of Springs, in many places, that being brought along by the agility of Nature and Art, for a long way, but very pleasant to behold they drive about 15. or 30, Water-mills. Falonia of the Vestrogaths, a most noble Province, and populous Helsingia, as I shall shew underneath concerning the Artifices of Iron, do represent such, and so commodious Spectacles.

Arch-Billiop of VPSAL:

The End of the Second Book.

F 2

The control of the second dree to is especially paraely, to the control of the co

the for ways a second of the sand second sale to the second secon

OLAVS



And many ivations also led by this confidence, burnt their Kings and Princes, when they were dead, that they might be made Gods, or go to the Gods; or elfe they hanged them up folemnly in Groves and Woods by a chain of Gold, as if by such sacrifices they should deserve praise for their wickednesse, and by counterfeiting a false God. Moreover they adored Serpents as facred, whilst they seemed to hurt no man, holding them to be the keepers of their houses, and household gods, yet this superstitions worship, though it seem wholly to be taken away, the reliques of it, by the inflinct of the Devills, continue in some secret houses in defarts, as also in the Northern Kingdoms of Norway and Vermelandia. But in the yeare 1386, the foresaid Litnamans, as we read, were purged from that errour. For then their most potent Prince Ingello with his eight Brothers, (as Mechovita tellifies) accepted the faith of Christ: in which even to this day they persevere and increase in Religion. Besides, the foresaid Historian mentions that there is a Statue placed on the high way , on the confines of Lituania and Muscovia, that in their language is called Zlataboba, that is the golden old Wife, which all passengers pacific with some guist, though not worth a straw, or else their journey will not prosper.

CHAP. II.

Of the Superstitious worship of men under the Pole.

Or is the utmost part of the North (which many think to be Inhabitable by reason of extream cold) free from Sacrilegious customes, and worshipping of Devills, that must be performed at their times appointed. For those tavage Nations (as other Nations of the world that feem to be more civill) have no small causes, whereby they may debate and defend their publick errour, and fained Divinity in frivolous matters. Therefore they adore the Sun that shines to them all the Summer, giving thanks unto him, because he brings them light instead of darknesse they endured, and hear against extream cold: which things however they feem to be intolerable, yet they never upbradingly curse, as some Indians do, but they onely say: These are soolish and sottish colds, and darknesse beyond measure, &c: and so likewise they adore the Moon because in Winter, when the Sun is absent, they alwaies enjoy the light of the Moon: but when that fails by reason of the conjunction, they dispatch their businesse in the day, by help of most clear Starrs, which shine the brighter by reason of the white Snow. Moreover those people that live under the Pole are deluded by a more stupid errour by the Devills. For they hang a red Cloth upon a Pole or Speare, and with attentive prayers and customs of worship, they adore it, thinking that there is some divine vertue in it, by reason of the red colour which is like to beafts blood. And also because they suppose that by looking upon it , they shall be more fortunate in killing of bealts , drinking their blood, as I shall shew underneath, concerning the manners of the Laplanders. Also some people of the North have a custome, that whatsoever they fee first at break of day, in the Ayre, Earth, or Warers that is alive, the same thing they faithfully a dore for a God, untill the evening of the same day, as Birds Beatts, Fish, and even Serpents, and Worms, and chiefly the horned Beetle : which they honour amongst the more noble creeping things, by reason of its hornes that young men ule to adorne their heads with. And least the faid Northern people should appear empty in the fight of their Gods, they make certaine oblations to them of the Bones of Wild Beatis, and of great Whales and Fish, that they have hunted for : yet in Summer-time they burn not the bones (least they should seem to mock at the Suns light or hear) but when the

cold

that

湖

CE II

131

100

222

102

he

de de de de de

S con Not Hold of Man

cold Winter ariseth, they burn them at publick meetings for the honour of the day, thinking that by that facrifice they offer due reverence to their Gods, fo great is the Religion of the Gentiles in frivolous matters.

CHAP. III.

Of the three greater Gods of the Goths.

Here are amongst the old heathenish Goths, (as my famous Brother and predecelour John Magnus, Arch Bishop of Upsall, clearly afteres in the beginning of his Histories) three Gods that they worshipped above the rest. The first whereof was the most mighty Ther; who was worshipped in the middle of their dining rooms, with a cultion put under him; on both fides of him, were two other dieties, namely Odhen, and Frigga. Thor, fay they, was chiefe in the Ayre, where he Thunders and Lightens, governing the Winds and Clowds, and fare weather, giving Corn and all fruit, and removing Pelillences. The other Odhen, that is the thronger, is prefident of the Warrs, affording men help against their Enemies, and his place is next to Thor himself on his right hand and he to famous in mens opinions, that all Nations should worship him as much as they do the light, that is given to the world, nor should there be any place in the world, (as Saxo tellifies) which flould not obey the power of this God. The third was Frige, which governed peace, and pleasure; and the carried before her the image of it, which was the foulnesse of the Sex, and for that the was as much adored by the Goths, as Venus was by the Romans : and Friday is confectated to her, and fo continues even to our times, She was painted with a fword and bow, with weapons, because in those lands, both fexes were most ready at their arms. But Ther was set forth with a Crown and Scepter, and 12 Starts : and they thou ht that nothing could be offerd to him that could equall his greatnesse. And he had appointed for him one day every week, and the first Month in the yeare, which we call Janmary. But Odhen is fet forth Armed, like to Man, by the same superstition the Gentiles used amost the Romans: and he had a day perpetually confectated to his name. And because he whilst he lived obtain'd the Title of a God in all Europe, for that he yeelded to none in military art, hence it is supposed that the Goths, (as Dio the Greek, Ablabins and Iornardes testifie) faid that Mars (whom Antiquity thought to be the God of Warr) was born amongst them, as also faith the Poet.

And Mars among ft the Goths, who is the chiefe in Warr.

The Goths alwaies highly honoured him to pacifie him, namely with the death of their Captives, for they supposed that the Ruler of Warrs would be pleased most with mans blood. From whom also they perfectly learned all Martiall acts, so that they conquerd the most mighty Empires of Emope and Assa, and arrived to the highest degree of valour.

Of the three lesser Gods.

Besides these three Gods above said, they worshiped many more, who (as Saxo reports) being wonderfull cunning in witch-crast, deluded the Minds of simple men, and arrogated to themselves the names of Gods. For they not only tainted the Goths, with the principall contagion of their delusions, but al-

60

foall the Northern Provinces circumvented with the frares of vain credulity, they firred up to a defire of worthipping them. For the effect of their fallacies grew fo famous, that in them other men adoring fome power of the Gods, and juppoling them to be Cods, or the Gods companions, they paid their folemn vows to these Authors of witchcrasts, and they gave the adoration due to Gods worthip, to Sacrilegious errour, amongst whom was one Methorin, a notable Magician, who wan to himfelf a great opinion of fained dignity, and he drew the minds of simple men, that were seduced by the same of his table impostures to offer unto him jugling tacrifices. This man being the chiefe Priest of the Gods, did to diffinguish their facrifices and ceremonies, and to order them, that a diffinct honour and offering should be observed to every God: maintaining that the displeature of the Gods cannot be pacified by common facrifices, or mixed ceremonies, at last his wickednesse being discovered, he was killed in a concourte of the people, and being flain, he killed many with the petitierous contagion of his Carkeile, he was pulled out of his grave, and faffned to astake; as the juggling vanities he used well deserved. Also Free the Lieutenant of the Cods had his feat not farr from Upfall; where he changed the old way of offerings, used by so many Nations, so many yeares, for a sad and unspeakable abomination. For he attempted to sacrifice men, and offered intollerable offerings to the Gods. He being rankt amongst the Gods, and because he was held to be the God of blood, dark facrifices were offered unto him, and in their yearly folemn days, night sports and Lettisternia were confecrated to him, as formerly they were at Rome to Pluto and Proferpina, Vagnosthus and Hadingus were adored with equal reverence, because they were supposed to afford principall assistance readily in time of great Warrs. They believed that Rosthicphus Finnonicus, after he was dead, was translated into the number of the Gods, because when he lived he was excellent to foresee future things. To these is added Rost atus: whose stupendious humanity would be so pacified with the sacrifice of mans blood, that they would dedicate to him the Souls of those, that fuch as adored him could subdue. Lastly there were many more most potent; thought to be the Sons of Thor, or Odhen, who were honoured by the people, and thought worthy of publick facrifices to be offered unto them. But how or by what arts thele men and such like, obtain'd so great an opinion of Divinity and to be adored, I shall enquire underneath, L.V. of Gyants and Champions. shap. I. toward the end.

CHAP. V.

Of the Magnificent Temple of the Northern Gods.

Steing that of old, the whole world almost in every place, was deluded by Sinnumerable supersitions, and instinct of the Devills, I thought it not incongruous, yet further to shew evidently in what places the Goths or Sweeds, and Northern Nations seduced by heathenish supersition, gave obedience to dumb Idols: that it may be known, that there were many places, (as there are kinds of Devills) wherein unlawfull worship was offered. There was therefore a Temple (concerning which my dear Brother and Predecessour, D. John Arch-Bishop of Upfall speaks, L. t. Histor.) that was most famous from the time of Nims, neer to the River Sala; where at this day is Upfalia the principall and archiepiscopall seat of the Sweams and Goths, which they so adored, being built so magnificently, that there was nothing to be seen on the walls, roose or Pilars, but shined with Gold.

20

82

200

Mr. Go

the

til

fin

Whi

that

His Kin light

and

100

mi

IN

Stag

and

世間田田田田田田

Also the whole upper part was made with glittering Gold; from which a Golden Chain hung down, and is recorded to have gone round about the Temple to the Walls, and tops of the House. Hence it was, that the Temple firuated on a large Plain, by the admirable luftre of it, begat in those that came neer to it, a Venerable Awe of Religion. There grew before the doors of it, a huge Tree of an unknown kind, that spread with large Boughs, and was green both in Summer and Winter; yet not of those kinds, which of their own Nature feem to grow green, as the Bay-tree, Olive, Palm-tree, or Myrtle . For in the Nort b never was any Olive, or Bay-tree feen to grow up, but in a small shrub, as we may see at Vastens. There was also a Fountain neer this Temple, which ran into the place of their Sacrifices : of which I shall speak by and by underneath. And let this suffice for other Nations, to understand some of the vain Customs of the Goths. Now it is fit for me to shew unto the Northern people, that it was not they onely that were seduced with this vanity. And now we must confels, that by Gods mercy, in that very place; namely, at Upfal, at all times, especially on the 19.day of May, there are Catholick Sermons preached of Divine Religion to almost innumerable people. The King and Princes, and Nobles of both Sexes being pretent, where formerly fo many wicked and abominable firthy acts were committed, and so many men, both Friends, and dear Parents, were offered in Sacrifice.

Of the Religion, and Sacrifices of the Goths.

Here was formerly in the Sacrifices of the Goths (as it is fet down in the History of the Sweens, and Goths, L. 1. C. 12. a great respect had to the number of 9. It may be, because the Pythagorean Philosophy (which they learned of Salmox, and Diceneus, admonished them, that the odd number must be preferred in all things. And although they did weekly and daily give the fupream honour to their Gods: yet every nine moneths they used a more solemn adoration to them, for nine days together, facrificing and performing their Rites and Religious Worship; and they offered every day nine kind of living Creatures, and they joyned unto them the Sacrifices of men. But after nine dayes, by the supream solemnity of all the Kingdome, the Temple of Upfal, that I mentioned before, was visited by the most frequent coming thither of the Inhabitants, and there for nine dayes they kept Holy-day; and by the foresaid number of facrifices they offered their Offerings to their god upon an Altar. But that man, who by Lot was to be offered, was plunged alive into that Fountain, which ran into the place of the Sacrifice; and if he diedearly, the Priests pro-nounced the Vow to be fortunate; and they presently took him from thence, and hung him up in a Wood hard by which they reputed facred, and they affirmed that he was translated amongst the Gods. And from hence that man thought himself happy who was to die, by being facrificed. It sell out sometimes, that the Kings themselves were chosen by the same Lot, and sacrificed: which because it was esteemed to be a most lucky offering for the Kingdome, all the people with high gratulation and thankigiving, did adore so noble a sacrifice. For they thought that those who departed thus did not die at all, but that they and themselves also were immortal ; especially from Salmon, Zenta, Diceneus, as Dion, Ablabius, Jornandes, Strabo, and others write: who also affert by many Realons, that the Goths studied Wisdome excellently, and therefore held an opinion of the Souls immortality : for that (as Heredotus faith, L.4.) thinking they should not die, they would fay; That those who were departed this life,

Went

中ではいる

10

h

0

いの社立は

Wherein they taid, that a certain God Bleyxen was chief to whom they daily fent, belides the manner already mentioned, a Meisenger in a Galley, with five Oares, which was some man chosen amongst themselves, commanding him to desire from the bounty of the God, such things as they stood in need of. The manner of dispatching the Messenger was thus: Some of them held some sharp Spears upright; and upon these they threw him who was designed to be sent earthing him by his hands and feet; and if falling, he died presently, they supposed that the God was pleased with them, accepting their Messenger at first. But if it happed otherwise, they accused the Messenger for being a wicked man, and that he was unworthy to be sent to the Gods. Wherefore casting him away, they sent another, giving him his Arrant whilest he was yet living, what he must sollicite, when he came to the god. Then casting him down, when he was dead, they delivered him into the Guiph of the Sea, by the help of those five Oars.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Goths Superstitions about Thunder.

Oreover, they were to obstinate in observing the Worship of their Gods (as we find it also in the same History of the Gorbs and Sweens, 1, 1, c. 12.) that when it thundered in the Ayr, they would shoot up Arrows, to shew their readinels to affift their Gods, which they chought were then fighting with others that opposed them. Nor were they content with that rash Superstition, but they had for that purpole great Hammers bigger then ordinary (which they called Ovials) that were bound about with huge brais, and which were observed most religiously, that by them, as by the Claudian Thunder, and by the usual similitude of things, they might imitate the noises in the Element of the Air, which they believed were made with Hammers & they thought most devoutly, that the force of such a noise, by imitating the same with the Smiths Hammers, would give affiftance to the Wars of their Gods. That Custome of Jupiters Hammers lasted until the 1130, year after the Birth of Christ, when as Magnus, King of the Goths, hating Heathenith Superflition, for the love of Christian Religion, held it Piety to spoil the Temple of its Worship, and Jupiter of his Robes; who therefore for many years was held by the Goths as a Sacrilegious Robber of the spoils of Heaven. Also, the Goths were wont when they were going to Battel, to facrifice their hories upon Altars, and cutting off their heads, and setting them upon long Poles, they carried them with their mouths wide. open, upon these Staves, before their Armies. And they not onely offered Beafls in factifice before the War, but men also when they had conquered their Enemies; and they made magnificent Playes for the honour of their Gods: wherein were observed effeminare morious of their Bodies , and mimical gestures of Stage-Players, and pleafant ringing of little Bells, and noises of Timbrels. There, and other notable kinds of Sacrifices were the chief cause, that by the affiliance of the Gods, they could never be conquered in Battail. For they to loved, and praedifed Wars continually, that they supposed all other Studies nothing worth, being compared with Military Arts. There were Priefts that had the charge of these Sacrifices, who were of different degrees, as the Pontifex, the Archflamen, the Dancing-Priests, the Sombsayers: the first of these; namely, the High-Priests, had equal power allowed them as the Kings had; and logreat was their authority, that what foever they either perswaded, or commanded, as if it had bir spoken from Heaven, was chearfully executed by the King and all the people.

h s

西山

ci

M

10)

bec

野田田

tie fie

A LEG DE WIN OPEN THE SE

They instructed the Nation in much Wisdome; they choic Prietts, they tounded Religion; Dion the Grecian testifies, that this Nation never wanted High-Priests, which might teach them Wisdome. There was also amonest them a kind of High-Priests that were more illustrious, which they called Pileati, and Pii, out of which they fitted themselves with Kings and Priests, as Jornandes shews more largely, who saith they were wont to be called Pij, and that they were wont to go forth of the Clty-gates with Harps, and white Garments, to meet the Gaths in triumph, that they might pacific their Gods.

Of their fighting against the Gods.

A Gain they fell into another Folly and Superflicion, that when the Gods did not favour them in their Warlike Expeditions, or cid not help them, they by litting up divers kinds of Weapons against Heaven, supposed they could conquer them, or compel them by sear and threatning words to do what they required. And in this idle action, they believed that they had no less power upon the Earth, and were to be seared and adored as much, as others that were gone to the Gods above or beneath. But they observed not the old Proverb of the Goths, That we must not dart our Spear against Heaven, for a thicker Club will be thrown back from thence.

Of the Fatal Sifters and Nimphs.

Here are also in the Northern Countries some Temples consecrated to Diana and Ceres, and houses of the Fatal Sisters, that were built by Witchcraft, without mans help, which the Antients were wont to come unto praying making folemn Vows, when they went to confult the Oracles of the Fates, concerning their Childrens future Deninies, where looking into the Chappel, they knew that lometimes three, and lometimes more of these Nymphs fate: Whereof some granted to Children a comely face, and favour abundantly amongst men: Others gave them Liberality, or other excellent Vertues: Again, others of a more froward Nature, defiring to hurt the Gifts of the reft, would make Children in their future condition to be Parsimonious, or guilty of some other fault. And they did not onely delude Children by these juggling Arts, but sometimes Kings also, and men of years, as is evidently found out. For Hotherns, King of Sweden, and Denmark, as he Hunted, by errour of a Cloud, being drawn far away from his Huntimen, fell into the Conclave of some Virgins living in Woods; and being called by his own name by them, he asked what they were; They testifie, that by their leading and good success, the Fortune of the War was chiefly governed. And that oft-times they are prefent in Battails, when no man fees them, and by their secret affiltance, they give to their Friends such successe as they shall defire; for they said, it was in their power to make the Event prosperous, or adverse as they pleased; defiring him that he should not make War against Balderus, who was born of the secret feed of the Gods: when he had heard this Message, Hotherus lees himlelf to be lefe fuddenly in the open Ayr, and without any house or shady place to cover him, exposed in the middle of the Fields; but he most of all wondred at the sudden flight of the Virgins, and the false situation of the place, and counterfeit house, he had imagined to be there.

For he was ignorant of those things which were done about him, and thought it was onely a delusion, and fraud, by Witch-craft. After this, some years being passed, the same Hothersa being worn out with most cruel Wars, going into the farthest Desarts and Woods to wander in where men use not to frequent, by chance he found a Gave where Virgins dwelt. It proved, that these were the same which had formerly given him a Garment that was Armour of Proof. And being demanded by them, wherefore he came into that place, he relates unto them the unhappy Events of the War; so that condemning their Faith, he began to lament his ill success, and hard fortune, complaining that it fell out otherwise

with him, than they had promifed it should.

The Nymphs and wered that though he feldome wan the Victory, yet he had done as much mischief to the Enemies, as they had done to him, and that he had been the Author of as great Ruine as his Partner had: and farther, that he should win the Victory, if he could but first catch away the meat that was provided to increase the Enemies Forces; for by this meanes he should see all things succeed according to his wishes. He was thus sent away, and he recruits his Armie, and levies new Forces against the Enemy. And when he came to view their Tents, he saw three Maids go forth, carrying secretly away the daintiest meat these he ran after. (for he might see the way they went by their footseps on the Dew.) then he comes to the houses where they dwest, and by the sweet Musick of his Lute, (on which he had excellent skill) he obtained from them a most accurate shining wirdle, and most powerful to prevail with in Battail: so going the way he came, he met the Enemy, and slew him with a great staughter: so that the next day after he was sent to Proferpine, which he seemed to see standing by him in his sleep.

CHAP. X.

Of the Night-Dances of the Fairies, and Ghofts.

A Lio Travellers in the Night, and such their Flocks and Heards, are wont to be compassed about with many strange Apparitions: As King Hotherus, (so Saxo reports) following three Nymphs to their Caves, obtained a Girdle of Victory from them: yet sometimes they make so great and deep impression into the Earth, that the place they are used to, being onely burnt round with extream heat, no grass will grow upthere. The Inhabitants call this Night-spot of these Monsters, the Dance of Fayries: of which they hold this opinion, that the Souls of those men, that give themselves to Corporal Pleasures, and make themselves as it were slaves unto them, and obey the force of their Lusts, violating the Laws of God and men, when they are out of their bodies, and wander about the Earth. In the number whereof they think those men to be who even in these our days, are wont to come to help men, to labour in the Night, and to dress Horses and Cattel; as I shall shew hereaster in this very Book, concerning the Ministery of the Devils.

CHAP, XI. Of the War against the Fauni.

Since Antiquity testifies that there have been various monstrous things, and almost innumerable Delusions, which have passed almost through the whole World, as Ghosts, Rural Gods, Satyrs, Hags, Hob-goblins, Witches, Fairies, Housshold Gods, and Shepherds Gods in abundance, by which men were extreamly terrified, or torn to pieces and slain: I did not think fit to conceal what Policies and Weapons the Northern people used to result these Visions and Apparitions. It is a Tradition, that the noble Champions of the Goths did often fight

Bu

git

脑

Wi

柳

俊切

100

fit

Bloo

飲料

the

±W

du

EE

Du

fin

lis

mo

fingle with Monsters and huge Beatts, either to free lome weak men, or to try their valour, and they took care not to let upon any wild Beatt with more com-

pany than the cultome of valiant men would permit.

Regners of Sweden was a Champion, and a King, who fought all night as gainst most obscene Troops of Nocturnal Monsiers, which were sent forth by Thorisda his cruel Mother-in-law; and when it grew light, he perceived that he met oft-times in the Fields divers forms of Chosts, and unusual representations of Shapes; amongst which he saw the likeness of Throisda, wounded in many places. By this meanes he acquired the same of a Champion, and took

by force his Fathers Kingdome from his Enemies.

Moreover, one Broderus and Buchi, with King Gorman, being more bold than ordinary men are, increasing the Warlike pirit of the Gaths, in terching out the foot-steps of natural things, undertook a Voyage full of danger and tearee to be undergone by mortal men. For failing found the Earth, leaving the Sun behind them, and passing by the stars that were under the Deep, and lastly coming beyond the Land of Biarmia into places where was no light (as I shewed c.t. 1. 1.) but in continual darkness, they fought with increcible Troops of Monflers. For they invaded Fairies that came upon them, and took away their Weapons from them; and they conquered whole Armies of hrange Apparitions, with their Bows and Slings, as Saxo the Danish Historian and most diligent fearther of Antiquities, writes in his Preface concerning King Gorman, We find it also related amongst the antient Histories, how Hotherus, Son to the King of Sweden, being walking in the night, and his mind full of care that troubled him, threw his Spear at the Savyr Ademiningus that appeared in his Lodging, and having friken him down with the blow & made him unable to fly away prefently he held him in chains; and then threatning him with most bitter words, he requires of him his Sword and Bracelets, which he knew he had, and the Satyr foon delivered up what he demanded to lave his life. For the life is before all things, and Mortals effeem nothing more than it.

A Spirit A smooth tight days a good HAP. XII. and the condition of A should be seen as a start of Divination.

To fatisfie this Tirle, I must premise the saying of the Catholick Dr. Chrysoflame, who saith in his Homily; There shall be Signs in the Sun and Moon,
&c. That there is no Creature which so much defires to know future things, as
man doth &c. This being considered we must farther consess, that there never
was any Nation so civil and learned, nor yet so ignorant and barbarous, which
hath not used to signific suture things, and by some means to understand, and
to fore-tell them; but chiefly the Nathern people, which I find to have employed themselves in the study of knowing things to come: for by the slyings of Birds,
leaping and noise of Fish, and by their singing; also by exhalations of Mountains, &c. they thought that suture Accidents might be declared, as by certain
Signs.

No War nor publick business either at home or in Military Affairs, was done without South-tayings; and not onely the Discipline of Wizards was accepted by the chief Governours, but of Fortune-tellers, Divination also by the Ayr, by the Earth, by the Fire, by the Dead, and all Dreams of importance, if any seemed

to concern the Common-Wealth,

Orbinus fore-told to King Hadringus, who went to wage War against Jochorus Curerus the Tyrant, that he should be taken captive, and it sell out, as he said.

a Tradition, tolk the noble Champions of the Suchedid often such

GOVATUS

t by

that

ra-

in

xx

un

Dist

to

un

co-

ed of

eir

nd nd

of

Ħ,

ia.

ツーには

I had

in

ie d

ed

Govarns, King of Norway, was so skilful in the Art of Divination, and so well learned, to tell future things, that he being in Norway, could see whatever was attempted against him in Saxony, above a hundred German miles from him.

Gormo furnamed the Wicked, being of a drowfie condition, dreamt that his Wife bare two Birds, but one was greater than theother; and that they flew upwards toward Heaven, and in a small time betwist, they returned again, and fat upon both his hands one by one; and so the second time, and thind: when they had rested a while, they took Wing, and flew into the Ayr; and at last, that the least of the two came back to him without the other; having the Wings all bloody. This Dream was thus truly interpreted: His two Sons subduing the English, Solaronians, and the Irish, had very good fortune, until such time as the Elder was slain in battail, but the Younger, when his brother was soft, ice-med to have his Wings smeered with blood.

Magnus, King of Norway and Denmark; that night wherein there followed a War with Sclavonia, when he flept, he law an Apparition of one in his fleep; that told him before that he should conquer his Enemy, and in killing of an Eagle, he should be afford of the Victory. The King awaked, and told his Dream in order, with great admiration, and proceeding with his Army, he saw an Eagle neer him, that he had seen in his Dream; and riding swiftly to her, he killed her with a Dart, and fled safter than the Bird could with a swife

Wherefore his Army took the fign of good luck; and laying hold of the first decasion to fight overcame the Enemy, having the same event in battail, as the Omer fore showed.

When King Vuldamar his Army went forh to War, such Troops of Crowes flew suddenly between them; that many were knocked down with the Enemies Spears. King Swene and all his Army were conquered by him, and made Crowes meat, which declared the event of the South-laying.

Biorno, a noted Champion, compassed in a certain Island, with a choise Band of able Souldiers, which was renced round with a most swift River: he saw in his sleep a great Beast coming forth of the Waters, that cast forth slames of fire at his mouth, and burnt all presently. The next morning King Fridlevus, coming over this violent River, destroyed all these Champions (except Biorno) with the sword, and so fulfilled his Dream.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Magical Art of Ericus with his Windy Cap, and of others.

This Ericus, King of Sweden, in his time, was held fecond to none in the Magical Art; and he was to familiar with the Evil Spirits, whom he exceedingly adored, that which way foever he turned his Cap; the Wind would prefently blow that way. From this occasion he was called Windy Cap; and many men believed that Regnerus, King of Denmark, by the Conduct of this Ericus, who was his Nephew, did happily extend his Piracy into the most remote parts of the Earth, and conquered many Countries, and senced Cities, by his Cunning; and at last was his Coadjutor, that by the confent of the Nobles, he should be chosen King of Sweden; which continued a long time with him very happily, until he died of old age.

Moreover, another Ericus, whose simume was Emundus, when he purposed to sail, and one of the Saylers saw in a Dream himself carried on horseback over the cragged tops of Mountains; and the horse running swiftly, that he was thrown headlong into the shady Valleys, and much torn with Owls Tallants; he related this in the morning to his Companions in jest: the King that was no



.IIL

dby h be

Panyi

DWD

y de-

To.

lics)

din

by a

rms

old CB;

ney

and

Ver-

Tu-

her

Cto Was Ag

D¢.

23K

be to

50 od od

moyfure of three Land-Snakes, that were hung up above by a small Twig. But Ericus, Son in law to Craca took to himself the Dish that was provided for her Son Rollerss; and he being refreshed with this happy meat, by the internal operation of it, arrived to the highest pitch of mans wildome. For the force of this meat bred in him the knowledge of all Sciences beyond belief; to that he could understand the meaning of the cryes of Birds and wild Beasts. Besides he was fo eloquent and curious in his speech, that what oever he pleased to discourse of, he would constantly illustrate it with pleasant Proverbs. By his counsel King Frothe overcame the Army of the mighty Huns, that was affifted by 170. Kings. And at length, Gestblindus King of the Goths, made this Erieus Heir to himfelf, and to the Kingdome of Sweden; and that about the time of Christs Nativi-

But King Frotho being hunged at by a Witch that turned into an Oxe, was flain by her upon a certain Sea-coast. Guthrana Inddenly blinded the forces of King Larmericus, and made them fight one against the other. An Earthen Pot useth to be the common Instrument of all Witches, wherein they boyl their Juyces, Herbs, Worms, and Entrals, and by that Witchery meat they allure idle perions to them, and make ships, horses, and horsemen, to be as swift as a boyling

CHAP. XV. Of the Conjurers and Witches in Finland.

Loal shall shew very briefly what force Conjurers and Witches have in A confirming the Elements, enchanted by them or others, that they may exceed or fall short of their Natural Order: premising this, that the extream Land of the North, Finland and Lapland, was to taught Witchcraft formerly in Heathenish times, as if they had learned this curied Art from Zoroastres the Perfian; though other Inhabitants by the Sea-coasts are reported to be bewitched with the same madnels; for they exercise this Divellish Arr, of all the Arrs of the World, to admiration; and in this, and other such like mischief, they commonly agree. The Finlanders were wont formerly amongst their other Errors of Gentilifme, to fell Wines to Merchants, that were flopt on their Coafts by contrary weather; and when they had their price, they knit three Magical knots, not like to the Laws of Cassius, bound up with a Thong, and they gave them unto the Merchants; observing that rule, that when they unloosed the first, they should have a good Gale of Wind: when the second, astronger wind: but when they untied the third, they should have such cruel Tempeles, that they should not be able to look out of the Forecassle to avoid the Rocks, nor move a foot to pull down the Sails, nor stand at the Helm to govern the ship; and they made an unhappy trial of the truth of it, who denied that there was any fuch power in those knots. But this Northern Countrey fince the time of Christianity received never durit be seen to use this Art openly, being kept down by the penalty of laws. Moreover, Sivaldus the Swede, who was corrival with King Holdanus, had 7. lons, who were such cunning Witches, that they would suddenly in a force of sury rore horridly, bite Bucklers, eat down burning Coles, go through any fires that were made: nor could this motion of madness be allayed, but either by Bonds, or by shedding of mans blood.

Oht

Gala

WAS

mil our

hir (

thest

men gans

itli

bis is

Who

MO

Hett Ha

flor

to I

ind

相品

with feet Ant he p

14

him

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Magical Instruments of Bothnia.

of Bothnia, as in their proper place; who by a perfect Art of casting Mists before mens eyes, could represent themselvs and others in divers shapes, & with false Apparitions hide their true faces; and not onely Champions, but Women and young Maids were wont from the thin Ayr to borrow wan Vizards, and counterfeit pale faces: and again laying these airy Vapours aside that shadowed them, they would discuss these dark Clouds before their faces with bright day. And it is certain, that their Charms had such force, that they would make any thing clearly to be seen present; how far soever it was off, and however it were bound up fast in never so many knots: and by such jugling Arts, they demonstrate the same thus:

They that defire to know the state of their Friends or Foes, at a very great diflance from them, five hundred be it, or a thouland miles off, they enquire of a Laplander, or Finlander, who is skilled in this matter, giving him a gift; (namely, fome Linnen Garment, or Girdle,) where their Friends or Foes are, and what they do: Whereupon he goes into his Conclave, content with one companion, and his Wife, and he beats upon a Frog of Brais, or Serpent, with a Hammer, upon an Anvilsio many strokes as are prescribed; and by mumbling of Charms, he turns it up and down; and presently falling he is ravished into an extane, and he lies a short-time as if he were dead: In the mean while, he is safely guarded by his foresaid companion, lett any Living Creature, Gnat, or Fly, or other Animal might touch him; for by the power of his Charms, his Spirit, by the milleading of Devils, brings from far fome token, (namely a Ring or a knife) for a teltimony of his Embaffic or Commission sulfilled: And presently rising up, he declares the fame figns to him that hired him with the relt of the circumstances : And they are reported to be no less powerful in striking men sick of divers Difeases; for they make of Lead Magical Slugs, as short as ones singer: they fend these into men never so far off, which they defire to be revenged on. They by a Cancer riling on their Legs or Arms dye in three days. There are also the Witcheries or Conjurations of the men of Helfing, the chief whereof Vitolphus, did to ffrike all men blind when he pleafed, that they could neither fee the next houses, nor find the way thither : he knew so how to darken the use of Lights, by Cloudy Errour.

Moreover, one Visions, a Fencer of great account, would blunt the edge of all Weapons, by onely looking upon them; yet was he killed with the sword of the Swedish Giant Storchaterus, of whom I shall speak underneath. For he alwayes kept his Sword covered in a thin skin; (which is said to be the onely Remedy against the blunting of it.) But Stones that are to be cast forth, can be charmed by no Charms; nor their sorce taken off from doing hurt, when they are thrown strongly.

CHAP. XVII. Of the Sea Magicians.

A Lifo, amongst other Northern Dieties, one Hollerns by name, a Magician, was worshipped, who gained to himself the Opinion and Honour of a God amongst a curious people, by no less Fraud then Superstition. For he having got equal power with Othinus, amongst the Gods, grew so famous by Arms, and Delusions, that he used onely a bone for a ship to pass over the Seas; which bone he had inchanted with his cursed Charms; and he would as soon pass all Obstacles

III

Mills

men

and

day.

any

at di-

nely,

what pani-

mer,

ms,

and

tded

Ani-

ea-

0 ,

IIS.

YYY

xt

111

be

dy led

all

Obttacles in his way with that, as if he had hoised up sails with a prosperous Gale of Wind. But at last, that men might see that his Diety was mortal, he was cruelly slain by those that envied him. Besides him, one Oddo, a Dane, a mighty Pirat, was so well learned in Magick, that he would wander at Sea without a ship, and ost-times drowned his Enemies ships, by raising Tempetts with his Charms: Wherefore, that he might not fight at Sea with Pirats, he was wont by Witcherast, to raise and exasperate the Winds and Waves to destroy them.

This man, as he was cruel to Merchants, so was he courteous to Countreymen; for he esteemed better of Countrey-neatness, than he did of the sordid gains of men. Also, he had great skill to blunta sword with his Charms: but at last being circumvented by an Enemy more cunning than himself; he was drowned at Seas, who was wont formerly to walk on the Gulphs of the Sea by his inchanted ways.

CHAP, XVIII.

Of the same Magicians, and the like.

Then Othimus, who was the greater and elder amongst the Magicians, brought back upon a horse, many leagues at Sea, one Hadingus, King of Denmark, who was sowly deluded by Magical Incantations, and drawn away from his acquainxance: But as Hadingus was brought along, he observed the prints of the horses feet in the Waters, as he peeped through the chinks of that covering, he lay trembling under, and exceedingly admired at it: and when he was prohibited to look after that he was not allowed to do he turned away his eyes that were full of amazement, from the terrible contemplation of his Voyage. Again, Haquinus King of Norway, when he was to fight against the Danes, he raised a storm by Witchcraft, and so beat upon the Enemies heads, with Hail-stones of an unusual greatness, that their eyes were hurt as with arrows from the Clouds, and they could not see, the Elements fighting more against them, than the Enemy.

Moreover, the men of Biarmia that are neerest to the Artick Pole, being to fight in the North against the most mighty King Regnerus, they set upon the Heavens with Charms, and raised the greatest Tempests in the Clouds that could possibly be. Then the Danes, when the Tempest was abated, were scorched with most tempestuous heat: so this double mischief and distemper on both sides, afflicted their bodies, that they lost their Victory, and their lives together.

CHAP. XIX. Of a Magician bound.

A Mongst the Ostrogoths, there is a huge Lake of fresh waters, called Veter, (of which I spake sufficiently before) but there is in the middle of it a large Island, wherein there are two Parish-Churches: in one of them there is found a Vault that hath a hollow long entrance, and going forth of it, and it is wonderfull deep; which Vault, none but vain-glorious and curious people, provided with lights, and clews of thread, to find the way back again, descend into: chiefly for that end, that they may see a certain Magician called Gilbert, who by Magick Art (for thence arose his misery) from old time by his own Master Catillus, whom he presumed to insult over, was overcome and bound there. It was done thus, with a certain small Club, that was carved with the characters of the Goths or Russians, and was held forth, and taken in his Masters hands; for by this was Gilbert bound, and became unmovable, that neither by using his teeth to unlose himself, (for they clung together, as if they had been fastened with pitch) nor yet

has

Di

tin

bei

KID

四色百

using his feet, could he yet loose, being made fast by the crafty counsel of his Master. And though many rash-headed people run continually to see this Spirit with vehement admiration, yet they dare not presume to come very near to him, by reason of the stench of the Cave, and hurtful Vapours, for tear their breath should be stopt, and they should be suffocated, Also, they are kept from him by Mounds cast up, and by Bars, set by the Inhabitants, lest such as despite their own danger, should go in like mad-men, and should never come forth

Moreover, it is provided by a most severe Law, as it is for them that kill themselves, that such as know these dangers shall not allure others that are ignorant
of them, to seek after this sight; or lead them in, whom they have perswaded to
it. This forestaid Island Visrigue, is very samous for the pleasant and secure
Mansion of the Kings there, who are there dead and buried.

CHAP. XX.

Of the punishment for Witches.

East the Northern Witches should seem alone here to be led to sad spectacles, Vincentius in Spec. Hist. 1, 25. v. 6. comes and tells us, that an English woman deluded by Magical Art, after cruel torments, was carryed by the Devils into the Ayr with horrid cries. His words are these:

There was a certain Woman in Bethelia, a Village of England, that was a South-fayer and a Witch, who one day when the was eating, heard her chough, that the took great pleasure in, to speak something more loud than it was wont to do: When the Mistris heard this her knife fell out of her hand, and she grew pale in her face; and lamenting, the said very often; This day is my Plough come to the last Furrow; this day shall I hear and receive great hurt.

As the yet spake, a Messenger came to her, faying; This day is thy Son dead, and all thy Family died juddenly. This heard, the fank down, wounded with continual grief, and she commanded all her children that were alive to be brought to her, which were a Fryer and a Nun; to whom she sighing, said thus: I by my miserable destiny, ever was a servant to the Divel in my actions, I am the Sink of all Vice, and the Mistris of enticements: I onely confided in your Religion, and I despaired of my felf: But now, because I know the Divel shall have me to torment me, who periwaded me to offend, I beleech you, by the bowels of your Mother, that you will attempt to ease my torments; for you cannot revoke the Sentence of Damnation paffed upon my foul: Wherefore fow up my body in a Stags skir, and put it into a Cheft of Stone, and faften the cover with Iron and Lead, and bind about the stone with three great chains. If Ily three nights thus in fafety, you shall bury me the fourth day: though I fear the Earth will not receive me, by reason of my Witchchrafts; let there be Plalms fung for me fifty nights, and Mais faid for me as many dayes. They did as the bad them, but it nothing availed; for the two first nights, when the Clerks and Querillers lang Pialms about her body, all the Devils eafily breaking the Church door that was fastened with a mighty bar, tore in pieces two of the chains; but the middle chain which was made stronger, held tast. The third night, about Cock-crowing, all the Monastery seemed to be lifted from the Foundation, with a noise of Enemies coming; one of them was more terrible to look on, and taller then the relt; and he striking the Church-door with greater force, brake them into fritters, and came proudly to the Coshin, and in arrogant gesture, and calling her by her name, commanded her to rife. When she answered, that she could not for her bands.

ok, III.

his Ma.

is Spiric

nessto at their

or from

despile ctorch

them-

orant ted to

ecure

Virgin

tto

17 ne

th

m

ili

ly ms the and

ich Ut UE ith nd ake gd

T nemy

Thou shalt, saith he, be unbound, but to thy greater mischief: And he forthwith brake the Chain, the rest of the Devils could not do, as if it had been Flax, and he kicked off the cover of the Grave with his toot; and taking her by the hand before them all, he drew her forth at the Church-doors, where there was prepared a black horse, which proudly neighed, that had Hooks of Iron all over him, that fluck forth : Upon this Horse was this milerable woman ser, and she presently disappeared from the beholders eyes, with all her company. But there were cryes heard almost four miles , of this milerable wretch calling for help. Also Saxolib. 14. relates what sport of the Divel hapned to the Rugiani, in the City Karentina, for their worthipping of the Divel; where by the illusion of the Divelmen were first provoked to commit Adultery, and then prefently in the time of this most beattly act, they were punished most detectably. For men in that City being allured to ly with women, flick to them, as Dogs do to Bitches; nor can they be pulled from them in a long time. Sometimes both of them being hung one against the other upon long poles, being fattened together by an unufual way, became a laughing tock to the people. From the foulness of that miracle, solemn worship was given to base Images; and it was supposed to be effected by their forces, which was shadowed under the delusions of Devils : Therefore, as St. Augustine testifies, lib. 8. De civir. Dei, such things are tolerated by a just Judgment of God for their fins; for it is most just, that they should be afflicted, or made subject and deceived by them. But he that defires not a hap-py life hereafter, nor to lead a godly life now, by such horrible acts, may seek death in Hell: but he that will hold no fociety with wicked Spirits, let him not fear the damnable Superflirion they are worthipped by; but let him embrace the true Religion, whereby they are discovered and conquered.

CHAP. XXI. Of the hurts done by the Devils.

In the Northern parts (where the Devil hath his Seat really) they mock the people that live there with unipeakable delutions, under various forms, and do them hurt also, throwing down their houses, killing their Cattle, spoiling their fields, making a Desolation of Castles and Waters.

The End of the Third Book.

a mil ... and the man and a second of the man and a se

Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

CONCERNING

The Wars and Manners of the Wild Pagans, and their Neighbours.

The Epitome of the Fourth Book.

CHAP. J.

Of the unhappy Battail of Regnerus, King of Denmark.

Axo Grammaticus, the most famous Author of the Danish History, relates, that Regnerus King of Denmark, for five years, when he had ended his Piracy on the Coatts of Ruffla, to have retolved to invade by armes his Neighbours of Biarmia; namely, Northern People, living in Mountains, and Champion Land, and to bring them down by his incomparable power. They, when they know of his coming, prefently used Charms to Heaven, and so prevailed with the Clouds, that they filled them full of Rain, to do violence; which to long held Regnerus, before he could put off to Sea, that his provision was spent; and so soon as the Tempest was allayed, a violent heat scorched him: Nor was that plague greater, than the great cold was raifed also. Wherefore this double mischief, of untemperate weather, did by turns mightily disturb and corrupt his fouldiers bodies, by their immoderate coming upon them. But as the King observed himself, to be stopt rather by the false, than true force of the Ayr, to revenge this infolency of the Biarmians, he comes again upon them unexpected. But their King relying on his most skilful Archers of the Duke of Firmarck, his Neighbour, tore in pieces the Army of Regnerus, who then held his Winter-Quarters in Biarmia; yet suffered no loss himself. For the Pinlanders, (as I touched upon it at the beginning of my first Book); being able to run (wiftly with flippery flakes, fly away at pleafure, and have power to come neer, and remove far back prefently. For fo foon as they have wounded their

9

e di

15,

1.

ion

m:

ore ed

25

oi

231

ikė

ica

the

ble re Enemy, they run from him, as fast as they came upon him, and they will return, being nothing wearied by their running forward: Wherefore by reason of their Waggons, and nimbleness of their bodies, they have a most ready way, to fall on, or to retreat.

It is to be believed, as the same Saxo reports, that this mighty King sustained his ill fortune couragionfly, and wondred at it, when he law himfelf who had triumphed over the Roman pride, to be brought to the very last point of difficult ry, by an unarmed and diforderly Company: wherefore he that had so gallantly beaten down the most illustrious Renown of the Roman Souldiers, and the mighty force of the great Commander, was forced to yield to the most fordid and slender provision of a savage and base people: and he whose same in War the forces of the most potent Nation could not quel, could not stand against a small handful of contemptible men. Hence it fell out, that by that hand wherewith he most valiantly worsted the most famous glory of the World, and the greatest Instrument of Military strength, wherewith he openly adventured against the terrible noise of so many Horse and Foot, he was fain privately to fall upon this ignoble and obscure people, and to steal upon them unawares; and he was not ashamed to stain his great glory, got openly in the day, by fraud in the night, making choice of clancular Snares in the place of open Fortitude. This thing, as it was illfavoured in the Deed, so was it bale in the End, and he might fing the common Verie,

Oh by what small things, great things are destroyed !

I pass over how Arngrium conquered 1 engildus, King of Finmarck, and Egabert King of Biarmia, who resisted Froths, King of Denmark, with so obstinate a mind and sorces. The said Froths marryed his Daughter, which he onely loved, to the said Arngriums, a Swedish Champion, who vanquished Egbert, whom he challenged to sight a Duel with him; thinking it not unfit to become his Father in Law, who had made himself so famous, by to many Titles of his Actions, and had conquered a most sharp Enemy.

CHAP. II. Of the cruelty of the Wild Inhabitants.

S the Eastern people that dwell in the Caspian Mountains, by reason of the mighty noise of the Sun-rising, and the horrid found by secret exhalations coming from the bowels of the Earth, fly to Caves to fave their lives, and stop both their ears, that thay may be fafer in the troublesome time: so the Nations that live in the utmost Coasts of the Seas of Norway, by reason of the violent South-West Wind, and thick Snows lying on the tops of the most high Mountains, have their Caves under ground, and live upon Fish, and Wild Beails. And these hate any men that shall sail to them for Traffique, as if they were Rovers, fearing to be brought into captivity by them: But fuch as are Runaways, and oppressed by the cruelty of Tyrants, they admit for their companions, and they instruct them for their defence, how they may catch Pirats in fnares, and kill them, when they come upon their Coasts. They may indeed, whilest they counterfeir themselves to be Fugitives, or shew their Horbours to strangers to ride in, that they may be in no hazard, shut them up in what dangers they will. But when strangers come not, that they cannot do these and the like practifes, by reason of the Sea frozen, they are forced to stay in Dungeons and Caves, made up with the bones and ribs of Sea-Monsters, because of the Winds and Snows.

it ž

拉出

加

TIED

100

the

Mi

tai

ρĺ

Itt

CIZ

740

For these Caves seem to be made very cunningly, being thatched outwardly with Sea-weeds, like to a ship turned bottome upwards; and that by reason of the Winds vehemency, which are no less formidable in that place, than cruel Tempests raised out of the Sea. There are some certain men amongst them, that are as it were shepherds, that live on the Coasts of the Caspian Sea, that stop the passages to their Cottages, with Turst and Sea-Weeds or Mountain Mois, with Twigs fastened together, lest any man coming from Sea, might come to view, and learch out them, and their fecret places. And it may be they willing. ly endure this hardness of the Ayr and Earth, and to live in Dens, that they may be free from the intolerable and infatiable Tributes of Tyrants, to whom the boundless Ocean seems to be but a small Earthen por. Also Pliny, lib. 16, c. 2: relates very firange things concerning Nations living in Caves toward the North, and toward the boyling Sea; namely, that there is a miferable people which have high Hillocks, and green Banks made with their hands, that are higher then the highest flood of the Sea; their Cottages being so made like to men failing in them as when ships are drowned by shipwrack; but when the waters go out, they hunt after Fish about their Cottages, which go back with the Sea; and those they thus take, they dry more by the Wind, than the Sun,

Again concerning the cruelty of these Wild Men, &c.

Oward the white Lake of the farthest North parts, where the Dominion of the King and Kingdome of Sweden is largelt in extent: there dwell most fierce people on all fides, who use no other Breast-plates, than Wild Asses, or Elks Skins: Likewise they use Bowes and Lances that are fortified with a most Spear before and behind. For by an admirable agility (as I faid before, lib. 1. of the Scriofinni) they can turn and wheel about at pleasure on every side, and can avoid or put off any violence; and that chiefly on the tops of Valleys, that are in all places filled continually with thick snows. And we may almost say of these Nations, what the chief Philosopher of the Seythians Anacharsis writ of their Difeases; that is, that neither any one that comes unto them can fly away, nor can they be taken, nor yet be found, unless they please, and laid hands of. For they have no Cities nor Walls built: they all carry their houses with them: the Foot-Archers living without any bread, but onely with Fish and Deer they kill, their Houses are Wagons and Tents, made either of the dried Skins of Beasts, or of the Barks of Trees : yet in Winter they quarter by the Banks of Waters, and in Summer, amongst Shrubs, and Trees, and shady places, varying their station. Their Caps frequently are Wild-Geefe, or Duck-skins, or Cocks; which, as other Fowl, are there found in abundance. There are a World of precious Skins, rather to be barterd for, than to be bought with money.

CHAP. IV. Of the Five-fold Speech of the Northern Kingdoms.

By this diversity of their Habits and Arms, is declared what difference there is of their Countries, Languages, Ages, and Exercises. For there are many great and mighty Lands, as Lapland, Moscovia, Swethland, Gothland, the Land of the Vermori, Dalenses, of the Mountainers, and Normegians; whose largeness is extended far and broad, and is greater then all Italy, Spain, and France, joyned together: That Pliny did not failly call them for their undiscovered greatness another World. Therefore it is no wonder, that therein is found the use of five Languages; namely, of the Northern people, of the Laplanders, or men of Bothnia, Moscoviters, Russians, Finlanders, Swethlanders, Goths, and Germans. But in

Time of the

Chilli

bem,

Вор

Mols,

eto

ingmay the

.2,

the

ple

are

eto

W2-

the

off

these cold Countries, some men live to be above 160, years old, as they do also in England and Sestland, wherein the Venerable Bishop David lived to be 170, years of age: also the Exercises of those that dwell in the Northern Delasts, are Hunting and Fishing, and they live by bartting with the Moscovites. The Finlanders live by Husbandry, Fishing, and hewing of Wood: The Goths and Swedes busic themselves in the same Exercises: The German strangers are given to merchandising, and live by gain; they observe the Law of the Terrigena, and they import all things that seem to respect a civil kind of life; as silk Cloaths, weaved Garments with Gold, and divers Wines.

What kind of Weapons they use, I shall shew both here partly, and partly underneath; but more at large concerning their Battails in the Fields. But here it is granted, that amongst all the Northern people, the Goths are the most experienced in Archery, and more nimble at their Slings, as the Finlanders are appro-

ved for their Bowes.

The Swedes we to fight with Axes, and Hatchets, and Speers: their Habit after the antient manner is wont to be short and close about them, except their Hose that are more wide. The Swedes we more large Garments, almost after the German fashion: The Moscovies wear long Garments, as the Greeks did; of them all, these are the most Northerly: But the wild Laplanders are clothed in coltry Skins, not for any Ornament, but for Necessity take.

CHAP. V.

Of Bartring of Commodities without Meneys.

Since all Fraud is naught and deteltable in any thing what loever, yet it is swotfe and more deteltable and bitter the more it is attempted amongft fimple people, when any false or adulterate money is paid to them ; as I shall shew underneath in my 6th. Book, concerning diversity of moneys. Therefore this Nation of Laplanders, or men of Bothma, and wild places, is quiet at home and is held not to be known to the rest of the World. They are not troubled with false money, for they looking rather to the account of things, than of monies, obtain with pleasure and content what they wish tor. And being thus ignorant of the noise of Wars, they live without Seditions, and dwell together without Envy, and communicate all things one to another without Fraud: all the Contention they have is to avoid Poverty, and not to be inamonred of Riches.

Theie people know not how to be coverous, nor will they vex themielves with any Fraud in Bargaining: Wherefore living without Tumults, they feek onely for moderate Fortunes, that they may not be deprived of a good Conscience as many rich men are ; for it is a heinous offence with them to take any thing by violence, who know not how to deceive any man of his Right : Yet fince they are not happy in all things, but that they want other mens helps and commodities to make them lostherefore they thick to traffique in Goods, withour money, depending on honelt and faithful change one with another, by a mutual content; and without uttering any words, they deal justly : not for that they want wir, and have barbarous manners, but becau e they use a peculiar Language which other Nations can hardly understand. Also, there are places appointed yearly, to perform their bufinefles, either upon the Plains, or Frozen Lakes, and these are kept as Marts, that they may vent in general all such Commodities that they have gaind by their private wits at home or abroad. Nor do they abfrain from the like Merchandise, when other men bring to them what they defor their present of hiters are content; they as any Contan and Was shared

moift

go

武

apo

City

111

coso place

th

110

the

They have Governours, and they highly respect them chosen by the common consent of the people, called Bergehara; that is, Mountain-men, to whom they pay many pretious Skins, and divers kind of Fish, as well for Tribute due to the King of Sweden, as given by them of their own liberality. And these are clothed in Red, whereby they are known before others. They pay also the like Tributes to the King of Norway, and Emperour of Moscovia, and are subject to them. They never make Wars against their Neighbours, or any that live far from them, unless they be provoked by great injury; and then also they use not onely Arms that Fury can afford, but they fall upon their implacable Enemies with cruel Incantations, stupisying the Limbs of their Enemies; so that they can neither lift up their hands, nor strike with their swords, and can hardly fly from them.

CHAP. VI. Of Fairs upon the Ice.

In this Scheme is demonstrated the most antient Custome of Marts upon the plain and wide Ice, in many Provinces, and places, that are observed by most rich confluence of Merchants. Their most eminent place is the Archiepiscopal City of Upfal, of the Kingd of Sweden: through the middle whereof a most valt River passing, is so mightily frozen with thick Ice, most commonly about the beginning of February, that it will bear the weight of infinite multitudes of men, Beafts, and all forts of Commodities. And fuch Fairs, even until this day, Antiquity called, and yet calleth Dysting, that is, the judiciary place of the most prudent Quueen Dyse, because this most high-spirited, and most wile woman, feeing the infinite multirude of people, by reason of the most cold influence of the Heavens, their Corn and Fruits being exhausted, to be in danger to bestarved, the declaring the Necessity, perswaded them rather to go forth of their Native Countrey, and to feek a feat in other Lands beyond Seas, living peaceably, and when they had found it, to be diligent about it, than to lole their lives by the most horrid censure of some improvident men : yet this going forth of the people, is not from the Peninsula Scanziana, whereof Paulus Diaconus speaks concerning the Lumbards. There might be the like cause, but at a very great distance afunder: for by the Command, Order, and Direction, of this Queen Dyfa, it was varied with an infinite multitude of people, and with power. But fince my most dear Brother and Predecessour Johannes Magnus, Arch-Bishop of Upfal, makes mention of this in his History, I send the curions Reader to his Book, and return to my Icy Marts; and fay, that by an unvaried fign, time out of mind, all the Northern people, and the Nations neer to them, are wont to obferve these Marts most strictly, after this manner, That the first Full-Moon shall prescribe an infallible fign and time (which is after the day and midnight of the three Kings in January) at which time all men may come to those Fairs, kept at a place very well known to them all : yet observing that point of time, both before, and at, and after that in their Commerce, that the Moon decreafing, may shew every man the way to return to the place from whence he came. The business that Merchants there traffique about, are things of all forts: Namely, pretions Skins of divers Creatures : also Silver Vessels for the Table, and for the Ornament of infatiable Women : also Corn, Mettals, Iron, Copper, Cloth, and things to be earen; which are more frequently bought by just estimation, than by weight, in a mutual and pleasant agreement; except such things which Providence, which is a wife Defence, perceives, that the Inhabitants may want for their present or future necessities : such as are Corn, and War-Hories, and

111.

otha

は対性

3 the

live

ule

-500

hat

tdly

noft

pal

ralt

ena

in-

oft n,

moilt meats; as Butter, Cheefe, Lard: the kinds whereof, if War be suspected, are forbidden to be brought forth by Forreign Merchants, or their Factors, by a publick Edict, with a penalty to confirm it. Moreover, in another place upon a Lake congealed, called Melet, about the end of February, by the Walls of the City Serengen, there are Marts held upon the Ice. Again in the middle of March, at a place called Oviken in the Territories of Jempthia, in the Mountainous places of Sweden and Norway, there are Fairs kept upon the Ice; and in very many places about the middle, or end of May, Troops of Horses pals over the Frozen Waters, which are very wide, whether they be for War or Peace, when at Rome they are wont to feed on delicate Fruits.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Marriages of the Laplanders by Fire and Flinte

The Friends and Kindred being present, the Parents confirm their Childrens Marriages by Fire; and by this Steel and F int, that Fire is ffricken our by. For in Fire and Flint, as by a Conjugal Society, the most fit and lucky Marriages are made faft than by any other ign whattoever. And without Fire the more civil Christian People ellewhere in the North, do not folemnize their Marriage Rices. For every one, both Bridegroom and Bride, according as they are for Eminency and Kindred command long Torches that are made by wonderiul Art, of divers colours, out of loft Wax, with many coloured filk pieces hanging about them, to be carried before them to the Church as they go, for the Priests Benediction: which also they leave there behind them, with great Ob-lations, when they have ended their Solemnities: But in the mean while, they that carry the Wax-lights, rend off the tilk Ribbands, as in great fury, for a rich booty.

Moreover, Women when they have been delivered of a Child, they come with Wax-candles lighted to give thanks to God; and all faithful Christians alfo are carried to their Sepulchres with Lights burning; as they came into the World before by Baptilm, and a lighted Lamp. But to what belongs to the forefaid Laplanders, and their Custome, I must farther add, that these Marriages being celebrated the way spoken of by Fire, the Kindred bring home the Bride adorned with Ermine and Zabel Skins, upon a ranged or tame Deer, accompanied with a notable company of her Friends, according to the account of her

And so they bring her into the Bed-Chamber, or Tents, wishing unto her health and fruitfulnels, and they use Dancing in the mean time. But the Bridegroom is adorned with Skins of a spotted Beast, or Mardurins, walking like to some Noble-man of Venice, to be esteemed as much for his rich Furs, as others that are loaded with Jewels, or Gold Chains. But the Bridegroom is so much more to be commended, together with his Bride, and that whole Nation, that they will be joyned tegether with fo great state, not by wandring Lust, but solemn Matrimony.

CHAP. 8:

Of Mourning Dances,

Northern Climate, where Day and Night divide the Year, feem to remain without joy mingled with forrow, as if they lived in a Defart. They make merry Bankers, having Minstrels with them, that the Ghests being more merry, (though they feed on hard meats) may be provoked to dance; which they lead on, when the Musick playes lustify, singing in their Countrey Ryme, the famous acts of their antient Worthies and Giants; namely, that glory and praise they wan by their valour. Then falling to deep fighs, & groans, they fall down upon the ground in humble manner, and the like is done by many standers by, that they may seem to be conformable to the rest.

At length the Musick raising them, they fall to more delicate meats, playing no more doleful Tunes; which were plaid chiefly for that reason, because they are unable to imitate the famous Deeds of their Ancestors, in any, or but very sew things, or be like to them in their Titles; that is, for desending the chattiry of Maids, nd repelling the violence of Oppressours, where, by a deceitful dissimulation of Governours, these wicked Enormities are committed or suffered to be done, without any punishment for them. Therefore the forestid people think it far better to dy than to live; for the most part they mourn, when Children are born, and sing at Funerals, as if they were Festival times.

CHAP. IX. Of their Exercifes by Moon-Lights.

IT is a frequent Question, what the Northern people do, when the nights are long and continual, before and after the Winter Solftice, when by the light of the Sunmen especially under the Pole, should do any work; and again, when they have nothing but Day in Summer, and scarce any Night appears for fix moneths; wherefore we must here observe, that Prolomy testines in the Second of his Almagest, c.6. that in the 39. parallel, the greatest day is fix moneths long; and under this parallel there are men, or countries, farthest toward the Pole; namely, the Laplanders, and Bothnians, and Ifdalenfes, that are Islanders. In the 38. Parallel, the greatest day is five months, under which is Sweden, Helfinge, Angermannia, and the more Northerly parts of Norway. In the 36. Parallel, the greatest day is reckoned to be three moneths: under this is Gothia, Muscovia, Russia, and Livonia. Therefore, they that live in that long Summer light, or opposite darkness, know excellent well, and they are wont profitably to vary their constant actions, when it is night. For instead of day-light, they burn the fat of Sea-Monsters, and with a Wick put to it, they use that in their Houses, Fields, or Woods: they make thin, and prepare the Nerves of Living-Creatures, especially of ranged Deer (whereof I shall speak underneath concerning Living-creatures) for Thread and Webs, and Cloths, to be lowed together, especially of Skins with Wooll; because Flax in those far Countries, is neither fowed, nor doth it grow.

Moreover, those that labour in Champion-places, use in the snow, either the said fat of Beasts, or Fish-Oyl (and the Wind can have no power over these) or else they have the cleer Moon-light, or reslexion of the Stars; and they can do greater works in the Woods and Fields, when there is Snow and Ice in the Moon-light, and make longer journeys, than they can do in Summer by light of the Sun.

mate,

ning.

IVIDG

eson

Julick

tiens

lour.

mble

con-

lying

:tiky hery

altity

mu.

o be

ak ic

are

of zn. fix

dof

ng;

ole;

the

dn-

the 214,

10

ary

the

iles,

122-

ing

¢-

het

the

OC do

he eht

For in Summer, the crooked Valleys, and oblique Hills, and steep Rocks, and high Mountains, cannot be passed over with their Wagons, to make Journeys ; but in Winter all are plain and fit, to take any kind of Journeys, and they are for agile, and opportunely ordered, that two Oxen will draw more weight (as I faid before and as I shal say hereafter concerning wars upon the slippery Ice, or beaten snow, than ten hories can do in wagons on land,)But as concerning the great Light, that it may not hurt them whilest they sleep, they keep Remedies sufficient against it, both at home, and in their Tents; nor yet the glittering brightness nor hear of it, do so much hart to the Inhabitants, as the most cruel Gnats do, which may be, are a greater plague to the Egyptians, as I shall show underneath, and speak of the Remedies against them.

CHAP. X. Ann man ai sint bas molesso

Of their Ships, Bands, and Roots, bound together.

BEcanse that in the Lands farthest North no Mines of Iron, Copper, or Silver, are yet found out, and they have great necessity for shipping, by reason of the multirudes of Waters, which must be fastned with Iron; therefore when they make little ships, most for the use of Fishermen, they most ingeniously put together the cleft boards of Pine and Fir-trees, made into thin Planks, whereof they have plenty in their Woods; and their they failen without any Iron Nails with the pliable green Roots of Trees, as with Ropes, as Spiders do their Webs. Others bind their Veilels with Withs, or Twigs of Poplar Trees, and other Trees, except Oke, which grows not neer them within two hundred Gethick or German miles. But Fir and Pine-Trees there, are to ftraight and high, that they are most fit for every necessary use, and for gain, for those who defire it, when they can be fold to Forraign Merchants. Others, for making ships, fasten the Planks, together with the Nerves of Beatls, converted and bruifed, especially of ranged Deer, which they dry by the Wind and Sun; but these Nerves are like Hares, drawn off from the thinner Nerves, which are made clean for to make Thread, and are as it were the Excrescence of them; as I shall shew elsewhere, tib.de Animal, concerning the use of Ranged Deer. But all their ships, however they are made or joyned, are most diligently smeered with Pine-tree pitch (whereof there is plenty in abundance) and they are faltened with Wooden pins, within and without, where ever need is. Their ships are very short. not deep, but very broad, in a due proportion, and they are kept to fail with in Tempefis, because the Woods rise not high, but are frothy; which froth is raised, by reason of the stones that lie hid under the Waters; and they commonly yeeld to the Waves, like to a Sack of Leather, and to the reslexion of the Waters, because they are not sastened with hard and unconquerd Iron, but with soft tough Twigs and Nerves. And these will last long against the injury of the Elements, because of the imbred Pitch.

They use for Anchors crooked Roots of Brong Wood, bound with Poplar, or Birch-Withs, that are as long as Ropes, and their Sails are Woollen Cloth, and Barks of Trees, especially on standing waters, but very seldome on the salt-sea. They call thefe ships Sentes; as there is a long kind in the Bothnick Sea, and fresh waters, called Haapar, that is most carefully fastned without any Iron. And this, as it is wonderful long, to it is monstrous swift, that it seems almost to fly with any light touch. It ferves onely on swift descending Rivers for Summerfifhing.

negative man a mode and do 17 and a none of a law work of the

In which kind of flup I was carried most dangerously, Anno 1518, between the Mountainous Rivers descending: so was I constrained to perform my publick occasions to trust my life and talety to a brittle piece of Wood: the more dangerous was the passage, as there were Marks set on the shore, where people of great note had been drowned before by the force, of the Rivers.

Of the Art of shooting with the Bow.

THE Art of Shooting with the Bow, as a Natural Profession all the Northern people follows especially with Bows stated for every Age, Time, Place, and Occasion; and this in their first Age, wherein their careful Parents teach all their Children of both Sexes, but chiefly their Boys, how to hold, raile, or depreis, or turn obliquely their Hand-bows to shoot their Arrows with (for other kind of Arrows they use not) and if a Dart or Arrow, missing the Mark, is lost between the snow or grass, or fall down into shrubs or trees, that it cannot be found; to recover it, they shoot one or more Arrows after it, at length or apright to find its for that which was first shot; is to be found not far from it. And this way is observed by all Northern Archers to find out their shafes. That Children may but the mark, they lay down for them a white Girdles which they take great design in) or new Bows; and likewise for Maids a Linnen Garment. And they grow so skillul, that at a great distance they will hit a Half-peny or a Needle, so far as they can see is, infallibly; as I saw it, Anno 1518, when I was in their Countrey.

These People are commonly small of stature, and of small courage, because they live without Cities or Cattles, either in Villages or Tents, or in Caves or Delarts: some of them make their Houses in Trees, growing square, that they may not be suffocated in the field by the thick fall of snow, or devoured by hungry Beasts, that come in an invincible number; upon which occasion, there is great care taken for childing Women, and young Children, which they will pursue more greedily, as the most dainty meat; as I shall shew underneath concerning the Nature of Wolves,

The Women and Maids of these Countries are very fruitful and fair, chiefly for that cause, that they are accounted tairer for White and Red (which is Natures chief Workmanship:) they neither know, nor will know Painting, it they were not comely by Nature: There are also Young men and Boys which the Parents cloth with dryed Skins of Beasts, chiefly of young Bears. And it is not blamed in the Nation, that is so bred in simple manners, and innocent behaviour.

CHAP. XII. Of the Hunting of the Laplanders.

Having spoken in my first Book, c. 2. of the Scricsinni, Biarmienses, and Finmarck men, and of the life and manners of them; I shall here add how they run swifely after Beasts, with Bows and Arrows, over Valleys and Snowie Mountain tops, up and down, upon bending downwards broad slippery boards, bound to their seet.

The Women shoot their Arrows with their Hairs hanging about their Ears; And no wonder, because those that dwell under the Pole, when the Woods are so green, there are sound such abundance of Wild-Beasts amongst them, that men alone, unless women help, are not sufficient to hunt them.

·IV

Teen

herm

and

10 of

cen

i to

y 13

tren

teat

ney

heir

ule

ot

cy

3

de

cy ic

at

Therefore the Women hant them as numbly, and may be more minute than the men do. But the man divides the prey, and puts it on the Spit to rotty and disposeth of what must be given to thole of the House, or to Neighbours in liberary.

Nor is this cunning to hunt Wild-Beafts, either by Snares or openly, used; as also upon Birds of divers kinds that are found in vall Delarts, whole totter Feathers for their Beds and their harder Quils for the weating of litings. But they more frequently feed on Rolls than boyled Mears. The Skins of Beatts they make fit for their Childrens bodies, and Birds skins for to cover their beads; wherefore some have foolishly believed, that their bodies are hiry like to Wild Beatts: which may be proceeds from ignorance, or pleasure that many take to speak things incredible of remote Lands, as Paulus Jovins thinks fit to do.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Horses passing over Snowy Mountains.

Orles and men pals, as upon Bucklers of War; for there are other Moun-I cains that are Limits between the Northern King oms of Sweden and Norway, called Doffrini, and lome others, that in Winter are to covered with deep thick Snows, that Travellers cannot pais over them the ulual way a But that homebred Factors may by their Wir overcome all difficulties, and lighten the Burdens by Art : they bind to their own feet, and to their Hories feet, butdles or bows made with light broad Cork, or Bark of Tore, and fo without tear of finkingsthey can with a great Burd in go over the Mountains of Snow, and they will go but a days Journey that is, two Mountain miles, (which is 12. Italian miles) in a day, because the days are short. But in the night, the Moon shining most bright, they will go twice of thri e as far. Nor is that unfitly done, fin e by the reflex of the Snow, the Light of the Moon en ightens the high and low fields, and fleep Mountains, that they can delery Wild-Beatts afar off, and avoid them: amongst which Mountains, Wolves (when the Gold is very great) ome in troops, e pecially in January (and there are the most dangerous, as I shall show underneath, concerning the danger of Wolves. But the things that are carried by such ingenious labour, are Salt, hard Iron, Linnen and Woollen Cloth, and fome where Mineral Stones of Silver, Copper, and pretious Skins : But that Horses may be better provided for their passage over the Snow, they daily ead them over Snowy Valleys, from their first years, with Baskers ried to their feet, with a light burden, that they may learn to earry greater burdens. Allo, thole that lead them, support themselves with Baskets, bound under their feet, and a Staff broad at the end, that by these Preambles, for that time, they may escape imminent death and great necessity, For it falls out with them that travel, that when the South Wind blows, the Snow grows to loft that horle or man fetting their feet upon it, unleffe they provide, as I faid before, against it, they will fa I into an open Pir, and no Man and Beast can help, unlesse there be more company that are faithinl.

Of the dangerous passage between the Mountains.

There is yet greater danger that attends such who travel over hollow Mountains, because the Winds blow so strong there, which seem to be raited by the concourse of small Snow, that unlesse men carry Spades to dig, and open the way, they can scarce get out of the high Mountains, or deep Valleys.

many such like: from the Bottome, or Roots whereof, raft Rivers run forth, some to the East, some to the West: For the Mountains are continued from South to North, as a line drawn in form of a crooked bunched back; and they have their Names from the Provinces, Rivers, or form of Places, or Beasts that use to dwell in them; as from Bears, Wolves, Stags, or Beavers, and other kinds of living creatures that are all hairy, which according to the quality of the place, are most exceeding well covered against the Gold. Therefore Lions, Camels, Apes, Asses, or Mules, if they be carried thither, can scarce live there: yet the Inhabitants will go into these Mountains in Winter, carrying no small Burdens with ranged Deer, like yoked Oxen, almost two hundred Italian miles. One man keeps 40, ranged Deer, and each of these will carry two hundred pound weight and more.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Law of killing Crows.

Here is a Law made in Iceland, that is, the Land of Ice, that was of old, and is now subject to the Kingdome of Norway, that who soever shall kill a hurtful Beast, should have a fet reward from the Kings Treasury, or Officer there, according to the quality of the body of the Beast slain, and cruel Nature of it. Since therefore white Crows there are more cruel than in other Countries, to kill young Lambs and Pigs; slying fiercely upon them, and scratching them with their claws. Young menthal dwell there, use themselves to that labour, that they may revenge this Depopulation, to kill many Crows with their Arrows, and they onely tie their backs upon strings, and shew them to the Governours, for to demand their reward: and they largely reward them, giving them as many Arrows as they shot, and killed withall. And this is observed also concerning all hurtful Creatures in the Northern Climate, saving that the Skins of great Bears; especially wild ones, are laid for the Priests to tread on, at the sect of their facred Altars, that the Cold may not hurt them.

the discount of the dange CHAP. XVI.

Of the Baptizing of Children of the Wild Inhabitants.

Hough I have faid much of the Idolatry and Superfittious Worship of the people, that live farthest North, and how there is hope, that when they shall hear the true Gospel preached, they will make hast to joyn themselves to the Congregation of faithful Christians: yet the pious persuasion of the Catholick Priests, hath already induced many of these wild people to come in; and there is greater possibility, that henceforth all Errours being laid aside elsewhere, they will come with one consent. But the reason why they seem to delay is very evident, they living above two hundred Italian miles from the Churches of the Christians: to which, because of that vast distance, they can seldome come: yet such as have yielded to the Christian form, are found to be most obedient; for though the distance be so great, yet once or twice a year they visit their Churches where they were babtized, and they bring their sucking Children in Baskets, bound on their backs, and other Burdens, and Gifts of Skins, especially costly Skins, to pay to the Priests for their Tithes.

But this discommodity of distance is lamentable, not onely of the Bothnii, that dwell toward the North, but also of the Vermii Westward, for it hinders their

conversion to the Faith.

213





It any man doubt whether this was done by a monftrous force, let him behold the tops of some Mountains, and lechim lay, if he can, who carried such huge fromes up to the tops of them. For every man will observe, that takes notice of this Miracle, that it is not to be thought that a Weight that could not be thirreth or very hardly, upon plain ground, could by the one y labour of ordinary men be carryed up to the top of tuch high Mountains, or that the usual force of men could bring it thither: But whether the Giants after the Flood, were the Authors of such things, or some mighty strong men above other men, he faith he can collect intele from the Denift Amiquities. Perhaps, if he had fearched the Rocks and Stones of the Upper Sweden and Gothland, he by his admirable Wit might have conseighed to Posterity the most famous deeds of the Antients since Swethland and Gothland have had Kings and Princes 1370, years, before that Dan their fielt King began to rule in Denmark; whose magnificent Deeds are carved in Stones, and the curiofity of our Times fees it i get Saxe diffinguisherh, that formerly there were three forts of Mathematicians, which went under the name of Giants and Champions, and thele wrought thrange Miracles, by their feveral Enchantments.

The first were men of a monstrous kind called Giants, who were greater bo-

dies then men are:

The second were Naturalists, who had a Divining Are; who the leffer they were in body, in respect of the former, the greater they were above them in the Quickness of their Wir. Between thele, and the Giants, there was a continuat War, till these conquered the Giants by force of Arms, and gat to themselves a Right to Rule, with an Opinion of Divinity.

The third fort sprang up from the copulation between the former two; and their were neither equal to them in greatness of bodies, nor for skill in Arts: yet these were conceited to be Divine, by those whose Minds were deluded by

Decents.

Of the difference of Giants and Champions.

Here was formerly in the Kingdome of Helfingia (which is toward the North, and now under the obedience of the King of Sweden) a Giant, called Harthenus, who was nine Cubics long, and he had twelve Champions that were his Comrades, that were very tall, yet not half lotall as he. There was another called Starshaterus, who was most famous in Europe for his frequent Victories, as I shall shew underneath. There was also Arngrinus and Arverodus, of whose excellent Deeds I shall speak underneath: yet, lest I should seem to borrow Examples of Greatness and Fortitude from the Antients onely, I shall produce fome modern men, both from the Mines, and other Provinces of Sweden and Gothia, who were fo strong, that each of them could lift up a great Oxe or Horse upon his shoulders, and could carry an Iron Vessel of six hundred, eight hundred, or a thouland pound weight, some Furlongs : and there were some Maids could lift the fame, and there was one leen, who met an an armed man on horfeback, and by nimbleness and force he cast him to the ground.

the non mornes. but he elewhere mia, Halmia St. o the comora Seradmire and believe to have been cally; of men, constite Gray, where the

encion the speak

tering and one what

on they lived: yet

to cice, which

and to make those

e molt dien Wine to the arms Reale ner this History, at the moght in it. Tonk md Various 2

K CHAP,31

Melgo Reyelan Jarour a starter

Of the Sobriety of Giants and Champions.

Hat most famous Writer of the Danish affairs, Saxo, alleaged before, and who I shall be often alleaged hereafter, faith, that amongst other mighty strong men in the North, who were great as Giants, there was one Starchaterus Thavestus; whose admirable and heroick Vertues are so worthily extolled by him, that there were scarce any like him in those dayes in all Europe, or in the whole World, or hardly are now, or ever shall be. And amongst other Vertues he ascribes to that high spirited man, he mentions his sobriety, which is principally necessary for valiant men; and I thought fit to annex that peculiarly to this relation, that we may as in a glass, fee more cleerly the luxury of this luftful age. For, as the same Saxo tellifies, that valiant Starcharerus loved frugality, and loved not immoderate dainties. Alwayes neglecting pleature, he respected Verthe imitating the antient manners of Continency; and he defired a homely provision of his Diet; he hated costly Suppers: wherefore hating profusion in Diet, and feeding on Imoaked and rank meat, he drove away Hunger with the greater appetite, as his meat was but of one kind, left he should remit and abate the force of his true Vertue by the contagion of outward Delights, as by some adulterate iweetness, or should abrogate the Rule of antient Frugality, by unusual Superstitions for Gluttony. Moreover he could not endure to spend rost and boyled meat all at one Meal; holding that to be a monfirous Food, that Cookery had tempered with divers things together : Wherefore that he might turn away the Luxury of the Danes, that they borrowed from the Germans, that made them so effeminate, amongst the rest he made Verses in his Countrey Language; Omitting many of themshe lang thus and some did on bon anos story

Starchaterus his Verses of Frugality.

Strong men do love raw meat; nor do they need Sor love, on dainty Cates and Feasts to feed, War is the thing they most delighe to breed, You may sooner bite off their Beards that are Full hard, and Stiff with briftled rugged hair, Thantheir wide months leave Milk their daily fare: We fly from dainty Kitchins and do fill Our Bellies with rank Meats, and Countrey Swills Of old men fed on boyled Meats' gainst their will, A Dish of Grassthat had no smack did hold, Hogs and Sheeps Flesh together, hot or cold; Nor to pollute their meats with mingling were they bold: He that eats Cream we bid him for to be Strong, and to have a mind that's bold and free. Think on Froto, revenge his Fathers death, as he, Each Coward and faint-hearted Fool (hall dy: Nor shall be ever scape though he do fly, Or hid in Valleys or close Dens, he ly. Eleven Lords, of elder time we were, That waited on King Hachon, and at fare Helgo Begachus fat first in order there,

re, and who

ghty firons

term Towner-

led by him.

in the whole

Vertues be

Religiocipal-

to this

his lotted town

-0/ 100 PM

repedied Ver-

a homely pro-

or on on Dut,

पांची केंद्र शुरूत हो

it and share the

is by frome adul-

ity, by ususual

h bendert und

root, the Con-

世界曲点103 manistrat made

may Language;

Chap. 4.

First Dish he eat was a dry'd Gammon, and A Crust as hard as Flint he took in hand; This made his hungry yawning Stomach stand, No man at Table fed on stinking meat, But what was good and common each man eat, Content with simple fare though ne're so great. The People Forraign Food did all decline, The greatest were not Gluttons nor yet fine, The King himself full sparingly would dine. No Drinks were used that of Honey bost, Beer was their common Liquour, Cetes oweft, They fed on Meats were little boyl'd no roft. Each Table was with Meats but meanly dreft, Few Diffees ont', Antiquity thought beft; And in plain F are each held himself most blest. There were no Flagons, nor broad Bowls in ufe, vision of his Diet ; he hard conty Nor painted Diffies grown to great abuse, Each, at the Tap, did fill his wooden cruze, att the bessome no graboot has No man admirer of the former days, and to and any more and an antioque Did ufe Tankards, or Oxeys; for their ways and damay and and a store Were sparing, almost empty Disherthis bewrays, almost an almost some states No Silver Bajons, or guils Cups were thought wounded not anothe fire on? Fit by the Hoft, and to the Table brought, and listed one se lie som balgod To garnift, or by Ghefts were vainly fought, more daw hand more berly soll

Wherefore, by such Arguments, he induced many to Temperance and Sobriecy, and other Virtues, that many were observed never to have been drunk, lest the chief stay of Fortitude, Continence, should be overcome by Luxury. And their mind was so far from Lasciviousness, that they scorned to behold Players & Jesters, or to provide any dainty Fare, or to desire what was largely prepared in anothers Kitchin, or to talte of it, if it were offered : nor would they make themfelves effeminate by any pernicious pleafure, that they might not foil the nerves of true Virtue, or their gallantry in War with any blemish of Vices.

CHAP, IV.

Of the Virtues of the most valiant Statchaterns.

Having Sobriety (as I said but now) he could enlarge the other Virtues by it, as being a fit Band to unice them together; and as all men confess, who look clearly into the Actions of the Heathens : and he had been more famous for his deferts, had he been as neer allyed to the Christian Doctrine, as he was born near his Nativity: Yet he lived three mens ages a valiant and unconquered Champion, being endued with a wonderful and incredible Virtue; and he was far taller, than common men; in bigness like as a Giant, so that he had a body answerable for bulk, to the greatness of his forces, and abilities of his mind. He was thought to yield to no morral man for his Virtue; whose Fame if read fo wide, that the most famous opinion of his Deeds and Name yet remains, For in all the North Countries, he gat most specious Monuments for himself. First, in Viohari in Norway he dedicated the beginnings of his glorious Actions to the favour of the Gods, with the flaughter of a King: Then playing the Pirat, having Subdued the Provinces very far, he invaded Ruffia, and conquer dFlocens the King of it, and spoiled him of a vast Treasure. By reason of these so notable first Military Actions, being called for by the Champions of Biarmia, who were then held to be the most excellent, when he had done many memorable Deeds amongst 'em,

heentred

entred into the Borders of the Sweens; and so after seven years Warfare ended, he went for Denmark, [then for Ireland, that the first dwellings of men might not be left uncouched by him t there he fought with two most excellent Champions, and conquerd both. Then he hastned to fight with Visioners, a sword-plaier of great note in the Eastern parts of Russia. For that Vifinnus vexed all the Provinces, farr and neer, with all forts of Injuries; and he ravished the Wives of noble men, by violence when their Husbands looked on. But Starchateras (like another Hercules) being provoked with the rumour of this wickednesse, to take away the Authour of it he went for Russias and he challanged the Ravisher to a single Combat, and overcame him. Then travelling farther Eastward, he came to Constantinople, where he encountred and worlted a mighty famous Gyant, whose name was Tanna, who relied much on the strength of his body, and he forced him to wander into unknown parts of the Earth under the name of an exiled man, when therefore no contrary fortune could deprive him of the victory, he went into the parts of Poland, and conquer'd a notable Champion called Vasche, or Vasza, in a single Duel. And not long after he fought with Hama a Mafter of detence, who was most famous amongst the Saxons for his skill at all forts of exercises: and it is said, he was knocked down at first with the fist of the forelaid Hama, that kneeling on his knees, his chin killed the ground: but he required this fall with a notable seveng; for so soon as he rose from his knees and had the liberty of his hands to draw out his fword, he cut Hama's body in two : and by that victory he made the Saxons subject to the Danes; who to cruelly abused their Government, that they forced them to pay yearly the fore-finger of each arm, as a Tribute of their fervirude. But this violent Government endured not long.

hear good of middle of the same CHAP. EV young mid and will a sale but to

Of the Patronage he afforded to the afflicted, of the best of the

Being humbly entreated by Helgen King of Norway, (who was to fight with 9, most noted Champions for their firength, on the very day he was married, being challenged by them to fight a Duell, who were resolved to take his Wife from him) to lend his affiftance in this diffresse, he so easily yeelded to his requests, that Helgen, going before him to the place appointed for the fight; fome dayes after he began his journey, he is reported to have gone as many miles in one day on foot, as the others rode in 12 days before. Being demanded by the Champions, Whether he were able to fight; He answered, that not onely one of them, but all might come and try his firength. The next day he came into the field of his Adverfacies with (corn, and fate under the Cliff of a Rock, opposing his body to the Winds and Snow; then, as if it were Spring-time to walk abroad, he laid afide his cloths, and fought for fleas in them. He cast also his Purple Robe that Helga gave unto him, (for that was the name of the Kings Wife) into the Briars, left he should feem to be shelter'd by his Garments, against the violence of hail. Then the Champions going to the Mountain over against him, fate down, having found a place where the wind did not blow against them; and they kindled a fire to keep away the Cold. Then when they law not Starchaterus, they lend one to the top of the Hill, to fland and watch for his coming: He in the declining part of the Mountain spied an old man all covered over with frow up to the shoulders : and he asked him, Whether he be the man that must fight the Duels promited. And when Starchaterus faid he was the same, the rest came, and demand, whether he would fight with them single or all at once. But he replyed, How often do these sad Dogs bark at me, I ule to drive them away, not fingle, but altogether : fignifying thereby that he had rather fight with them all at once, than one by one. For he thought

first to despise his Adversaries with words, before they came to fight. When the fight began, he slew six of them, and received no wound himself: but the three that were lest, though they wounded him with many wounds, he destroyed like their fellows: But these wounds he committed onely to a Countrey-mans son to cure, for the Veneration of his Office: For he restored parts of his stomach that were torn off, to their former places, and he bound up his Guts that were fallen out, with Twigs: Yet that he might not leave the civility of the young man unrewarded, he gave his Coat he had cast into the Briars, as a Reward of his pains.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Exercises of the faid Starchaterus.

Whilest Starchaterus was in War with the King of Sweden, and that he understood how Ingellus the most perulant King of Denmark, who was a slave to his pleasures, & embraced Vices for Virtues & intermitting the Duties of Kingly Majesty, was become a fordid Bond-slave of Luxury: he was forry that so hopeful a young man had laid aside to be the sonne of so famous a Father: Wherupon, when he was to go to Denmark, he took on his back a huge Load of Coals, as a rich burden; & being asked of those that met him, why he carryed such an unusual burden. He said, he would make the dulnesse of Ingellus become more acute with his Coles. And he said no more than he performed. For so much did the admonition of this most strong and eloquent man prevail, that Ingellus from an esseminate and lastivious slave of pleasures, became to be magnanimous and virtuous, and he slew those that slew his Father, whom he had exalted to be his greatest Friends. This being ended, Starchaterus rejoycing that he hearkned to his advice, and returning him thanks, it is reported that he writ many Verses in the manner sollowing, in commendation of the old Military Discipline.

W Hen I was young, and first did follow thee, Warlike King Hachopleasures were to me Unpleasant; and nought else but wars agree: Both Mind and Body I did exercise, Profane things, pleasing Stomach, I despise. Martial Affairs I loved and Wars adore, My Cloaths were harsh, and Garment sused before; I seldome rested short sleeps labour great; Nor let me idle be, 'twas little I did eat; Nor as some use that Gluttens are to feed: Who against Reason cram when there's no need. One of these cloath'd in soft and rich Array, Turns his swift horse about, and doth display His long Locks and folets his hair to be Loofe hanging down; and in Games delighes he: Oft playing Bankrupt leads a large life : His Tongue is verbal breaks the Laws by firife. By force of Arms invades them ; th' Innocent He doth oppress, and feeds with false intent On others moneys Whores and Gluttons are His company, he loves still dainty fare; He follows Whores as doth the Snake the grafs; Whilest Wars are hid in Peace, be dies an Ass:

Should

100 克克 (100.72 102) F, that kneeting on is the wind a notable bery or too bases to www.victory to made ne Gwenner, dae a sa Tobacci des to warm best with THE REAL PROPERTY. WITH ST. STREET, TO TAKE ie, he in early product OF MAY SUST MUTTER in both king to to the late of the for his larger. The TELEVISION OF DOWN THE OWNER WHEN and length for Both in tunbe, (where a beat feet to be being m in Outputs spirit daily at the sign and other later with Morni Rel 201 to adjust to K mith Minterior

Stok ?

Warfart midd

posts with two

salmed to febr

Taffin, for

etne lojuna

their Herberds

more with the

e west for Ralias

tentented in

CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF

to the contract for

ment of Polant, and simple Dool. And

OR WELDOW STORE

Should be within a Valley disappear,
No Armour can fence him who Death doth fear;
Each man must die Death cannot we eschew;
But I who war'd with all the World, I knew
Shall die an easie death, and to the Stars
Exalted be by sickness, not by scars.

Moreover, his mind was so far from lasciviousness, that he would not endure to be a spectator of it. He never prefer'd idleness before buffness, and he would never yield to the least Luxury, despiting effeminate and fearful men: Wheresoever in War he caught any Stage-Players, Jeffers, or Parafites, he took care to have them flain: holding it better to punish these light persons by Troops, and make them ridiculous by losing their Skins, than to condemn a man to lose his head for a criminal matter. And thus he was content to punish whole Companies of these Jesters, and base condition'd people, with reviling and scoffing words; and he would not lend his famous hands to defiroy such beaffly men. Starchaterus himself was present in that most famous Swedes War, that Ringo King of Sweden fought against Harald King of Denmark, and he was the chief Pillar there. For there is no mention made of any greater Battail in the North Countries than that. The King of Sweden conquered, and ruled the Danes: There were killed of the Swedes twelve thouland tall gallant men, and of the Danesthirty thouland of the Nobility, and the number of the Commons that were flain on both fides was numberleis.

Interest and the second CHAP. VII.

Of the sum of the Acts of Starchaterus.

Aftly, after his brave Acts, growing old, he briefly related all his gallant practifes, and Warlike Feats, in these Verses following; as Saxo sets them down.

But if (I recollect) when I was born,
The Fates to Warlick Fatts did me adorn To live and die in war, a bloody life To lead alwayes to live in Camps and deadly strife, Peace I abhor'd, and Mars his Ranner I Was shelter'd under, dangers passing by. Where I grew old to fight I thought it good, Andhonourable Life to shed mens blood. To use my self to flaughter; I have seen Kings frequent in war, and the fields was green Watred with blood, Helmets and Targets broke, And Coats of Mail shivered with Spears stroke. Breafts yield unto the Sword and the wild Beafts Fed high with Souldiers, as at dainty Feasts, That lay unburied; here a strong man A Helmet cuts in funder, and one ran His Spear through th' Helmet, just into the Grown, When I through dangers brought Olon's fon down. For every sword was broken in that fight, Or made all yield that stood against its might,

80

05

D

and tree to deal to the state of

So strongly did men strike. What when I show'd, With wooden feet, o're shores and paths bestrew'd With Spears innumerable for tornn; And when o're fields to pafs I first begun, Where Calthrops cast did wound my tender feet, With wooden Skales I arm'd them, as 'twas meet. So slew I Hama, who was strong and so The Crucii conquered were, and brought below. When Rinus Flebax fon commanded, then I wan the Conquest o're th'Efthian men, And such as Gemgalla breeds: next I came To Thole marchi, where my wounded head Bruised with Battel-Axes soundly bled. And here I learn'd, what good there is in Arms, To keep men out of danger and from harms, of the Bur, trails Leistelle Which Peasants much invites: the Germans I Brought to their condign punishment; and why? Because I slewthy Sons, Swertingus, that Were guilty of Frothos death, which begat Revenge in me to help my Masters wrongs, When they were drunk which unto me belongs. Nor was that leffe, when seven Brothers were Slain by my hand in tender Virgins care, Oc.

of por course

and he woold

at. Wherefor

SCALE CO SALE

Ph and make

the in bead

c Companies

cheg words;

2. Sections:

into locies

lat there. For

materies char

verte killed of

checked of

EEW MOORE WAS

allast per-

less them

Without doubt, this man was worthy of all Warlike commendation, who excelled not onely in vigour of mind, but firength of his body, and exceeding swiftness of foot, that in one day making haste, he came on foot from upper Sweden into Denmark, which others can scarce perform in twelve days, going continually.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the most great and terrible War between the Swedes and Goths, where Starchaterus was General against the Danes.

Ince Saxo Sialandiens the most excellent Writer of the Danish History, hath written in his 8. Book, the Cause, Beginning, and Progress, and end of the most fierce War between Haquinus Ringo, King of the Swedes and Goths, and Harald Hilderan King of Denmark, and made it most known to all succeeding Ages; and after him, five hundred years being over, Albertus Cratuzius hath fallen casually upon the same Battail: And last of all, my most dear Brother & Predecessour, John Magnus, Arch-Bishop of Upsal, hath lately written of this valt and incomparable War in his Histories of the Swedes and Goths, of fer-purpole, and most truly, (as a faithful Historian should write) I suppose it belongs to me onely, to make mention in this place, of that formidable Conflict that was between the Champions and the Giants, especially because in no battail of the Northern Kingdoms, and scarce ever in all Europe so many valiant men on both sides, Captains at Sea and Land, were ever read ot, to have sought with so much wehemency and heat of War for 7. years together, as we read in Histories that agree well concerning those Nations above written, and their Kings and Potentates. First, the famons Warriours are reckoned up; from whence, and of what Race they came that were the chief on the Danes part. Amongst which, there were also two Women, to whom Nature had given a manlike Courage, and Arr, and Experience had befrowed Skill upon them in Wars; these were Hatha and Vifna, two Noble-women of Sclavonian Race: of which the one was a chief Captain, and the other was exceeding well skilled in Warlike Affairs, that she was

chief Standard-bearer, and the used that and her right hand in battail, when Starchaterus came on with the Army of the Swedes and Goths (as I fhall speak underneath) and the fought as a private fouldier. Also, on the contrary fide, the most noted Captains are mentioned, especially became Starchaterus was the principal Leader of the Swedish King Ringon's Army; and in his Army marched Vegtbiorga, a Maid, that was a cruel fighter (as I shall show by and by) The number of the thips for King Ringon, on the Swedes and Corks part, were 2500. But the Danes were not inferiour to them: Where ore, both Armies being provided fometimes Wedge-fashion, and sometimes like a Half-Moon, and all other things requisite for the War; and when the Trumpets founded, there was a most sharp Battail fought by these two most valiant Nations, with so great heat striving to invade and defend their Kingdomes; that you would think, as Saxo faith, that the Heavens fell upon the Earth inddenly, and that the Woods and Fields fank down, that all things were mingled, and the old confusion of things was returned again; and that divine and humane things were confounded in this tumultuous Tempest; and that all things together were drawn to their ruine. For when they came within shot one of another, the intollerable ratling of their Armour filled all places with an incredible noise. The very vapour of their wounds made a sudden Cloud to darken the Ayr, and the day was covered as with Hayl by their Weapons. And the Slingers did no small service in the business. But when a bullet was shot out of Engines, or thrown by the hand, they fought hard by with Swords and Clubs, full of Nails, and then was there no little blood thed: When therefore they were weary, they began to fweat, and their Spears were heard to rattle afar off. There Starchaterus, who first writ the manner of this War in his Countrey Language, fighting first in the Army, mentions the Lords of King Harald, Hun, and Elli, and Hort, and Burgha, whom he flew, and how he cut off Vifna's right hand. Also a Maid that sought in the Swedes Army, called Vegtbiorg flew the Champion Soth : and the also was killed by another Enemy standing by. For the Guthones, who were cunning Bow-men, bent their Bows to forcibly, that they would shoot through their Armour: and there was no other cause of the slaughter more effectual. Their Arrows pierced their Coats of Male, and Helmets, as naked Bodies, One Rbbo was killd, shot through with 144 shafts, when he fought valiantly; For by the exceeding force of the Archers, the Dalacarli coming on, the Battail ftill grew fresh again against the Danes. At length the Danish King Harald was thrown out of his Coach, he was killed with 2 Club by his own Coachman, and thirty thouland Lords in his Army were flain, and twelve thouland such Lords of the Goths and Swedes part; and of the common people a number numberless. And by the command of Ringen, King of Sweden, was Hetha made chief of Denmark, there being fourty fix fet to govern it : to her Olo inceeded, who was flain by Starchaterus, who was brought in by the Spies, and had corrupted them with money.

Conference of the control of the section of the break of the

rain, and the other was describing well at tell to die Wieng Adoles, that the wir

The state of the s

cated and all at bury as a content of the policy of the principal of the p

Was the piece

marches Vip

e 1500. Buthe

s being provided

A mit all other

Cheer Was a most

o partentin-

BER SERVICE

Poods and Fields

of their serve

Coded to printing

beheir reine. For

phonoitheit his

er or their would reced as mich Harl

he butters. But

they loogle hard

me bou beg:

the manner of this emigrathe Locals

ion, and how he

ner hams, ciled

mather Entery

me edicie Bonsio

are was no other

when Cous to

mough with 144 title hithers, the

mitte Doct, At

NEWS ELICOWNS

a himywer fair,

and of the controls

m, Along of Sweden,

et to general : to

president plane

Desunda

CHAP. IX.

Of the Death of Starcharerus,

Lin his old age, lote his former Honours and Renown, he thought it would be honourable for him, if he should willingly destroy himself, and hasten his own death by his own Free-will. For of old time, it was held dishonourable for Warriers to die in their beds: Wherefore he wore hanging about his neck 120, pound weight of Gold, that he had long before won for killing King Olo, for with this he thought to hire one to kill himself; supposing nothing to be more fit, than to spend that Gold that he got for anothers death, to have himself killed. Whereupon meeting Hatherus, a Noble-man, whose Father he had killed, he exhorted him, not to fear to kill him, that had killed his Father, and he promised to him, if he would do so, that he should have the Gold he wore about his neck; and the more to stir up his mind against himself, he is reported to have used this Exhortation:

Hather, Besides I sew Levius thy Faeber,
Do thou kill me that will die, the rather.

Slay an old man, let thy Swordrevenz it.

My mind desires a brave hand thats sit

To be my Executioner: For

To die by Cowards hand, I do abhor,

'I is just with free mind to prevent my Fate:

What! sly you cannot, you anticipate,

Toung Trees are sostered old must be down hew'd,

He's Natures servant, who doth this conclude,

To cut up what cannot standithat Death's best

That's sought, when life's a burden he is blest

That loves his End and seeks a Funeral,

Long life brings grief. Death puts an end to all.

Having faid thus, he pulls money out of his putse: But Hatherus being moved as well to get the money as to revenge his Fathers Death, promiseth that he will do as he entreated him, and will expect no reward from him; Starchaterus presently offers him a sword, and laid his neck down; and that his Executioner might not be searful and faint-hearted in performing that Office, he exhorts him to be bold; saying more, That if before his body fell, he could leap between his head and his body, he should be innocent. Whereupon Hatherus, with a sharp Sword, beheaded the old man: the head cut off, and lying on the Earth, is reported to have bit the ground, shewing the fierceness of his mind, by the sierceness of his mouth then dying. But the Executioner seating some fraud in the promises, abstained from leaping; for it he had done so rathly, it may be he might have bin beaten down with the fall of his body, and been killed himself, as a reward for his killing the old man: But that he might not suffer so great a Champion to want a Burial, he caused his body to be buried in a field, commonly called Reling.

CHAP.P

T.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of Haldanus, and other Champions whom he conquered.

Tow comes another famous Champion of the Goths, called Haldanus: 2 Goth was his Father, and he was born when Charles was King, and was tamous in those days; whose admirable Acts and Exploits, are the more diligently to be let down amongst the rest, as they are known to proceed from notable valour. He, when he first used Military Affairs, plaid the Pirat, and pur himself into a battail with the Swedes; wherein when he understood that one Haiquinus a Champion was at hand, who could with Charms dull a fword, he prepared a huge Club, knockt full of nails and knots of Iron to lay about him with, that to he might conquer the force of his Charms with an Oaken Glub. Then when he appeared more eminent for his vertue than the rett, amongst the midst of his enemies, with his Helmet on, without a Buckler, he threw his Club with both hands against their Bucklers, that stood against him, and there was nothing to firm in the way to relift, but was broken in pieces by his Club cast so violently. Hence it was, that he overcame a Champion that met him in the Army, with a very tharp blow of his Club : yet conquered and wounded , he fell into the Swedes hand, and escaped into forraign Lands, and by the help of an old Souldier, who by curing his own wounds had long fince learned the Art of Chirurgery, he was reftored; and taking a notable Champion, called There, to be of his company, he fights again at Sea, with the Swedes in a Naval Battail; and becoming Conquerour, he likewife flew one Siwaldus, with his 7. Sons, that were by nature and cultome most cruel, who began a new affault being thus provoked, and he wed his ngly Club for it. Then he valiantly beat down one Hartbene a Giant, at Helfing, who was 9. Cubics tall (as I (aid before) who counted it his glory to ravish Kings Daughters, and to prefer the best married women before the bate, and and he rhought himself to be so much the braver fellow, the more honourable women be could deflowr by force:him he flew with a huge Club, together with his fix Champions, that used the like violence, and raged with the same wickednefs. Moreover, he conquered Egiherus, a Finlander, that challenged him to fight a Duel, who by Piracy molefied many here and there, and could not be worlled at Sea in battail. Then when he found that Thorida, Daughter to Hather, King of Norway was defired by Grimmon a Champion of mighty force, and to fight a Duel for her and that her Father had promited that he should win her, who could conquer this Champion : though he were now an old Barchelour, he was moved no lesse by the peremptorinesse of the Champion, than by the Kings promise to accept the Combat. Fighting with Grimmon, he cut afunder the utmolt knots of his Coat of Male, with the lowelt part of his Breaft-plate. Grimman admired at it, and laid, That he never found anold Lad that fought more stoucky. And presently drawing forth his Whinnier, he ran it through his Buckler; buc Haldanus ran through his right hand that gave the blow, and wounding him in the Thigh he made him ever lame, and to continue his life that was lett, he put a Fine upon him. Lattiy, he did with so great boldness tame Ebbs, a Plebeian, and notable Pirat, who asked, upon confidence of his valour, the Daughter to the King of the Goths, and half the Kingdome, for her Dowry, that he durst never presume to mingle his despicable base condition with Nobility, and far less to affest to be partaker of the Kingdome. And that Challenge being fent, becanse they wanted day, he killed him by Moon-light, as if he would have the Monster conquered in the night.

CHAP.14.

ale, whill he larger up to count its cota Cleaman

Halden

of many

EUR DECK

SCHOOL BOILD DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON NAMED IN

OR HARRING

or prepared a

ann, data

Then when he

the water

was buch habit

of oftening

mis. Rence it

with a very little

the Sweet hand,

lies, who by ca-

Their was tollo-

autoputs, be

navas Craque-

to by parent and

the stad he sted med Gunt, at

SE SOULD IS-

ethebute ind e harmondie

SE THE

ant wickel-

enged time to

CORP DAY IN District of the

SAT MOLE, MA

how Aware,

d Buckelour, he

the by the Kings

almost them-

A-Clate Growner parlicular foods.

Sin Backer; bu

MORNING WELL

DE WES LES LESS

to Elin, a Product

a the Day and to

Is that to be series

MANUAL KITOL

e ber too been

the land the Marie

CHAP, XI.

Of another certain Haldanus, and his Actions.

F no lesse fame is there mention made of another Haldanus, amongst the valiant Champions, the Son of Berchar of Nerway, and or Dretha, of the Kingly Race, whole young dayes were foolishly employed; but his ripe years made him tamous for his gallantry in Action, and he grew honourable by his great Ornaments of Life. When he was young, he killed a noted Champion with a Club he had in his hand, because he gave him a box on the Ear in jett; and all men took this for an Omen, how great triumph he should win over his Encmies by the force of his mind and body. At that time Rethe, a Pirat of Ruffia, plundered many Provinces, using Rapine and cruelty exceedingly; whose fierceneffe was fuch, that when others spared to take from men what was next to cover their naked bodies, he would take off all coverings from the most secret parts about them. Hence great and inhumane Rapines were called Rethonians. He had another Beaftly cruelty of torturing men, which for modefly take I will not mention. Barcharus, the Father of Haldanus, moved with this indignity, fet himself against Retho; and as it was a War between them, so was it the ruine of them both. Haldansu was fore wounded in that Battail, and left it : one wound he had so palpable in his mouth, and so apparent by the cicatrix of it, that when the rest were cured, that excrement of flesh could not be healed; which thing gained to him the name of a contumelious mouth, yet he better deferved everlafting praile, fighting for honefly, and for his Country. But what did ever the calumnious detraction of wicked men ever afford unto Vertue? However there was so much Military Glory apparent in him, that he was formidable every where for his great valour. From whence, and upon that confidence, he began to defire to marry a noble Maid called Giaritha, of the Kingly Blood, which was in those days the last Heir of Denmark : But the to defend her felf from injury, kept her Chamber guarded with a choise Company of Champions. To whom, when Haldanus came once by chance, when her Champions were abient, of whom when he was young he had killed a Brother; he faid unto her, that the ought to change the rigour of Chastity, by honourable Wedlock, that she might by her Off-spring repair the Government of the Kingdome that was like tobe loft. Wherefore he exhorts her to reflect upon him, who was an eminent Noble man, and to take him for her Husband, and he thought for that cause she would admit of it. When he understood her answer, that the thought him not unequal for his Nobility, but because he was reproached for the deformity of his mouth. He increass her that the would marry no man, until the knew the certainty of his death, or return. But the Champions of Giaritha being angry that he had spoken with her, when he was gone, sought to follow him. When he saw that, he presently cut up an Oke, and made a Club of it, and fought fingle with twelve of them, and killed them all, Then to make himself more famous, he entred into Russia, and was exceeding nobly received by them all, and shortly (a fierce War falling our between the Swedes and Ruffians) he flew many of the Sweeds Champions in fingle Duels: and last of all, he killed his own Brother Hildigerm, who had killed 70. Champions (whilest he did not prefer Piety to Valour) having his Sword covered with Cloths, that it might not be blunted by Charms, Then he flew Sevarus, a Saxon, at a Banquet coming fuddenly into Denmark, because he sought to marry his Wife Giaritha, and so enjoying his Wife with joyful applause, he begat of her Haraldne Hildera, of whom I spake in the 8. Chapter. And at length he was flain by Veferm, a notable Champion in Sialandia, whilft he fought for to repair his tora Countrey.

CHARLE

Of Olo Vegetus.

Lo Vegetus, when he was twelve years old, began his youthful days with ertue: For when he perceived that Gunno, by cruel robbing, kept the Woods were next to his Habitation, and destroyed innocent men, he was moved with indignation at this Wickednesse; and that he might not suffer the time due to Vertue, to pass away by idleness, he defired Arms of his Father, who was Prince of Normay; and taking with him a cruel dog, and a horse, he entred into the thick Wood, and he finds the foot-fleps of men in the Snow. By this fign, passing over many dangers, at last he found out the Thieves Caves covered with heaps of Earth; and first he killed their House-keeper, and cast him cross the house: then he killed both the Father and Son, that came running to revenge this diffrace; one with his Sword, the other with his Dog: yet he got not the Victory without blood, for he received a Wound on his body, which the Dog continually licked, and so it grew whole suddenly. Then be commanded the head of these Rovers, and their Carcases to be fastned upon Poles, for a token of Liberty restored. And with the same valour he slew twelve Champions, that fought to violate the Chaftity of the Daughter of the King of the Trendi in a imall Island as I shall shew in the next Chapter. He had also a sharp Wit joyned with his Valour, that he would eafily either destroy or put to flight his Enemies: for being content with one Guard, adorned in Womens cloths, he kept this order, that his, and his companions (word, should be sheathed in Woodden Scabbards till coming neer to fight, he could unsheath it, and fall upon whom he pleased. And using this Stratagem, he often overcame mighty Advertaries. Then using Piracy far and neer with his Forces Military, he deltroyed seven hundred thips neer the Sea, by his strength at Sea. Hence the most noble Champions fought to be of his Confederacy; and many unruly young men were of his Guard. Being provided with these Forces, he subdued Neighbour Kings by opinion onely, and so he took from them all thought of waging War, or to date to life up their hands against him. Lastly, he came to Ringo, King of Smeden, and was therefore the more dear to him, the liker he was to the other Princes of his Court for his fingular Fortitude. Then was he made Admiral of the Kings Navy, (that confilted of five and twenty hundred thips, as I faid before) he fo governed it, with the affiftance and advice of feven Kings, and of others that fluck fast to him, that he conquered the Danish Fleet in a notable Victory: so that King Ringo became the conquering Commander of all Sweden. At last, as I faid being made King of Denmark, for his meer cruelty, he was flain by Starchaterus, a Champion of Sweden.

there have easily enoughed Oke and notes a Charotte, and fought dogs with orders performed house them all Then to easile him in most per outs, he encoding and y total red be short all, and himsely is first what ching on the four short and himsely is first what ching the went the first and hapfloor; his first short and the own is billed the own is traited.

reark, became he project to exertly his Wife Ghounder, and lo enjoying his Wife with regardiscopicate he began of her Haraldor Hilliam, of whom I that sin the Character And at leagth he was fain by follow, a no able Champion in Judice.

Ministers who had been to covered with a lother that it might not be been friend to continue the CHAP. if a court is might not be blustening to the court of the

Bo Call

al deposit

to Acpathe

ME WEST

or later the

Father, tho

a De count

W. By this

aves covered

im croistic

to these

t got not the

inch the Dos

for a column of

apicos, that

e Transi in a

ath ME 103-

ght his Enc-

ship be kept

in Wooden

Advertiries.

leven hun-

oble Cham-

a mese of his

e Kines by

er to due

of Sweets,

a Princes of

of the Lines

ace) pe lo go-

METERON DIVER

Bucqu fother

起端,以上

Sim by Star-

CHAP, XIII.

Again of the same man, fighting Valiantly for Chastity.

Here were formerly in the mountainous parts of Norway, toward the bounds of the Weltern Goths, two Champions, and they were brothers, called Scharus and Hiallus, prefuming to far and being to infolent, that with an unbridled perulancy, they would deflow the most beautifull Maides, and take them from their parents : whence it fell ont, that they determining to ravish Esa, the Daughter of Olavus King of the Vermari, they commanded her Father that if he would not have her ravished, he should fight with them by himfelf, or his fecond, to defend his Daughter, which thing, though it were very opprobrious to her Fathers Clemency; who was now decrepit with old age. yet he endeavoured to raite up his nervs that were exhausted with the wit and force of his friends, in his Daughters just defence. In the interim, Olo a young man of Norway, born of a Noble house and family, being moved by this horrid wickednesse, and rejoycing that he had this occasion to fight, comes to Olavus his house clothed like a Gountry man, who fitting down at the lower end of the Table, and seeing the Kings family lament, of purpose calling the Kings fon nere to him he enquired why the reit were fo fad, and he faying that his Sifters Chaftity would be prefently profaned by most fierce Champions, it no man came prefently to relieve her, he inquires farther what reward should be given him that should venture his life in her detence. The King being asked of this by his Son, answered that, He should have his Daughter, that defended her. This answer made Olo bold to adventure himself in this danger. Now the Maid was wont (as it is the custome of the Northern people at this day) to come near and look on the faces of the Guells very wishly with a Candle, that at times the might the better know their manners and behaviour, that having noted all the Marks and Habit of their bodies, the might tell her parents of it. She viewing Olo after that manner, the was taken with the unufuall horror of his eyes, and almost fainted away, amasement did to abate her vigour, and the prefently told her father what was the cause of her trembling, whereupon the young man winked that his eyes might not fright her, and laying off his cap his face was covered with, he bad all that flood by, to be jocant, and to cast away all fear. It was no sooner said than done. For it prefently fell our that one gentle promite from a stranger made them all merry. In the mean while came Hiallus and Schatus with their ten servants ready to take away the Kings Daughter; & they tumultuously cryed out to the King, that if he would not deliver his Daughter to them, he should come forth and fight. Olo immediately entertaines their rayling challenge, on this condition that they should not cowardly come behind him, but should fight all before him. Then taking his fword which he had from his Ancestours, he single, flew 12. of them, performing more than could be expected from fo young a man. The fight was in an Island, and from thence there is a village not far off, that at this day hath a record of the names of the Brothers that were flain, Of this Maid which he wan for a reward of his victory he begat his fon Ofmondus. Then growing every day more famous in victories, and dangerous fights, at last he was treacheroully flain in a bath, as it was formerly told him by an old man, when he killed the petty King Thoro, who violated the lawes of strangers.

beating them to made them appear to the contracted be as formany Mountains.

OHAP, 13.

CHAP.

(2)

故

¢

b

M

から

G

th

bit

to a bai

tim

the

whi

the

Pag.

邮

(this

ther

had

Was:

ton

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Alts of the Champions Arngrimus and Arvarodus.

Think it not fit in this place to passe it over, how by the Counsell of Ericus Diferens, King of Smeden, whom Ishall speak of hereafter, one Arngrimus a notable Champion of Sweeden, fighting and triumphing against the Northern Kings of Scriefinnia and Biarmia, became the Father in Law of Frothe King of Denmark, because he had joyned to his Empire the utmost bounds of humane affaires, and had augmented his great fame largely through the world by his Notable actions, He had as Saxo writes, 12. Sons by Ofura. They from their youth also were given to Piracy, and by chance they all brought in one imall ship into the Island Sample, and they found two ships on the Sea-coasts of the two Norway pirats Hialmerus and Arvarodus; those they set upon, and with oars they foon cleared them in the absence of their Pilots, but they were very forry that they had not killed their principall Steermen: therefore they despited this victory as nothing worth, as it was without danger. Refolving that in the following battles they would run more danger, and perhaps with worle fortune. For the forefaid pirats, whose ships a tempest had lately torn breaking their rudder off, being gone into the wood to cut another, they hewed the ruff Timber smooth so long cutting it about with their hatches till it was fit for the helm: web when layd upon their shoulders, being ignorant of their Companions mishap, they carried on: they were set upon by the sons of Arngrimus, who were newly fleshedwith the blood of those they had killed, so that two of themwere forced to fight with their fwords against many. Nor was this an equal fight where twelve hands fought against two; but the victory is not always according to number. For all the foresaid Twelve being flain, and they having flain Hielmerne, the victory fell to Arvarodus: for he alone escaped by chance of so great a number of Companions; for he threw the helm, not yet well framed, with fuch incredible force, against his enemies bodies, that at one throw he hit the whole 12, and killed them all.

CHAP. XV.

Again, of the fame Arngtimus and the Charms of the Fins.

Lio this Swedish Champion Arngrimus fought against the mighty Nor-A thern Kings of the utmost parts of the world, against Egbert King of the Biarmians, & Tengelda King of Scriclinnians, (of whom we spake in the entrance of the 4th, Book,) that having obtain'd the victory over them, for his deferts and the triumphs he might marry Ofura the Daughter of the King of Denmark, as indeed it fell out, yet in the mean time being to fight with wild a people, he was flain in his Army, with which he marched against them: and first he perceived, that he should not fight onely against cruell men, but against the more cruell Elements; as I shall shew after this in my 12. Book, concerning wars against Barbarous people, yet these men are cunning to fight with sharp weapons, for their use; and they use broad and huge Shafts in battail, also they know as well by charms and incantations in coming on or flying off, as crooked beams in the middle of the fnow, to receive or give blowes. Arngrimas, as Saxo speakes, to get himself honour, set upon these & conquer'd them: these when they fled, having but ill success in their fight; they threw 3. stones behind them, & made them appear to the enemies to be as so many Mountains. Therefore Arngrimus being deceived by this mist cast before his eyes, called his Army off from following the enemy, supposing he had been stopt by great Rocks an the way.

of Erick

TITION I

Marthern

king of

old by his

rom their

mallihip

THE TWO

with ours forty that pried this

in the fal-

e income,

of Tomber

helm:wa

milhap,

et benig

te tonced to

mber. For

of Com-

nd billed

ights Not-

ot the Biar

contract at

defent and

DENBATE

people, he

and furth he

or against the to higher with

of pattern and

(到南湖, 数

DOSC VITE

tion 3, flows

m Monney

्राटड, ट्यीले डि

t by great fixis

The same the next day encountring, and being conquered, cathing snow on the ground, made it she white to a great River. Therefore the Swedes being desuded by a huge Error in their sight, supposed that mighty Waters had ran with a noise before them: So whilest the Conqueror seared the vain Imagination of Waters, the Fins escaped by slight. The third day likewise they rallied again, and then they could find no way to escape: For when they saw their Armies begin to decline, they yielded to the power of the Conquerour. Then he conquered Egtherms, Captain of the Biarmians, whom he challenged to sight a Duel. After this, being grown great in Conquests and Spoils, by the mediation of the King of Swenns, he married Ofwa, the Daughrer of the forestad King of Denmark: by whom, as the same Saxo testifies, he begat twelve Sons, whole names were these: Brander, Barbi, Brodder, Hiarrandi, Tander, Tivingar, two Hadringi, two Hiorthuar, Hiarravar, Rani, Hugantir; all which, as I said before, using Piracy, were killed at last.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the flaying of a Bear and the drinking of his blood.

Mongst the Northern Champions there was one called Biarcho, who always used a Sword longer than ordinary, which he rook pleasure to earry with him, that he might draw it against any Roaring Boys of an infolent lite, in a Duel; left he should suffer men of most bale manners, to dilgrace the glory of Champions by their ill examples: Whereupon he forced most of them, either totally to forego their infolence, or elfe to put their lives in danger. Whileft therefore he triumphed thus by his meritorious actions, a firange wild Beaft aftorded him a new Victory. For he flew with his Sword a huge Bear that met him in the Thickets, and he commanded his companion Hialtho, that he might grow fironger to drink up the Bears blood. But Biarcho, whilest he received a vehement blow on his head, by a certain Champion that railed at him very balely, and threw hard bones at him when they fat together, he accounting it base to draw his sword to revenge this wrong, threw a bone again at him, that first threw at him, and he strook his fore-head to the hinder-part of his head, and turned the hinder-part into the place of the fore-head, repaying the mans overthwart mind by the crookedness of his countenance, perhaps that he might ever after take heed how he threw bones again. Moreover one Regnerus of Norway, whileft he exercited his younger years in Military Affairs, he cipyed a Maid in the Tents of his Companions, that with mighty Valour drove back the Enemy; he was to taken with the love of her, that he could not be fatisfied, until he had flain a huge Bear, and a most cruel Dog that kept the Maids Chamber; which (though the had promited to admit him, when he before fued for her love) he therefore opposed that the might see him kill the most herce Beatts, to whom the had a long time committed the preservation of her Chafficy. This Maids name was Largertha, of whole Valour, a little after I shall speak amongst the fighting

there were one, for their ule, and low to formed and pulse about in becasil, also

they know as well by charmognes, in suspinant, a regular, on or dying off , as

grimalisat dank ipeneriye dieth died Sean Michael de de de de de andered francel.

A crow of from fallowing the enemy, toppoling he will been flowed great North

The start in agreement of any december by this many to be been every call

crooked beams in the middle or he now; this cave or

e dough . S. maria pell's challers est aposte financia con al bell CHAP. T.

The

CHAP. XVII. Of Regnerus, called Hair-coat.

Here was a King of the Sweens, called Herothes, whose troubled mind was I not a little urged how to preferve his Daughters Chaffity; whether he should guard her with Wild Beatts, (as the manner of most Princes was then) or elie thould commit the cultody of her to mans fidelity. But he preferring cruelty of Bearts to mans fidelity, he soonest choic what would do most hurt. For hunting in the Woods, he brought some Snakes that his company had found for his Daughter to feed up. She quickly obeying her Fathers commands, bred up a Generation of Vipers by her Virgin hands. And that they might want no meat her curious Father cauled the whole body of an Ox to be brought, being ignorant that by this private food he maintain'd a publick destruction. Thele being grown up, by their venomous breath poyloned the neighbouring parts ; but the King repenting his folly, proclaimed. That he who could remove this plague should have his Daughter. When Regnerus of Norway, descended of the Kings Rice, who was the chief Suiter this Virgin had, heard this Report, he brained from the Norse a Woollen Castock; and hairy Breeches, whereby he might hinder the biting of the Adders. And when he came to Sweden in a thip, he purposely suffered his Clothes to grow stiff with cold, casting water upon them: and thus clothed, having onely his Sword and Darr to defend him, he went to the King. As he went torward, two huge Adders mer him on the way, that would kill the young man, with the twitting about of their tails, and by their venome they calt forth. But Regnerm counding in the hardness of his frozen Garments, both endured and repulsed their Venome by his clothes, and their biting by his Harnels, being intatigable in pressing hard upon these Wild Bealts. Last of all he strongly casts out of his hand his Javelin that was fatined with a Loop, and ftruck it into their bodies. Then, with his two-edged Sword rending both their hearts, he obtained a happy end of an ingenious and dangerous fight. The King looking curiously on his clothes, when he saw them to hairy on the backfide, and unpolifhed like ragged Frize he spake merrily, and called him Lodbrock; that is, Hair-coat; and to recreate him after his pains, he fene for him to a Banquer with his friends. He answered, That he must first go fee these Companions he had lese and he brought them to the Kings Table very brave in clothes, as he was then: and lastly, when that was done, he received the pledge of his Victory, by whom he begat many hopeful children; and he had her true love to him the more, and the rather enjoyed his company, by how much she knew the great dangers he underwent to win her by, and the ingenious practices he wed. When this most noble Wife, called Phora, was dead, he fell into various Wiles of Fortune, being famous in the whole World for his Chivalry, he grieved (as I faid before) to be conquered by the unarmed Fine and Biarmians. He was afterwards call by Hella, Prince of the Irifh, to Adders, and was killed by them.

CHAP. XVIII. Of Alfo the Defender of Chastity.

Strardus, King of the Goths, had Sons. Vermundus and Otherus, and one Daughter Alvilda; which was so chaste from her Cradle to all appearance, that she had her Face alwayes vailed with a Vail, that she might not make her beauty a bait to stir up others Lusts.

Her Father shutting her up in close custody, gave her a Viper and a Snake to breed up, thereby at length to guard her Chattity, by thele creeping Creatures when they were grown great: that he might intimate that he left no passage open to this Virgin for any but for Valiant men, and noted for their vertue; who should Conquer those Beasts in a dangerous conslict, adding this, that if any one should try in vain to come at her, his head should presently be cut off; and falined on a stake; that every one that was put on by his aspiring wit should not dare to attempt such a dilgrace to the Kingly blood. This being known, the fon of Alffigarus King of Denmark, nor trusting fo much to his valour as to his wir, and supposing the conflict would be the more Noble the greater danger he must undergo, he comes as a fuiter to the Virgin, to conquer these bea's that guarded the Maid's Chamber, chiefly became by the proclamation the Virgin was promised in marriage, as due to him that could conquer them. Now that he might the better endure this rage against him, he covered his body with a raw and bloody hide, girt about with it : fo foon as he entred the doors of the Cattle, he took a red hot Iron with a pair of piniers and thrust it into the vipers yawning Mouth, and so killed him. Then he flew the fnake that came to twitt about him, between the middle of his chops with his dart; or, as the more ancient Hillories of the Goths fet it down, with a burning spear, pointed as it were like a knife. And when according to the Edict, he defired the Pledge that belonged to the victor, King Sivardus answered that such a Son in Law should please him, which his Daughter freely confented to have. And when only the Maids Mother would hardly admitt of his fuit, he tryes the Maids good will by a private discourse, and when her Mother perceived that the unwarily commended this fuiter for his vertue, her Mother chid her for it, that breaking the nerves of Chastity, she would be taken with the allurement of beauty, and omitting the centure of vertue, the should regard with a Lascivious mind, the fawning shewes of comelinesse, therefore she filently approving the just sentence of her Mother, found out a way, whereby the might thew that her Chastiry was yet untouched though the Beafts that guarded her were flain, and the would make this more apprear by some bold adventure, and confirme it by some Noble Designe. Then prefently fcorning this Danish young man, she changed her Feminine mind and garment into a masculine, and of a very chaste Maid, she became a sierce Pirat. For the fo preferred vertue before idlenesse, that when the might enjoy Kingly dainties the prefently applied her felf to the wars, drawn on by her feminine fury: and the began to be so averse to all men by a resolute purpose of Chastity, that the firmly rejolved with her felf never to marry any man; but ever after as a Pirate to equall, if nor exceed mens valour,

CHAP. XIX. Of the Stratagems of Fridlevus.

The notable deeds of one Fridlevus are remarkable; who besides his imbred valour was consident by reason of his coat of Male, and armour of proof he wore. He used this is publik and private fights as his armour of desence, and he slew many mighty enemies tyred out in the sharp battails, and amongst the rest one Gunholmus, who was wont to blunt the enemies sword with Charmes, him he slew with many strokes of the handle. But whilst he too hastily chopt his hand on the point of it, he cut the Nerves of his singers, and so his singers fell all waies crooked, close to his hand. The same man, whilst he besieged Dublina Town of Ireland, and found there was no entrance, the walls were so strong, imitating the witty art of Haingius, he commanded fire shut up in spunges should be saftned to Swallowes wings, which when they came to their own ness set the houses on fire, and whilst the Towns men runne to put it out, and

or case, and by Actives or his cionies and inthele Wild at was tained edged Sword se und dangeaw mem lo गांभवार्य गोns game, be he was fort go ings Tablevery the secessor ren; and he had mount, by how ing the injetti-4, was dead, he

e Worldion his

he unumed Fau Inflyto Addrs

ed ministra

whether he

TE WESTERN

be preming

do mediane.

company had

TI COMMUNICA

protein, pe

nation.Their

source bun!

ld remote this

elcended of the

nepon, beco-

weder in a little

S Water Linch

con non be

menter the way,

and one Daugh more, thath make her beams took more care to suppresse the fire, than to repell the enemy, he wan Dublin. After this in Britanny, having lost his Soldiers in battail, when he saw he was like to have hard returning to the shore, he set the bodies of the slain upright, and in battail aray, who to represented his former multitude, that by so great a constict he seemed to have lost none. Whereby he not onely took off from the enemy all considence of joyning battail, but he made them desirous to sly from him.

CHAP. XX. Of the same man's Stratagems by Birds.

As for Hadingus his policy, spoken of before, the meaning is that Hadingus King of Denmark spending his youthful years most successfully, omitting defire of pleasure, alwayes defired to live in wars, confidering with his Valiant mind that he must spend all his dayes in Noble warlick designes. He sets upon Handuanus King of Hellespont at the City Duna that was senced with invincible walls, and he strives to enter it when the forts were now repaired: but the height of them not admitting any violence that sought against them, he commanded men skilled in catching birds, to take divers sorts of birds that were used to that place, to put under their wings spunges set on fire, these slying to their own Nests set the City on fire: the Towns men running to quench this, less the gates unguarded against the enemy, wherefore coming on, he took Handuanus; and he gave him leave to redeem himself with Gold. And when he might have slain the enemy, he had rather humble him; he did thus temper cruelty with clemency. But afterwards when ever any siege was like to be, by the Kings command all the birds about houses were killed.

Of the fight of King Harald, against a tame Dragon.

T Araldus the most illustrious King of Norway, residing in his youth with The King of Constantinople, and being condemned for man-slaughter, he was commanded to be cast to a tame Dragon that should rend him in peices. As he went into the prilon, one very taithfull tervant he had, offered himself freely to dye with his Master. The keeper of the Cassle, curiously obferving them both, let them down at the mouth of the Den, being unarmed, and well fearched, wherefore when the fervant was naked he admitted Harald to be covered with his shirt for modely sake, who gave him a braslet privily, and he scattered little fish on the pavement, that the Dragon might first stay his hunger on them, and that the guilty persons that are thut up in the dark prison, might have a little light by the thining of the fins and Scales. Then Haraldus picking up the bones of the Carkaseis, stopt them into the Linen he had and bound them fast together like a club. And when the Dragon was let forth, and rushed greedily on his prey cast to him, he lept quickly on his back; and he thrust a Barbers razor in at his navill, that only would be peirced by ison, which, as luck was, he brought with him, and kept it concealed by him : this cold Serpent that had most hard scales all over, disdained to be entred in any other part of his body. But Haraldus fitting to high above him, could neither be bitten by his mouth, or hurt by his tharp teeth; or broken with the turnings of his tayle. And his fervant using the weapons or bones put together, beat the Dragons head till he bled, and died thereof by his many weighty strokes: when the King knew this he freely changed his revenge, into his fervice, and pardoned these valiant persons, and furnishing them with a Ship and monies he gave them leave to depart. sawolf and which but the flower

to Della

Tagorden a

oy to gent a from the

rous to By

ut Hadie-

elin onic-

van ma Va-

to Helen

cocos with

w repaired:

minkthem,

ers of birds

or fore, there

unding to

do harmon

with Gold.

him; be ad

by liege was

tillet.

oth with

eines, be

at and the

had, offered miscally ob-

og unatmed.

uned Hould

to first stay

in the dark

cales. Then

othe Linea be

Magon Was Itt

Topins but,

to princip

acaled (sim)

Decision in the

a mid tenber

STATE STATE

or coperhet her

reveal ways and the except of CHAP, XXII. consend and the except of the

Of the fight of Frotho and Fridlevus against a Serpent.

Fin a fingle combate killed a huge fierce great Serpent; thrutting his sword into his belly, for his hard skin would not be wounded, and all darts threw at him, flew back again, and it was but labour lost. Fridlevus was no lesse valiant, who both to try his valour, and to find out some hidden treasure, set upon a most formidable Serpent for his huge body and venemous teeth, and for a long time he cast his darts against his scaly sides and could not hurt him, for his hard body made nothing of the weapons cast with violence against him. But this Serpent twifting his tail in many twines, by turning his tail round, he would pull up trees by the roots, and by his crawling on the ground he had made a great hollow place, that in some places hills seemed to be parted as if a vally were between them, wherefore Fridlevus confidering that the upper parts of this beaft could not be penetrated, he runs him in with his fword underneath; and piercing into his groine, he drew forth his virulent matter as he lay pancing : when he had killed the Serpent, he dug up the money and carried it away. Also he Conquered a Giant called Hithis that was of a Monstrous habit, who had taken away the fon of King Tollemarcha, as he was Childithly, playing, and he made him his Roer, cutting off his hand and foot, feeting the young youth at liberty. about algoest allowed halploon have adhered and and you was made a unnagareby ham, and when sh

Of the same Pridlevus.

He also slew 12. Champions of Norway that were famous for their Victories over Giants, and noted for their Trophyes amongst the Nations, and rich in their spoils, when they by often breaking in, had long vexed their neighbours, and this he did not so much for coverous este as for love of vertue. He also slew Hiarnon, in a duel with many great wounds, in a bath, one that was competitour of the Kingdom, because under a pretence of great familiarity, and huge obsequies he was a most sierce layer of Snares for his life.

CHAP. XXIV. Of the Piracy of famous Virgins.

Lvilda a most famous Virgin began to play the Pirat fiercely, and taking Amany Maides that were bent upon the same defign to be her comrades, the came by chance to that place where a Company of Pirats Jamented for their Captaine that was flain in warr, and by them by reason of her beauty and piracy, she was made chiefest of the pirats, and she did greater things than could be expected from the feminine fex: whom Alff feeking to purfue with many navigations fell in winter time into the Navy of the Blackmanni, at which time the waters were hugely frozen, and the pieces of Ice fo fastened the ships, that it was unpossible by any ores or art to rowe away. And after the Ice lasting long feemed to promife more fafe entrance to those that were shut in, Aiff commands his men to lay afide their flippery shoos, and to walk over the plain Ice with their flockings only on their feet, and so might easily subdue the enemy that slid upon Oyly slippery Shoes. There being thus subdued, and the Ice melted, he takes his voyage by fea, against the Fins and Finlanders: where entring in the narrow crook of Hanga, he found by his spies that the haven was already taken up by the Ships of other men; for Alvilda at the same Straits, had first entred with her fleet : and when she spied throng Ships afar off coming M 2

reging flever: is terrice, of this and main

CHAP.

thither, the quickly rowed on to meet them, thinking better to break through the enemy, than to be overwhelmed by him. As therefore they began to fight at Sea, and on both fides they continued having an eye to the great glory in respect of their valour, a young man, having more and fresh Souldiers to helphim, when Alvilda with a defired omen lept into the forecastle, he retires as far as the Stern, there being a great flaughter made of those that relifted. But his Campanion Barcharus, thriking off Alvilda her helmet, and discovering her small face, he perceived the was to be dealt withall by kisses nor by weapons, and that laying afide his hard ammunition, the Enemy was to be encountred with more pleasing duties. Wherefore Alff rejoycing that besides his expectation hellit upon her, whom he had indefatigably fought through fo many dangers both by Land and Sea, he prejently when he had taken her; adorned her in a most gallant Womens habit, and married her. Observing the most commendable ceremonies of the Ancients, and by her he afterwards begat his daughter Gyritha, which had Haldanus to her Husband, and bare Haraldus Hildera who repaired the Kingdome of Denmark strangely rent by domestick injuries, to its former luftre, and had peace 50, years, and he flew two warlick Maides conquered by his notable craft, Sticla and Russia, fighting against the King of the Trends for the dominion of the Kingdome; in a fight at Sea; But the like glory fell not out to his nephew Odmundus, son to Olo. whilst he fer upon by force of arms another Maid called Rusia, who throve with her brother coneerning the Kingdome of Norway in a way of Piracy. For he was put to flight by her, but when the was molested by the people by Claudestine Rebellion, the was made a runnagate by him, and when the fled, he drove her upon her brother who wickedly caused her to beslain. Nor will I omit that the most mighty Prince of Halland, Huirvillus, by notable force of Arms flew Rufila a Virgin of Norway, who applyed her felf to warlike actions. I I also dow 12. Chambions of Moreany that were larnous initially Vide.

Here ends the Fifth Book.

clase shakebeen Orly the way those being ringsplied, and the Lot send of the lot of the last where during in the last of the send of the last of the l

had and the roll with he Peet : and when the spied Frong Ships attr off corning

while a dispulsation on a Pale O

and rien to their police, wit makes by elice breaking its had one weed their met phanes, and this lee del sor to men's ball consentration located by sor of verious. I sale they derived, in a set with standy great o constant on a burn, one that the sure of the paint a beauty alone because under a personal of the state of the Training to supply you some your other training to the second of the sec

SualO who is the control of the New or the Performance which the control of the c

Booky

by westons, by westons, e encounted

Hildra who

k Mandes coninfl the King

he a; But the B he fer upon brother conspur to fight. Rebellies, the oppon her bro-

e muli migh-Rafila a Vite



Olaus Magnus the Goth, Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

CONCERNING

Minerals and Metals.

The Epitome of the Sixth Book.

The Preface.

Ecause the hard and invincible kind of warriers of the North Swedeland and Gothland, dwelling in the Mineral Mountains, by reason of the huge sterceness and courage of their Bodies and Minds, and also by reason of the most hard Exercises they are used to, may well be compared to Giants and Champions: and therefore in the orderly describing Northern Occasions, it deserves to be joyned to the same Giants and Champions, and to be preferred before thefe that follow, by reason of the different kind of weapons they both use. And for this reason, not keeping the form and order of other writers, I Shall insert something concerning Minerals; from whence may be taken comparisons, to set forth the following Battails more distinctly. The Mountains therefore are high, but most commonly barren and dry in which commonly nothing elfe grows, for the commodity and prefervation of the Inhabitants, than an unexhausted fruitfulness of pretious Metals; which are rich and fertile enough for all mens necessities for life, and it may be for superfluous things to be fetcht from other places if we will, and to defend them with unanimous force, where violence is offered against this gift of Nature. For they are a fierce kind of men, that will yield to no [harpness of wars, upon what soever sharpness of weather, or Hostile threats, as I Shall (bew underneath, concerning wars in Fields. Alfo, how fiercely a People called Dalacarly, that are fierce and impetuous, marching on foot in Companies

Companies, falling upon their Enemies. A Forraign Witness, Albertus Crantzius, doth fet down plain enough, with many great strange things in the Wars made against the Kings of Denmark, chrefty Christierous the first, and King John. Alfo bow Christiernus the second, bimself, with force and fury, are driven out by Gultavus, Anno 1521, being the Leader: he doth acknowledge by unhappy experience, that he was circumvented by Counsel. But I shall shew most truly, as I was an Eye-witness, what horrible and barbarous Cruelty was committed against his Government in the North Parts. For I feem to have been preferved, that I might behold fuch horrible Speciacles of my Nation.

CHAP. I.

Of Minerals, and the finding of them.

He Mines in the North Countries are very many, great, divers, and very rich. Many because being fitnated in Valleys and Mountains, sticking together they are frequently taken forth. They are great, because they are large, and cannot be exhausted, both in the upper Swede, and in Gothland, and the Countrey of the Varmi, toward the Bounds of Norway, where they are found. They are divers; some Silver, others Copper, or Brass, Steel, and principal Iron. Also rich, as I shall shew beneath, because great store of the Kings Treature, or Tribute, is drawn from those Mines. And though there be an infinite multitude of fuch Mountains and Minerals, in the forefaid Kingdomes, yet by many figns, Nature directing, new ones are always found by them that feek them, especially where the Mountains are round on the top; and in the Navel or Roundnesse, not cleft nor broken; but the Snow in Winter melts, by reason of the Brimstone suming. But those Mountains that are Thunder-stricken on the top or side or touched about the foot, do shew forth in their Fissures, Veins, or Silver that shine, and they do more allure the Inhabitants, to burn with an unfatiable coverouiness, that regarding no danger, they will Mine into Stones, and come to the inward parts, where you shall see the Veins in the Mountains, like the parts of mans body, divided, standing upwards, downwards, on the right or left hand; and the Minerals annexed are the clearer, the more purer Rock or Marblesthey are bred with. For those that naturally run Westward, and bend with a greater bunch to South and North are the best, and most inestimable; for those Veins appear no otherwise, than men shining in Armour, standing in their Ranks. And this pleafure joyned with profit, brought great content to the Labourers and Possessours.

underneuth, concerning war in Erelie. Alfo, bem fiercely &

Compresses

People collect Dalke us systhat are perce and imperious, married and has in

Alexandra Alexandra

to to side pri

melt, me

ing the Lea

arriented by

but hamile

the North

wa kumilia

105, and 1827

dicking to-

e they are

Guthland,

ste they are and princi-

the Kines

esa isfi-

ממנה, קוב

m that telk

n the Narel

by staicn

-BENKER DE

urs, Vers,

erro with an

100 Secots 1

Mountains,

on the right

ment Rock or

und und bend

mable; "

DOING DOOR

CERTIFIED.

CHAP. II.

Of the Situation of Mineral Veins,

Moreover, the Veins that run from the fides of the East and South toward the West and North, are said to be the best; and those that run to other parts are not so good: For the Mines are better ripe that run East and South: There are also Veins called Pendent and Lying: The Pendent Veins lye covered upwards. Those that lye on plain ground, take growth and goodnesse from their very coming forth. There are Veins also obliquely lying up and down, that depend on all the foresaid.

CHAP. III. Of the way to dig the Mines.

The Miners, for their own security, make several Archesto hold up the Mountains, and lay many pieces of Wood between the sides of the Mountains, and underneath; and being doubtful to trust thereto, they have yet another invention; they let themselves down with cords, when they are to cut out the Metals in Rocks they cannot come at, or to make choice of Veins of Silver; and afterward they purishe them by Art, using Water and Fire for it. But since the Gain seems small and lost labour, there being no fruit, or very seldome, to be expected in the Bark and outside of the most rich Mine, they use a more solid way, and set up Pillars within the sides of the Mountains that are far stronger than their former way of Arching, being fully perswaded, that Treasure is not to be found but in the deeper Caves of the Mountains; and that by more certain Signs, even as low as Hell, almost; where by Natures digestion, more frequently and plentifully are found Mines, especially of Silver, and of Brass.

CHAP. IV. Of the distinction of Mineral Veins.

He distinction and division of Mineral Veins, or Pits of possession, is wont to be made in special by the Inventors, by certain signes from the Mountains that lye upon them, or from the Events, or from their natural fituation and propriety: which also are found out in an admirable way, and they are daily found out: yet it is not known, whether God be angry, or well pleafed with it : First, by the violence of Thunders and Tempests burning down of Trees, whereby the shining Clots of Silver are discovered: Then the tops of high Mountains, being onely pared with Spades, there appeare bright Veins of Silver; which prefently the wife Husband-man covers with Dung, being rather content to enjoy a peaceable Field, than a Silver Mine that offers it felf, whereby he knows he can maintain himfelf and his Family. For the wary Countreyman fears that some Noble-man of the Treasury, to whom the Field belongs, finding a Mine of Silver, in hopes of more profit, will put him out of poffession, that there shall be no more Tilling there, where there is a fruitful Mine of Silver. Therefore, as I faid, he makes choice of the Fields fruitfulnesse, of old; for this cause, both Fields and Mines of Silver that so appeared, were made desolate; and at this day, they are hid as much as may be; and the unfatiable coverousnesse of Governours hath done so much harm, that where there were six hundred Pits or Mines of Iron, Brais, Silver, there are scarce three hundred lest for the publick profit. The names thereof, it is superflous to reckon up, whilest the Inhabitants, are much troubled at the remembrance of them, that they are come to that pais that they dare do nothing against the violence of Power.

CHU, 2,

CHAP. V.

Of the Wheels, Instruments, and dangers of the Labourers.

I Must now shew how a very high Wheel, or drawing Engine is turned about by men or beasts going in it: Moreover, men it upon Roles, and are let down to the bottome; and again Buckets or Pirchers, full of Water, or Mineral Earth, are drawn up, as every one knows, that the Labourers in Mines, are forced to keep this congruous order: Alfo, that Cattle, namely, Horfes and great Bears, are appointed by course and collarerally, to turn Wheels about, to raise, or let fink great Weights, because the Mines dug sorth can be brought up no easier way by any conveyance of Ballances from the lower parts. But the Miners that undergo continually such hard Labours going up and down, are a most hardy fort of men most commonly condemned thither for their Villany, living there onely for the Prince his fecurity, being exiled in their own Countrey, that they may never privily come back again to their own houles : yet those Labourers follow the Laws and Rights of the Mountains; whereby, though they be continually inclined to raise Tumults, Seditions, Homicides, and a thousand mischiefs: yet they are tied most leverely, that they shall do wrong to no man. In other things they fear not to venture upon any danger or ruine, that may happen amonght he pieces of Rocks ready to fall, or in letting Beams within the fides of the Mountains, or from the deadly exhalations and stinks arising from the Mines, or from the unwholesome Ayr included: Wherefore they are often subject to horrible Destinies. For whilest they labour violently, more quick than circumspect, the Supporters breaking, or Stones falling, they are fearfully crushed fuddenly, or for some days (as I said before) they are sufficated, crying our fearfully, being to die for hunger; and there being no remedy to draw them out alive, they are all fhew'd to be flut up in one burial, having fer over them, how, and how many, namely 30,60, a 100, or more perished all at once: yet the other Miners continue undanted, that they are no ways frighted by these, or the like horrid Spectacles. Also with a little troke of a Hammer upon them, huge Mountains fall down by their vast weight.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Art and Ingenuity of Smiths.

Hough in many Northern Kingdoms and Provinces, there nieth to be great effect made of Smiths, that have skill to draw, melt, or turn any ductile matter, especially amongst the Mountains Dolacurly, an unconquered people for War: yet in the Country of Helsing, (which formerly was honoured with the Kings Title for some samous Actions) toward the North, there are found such skilful and diligent Artificers that are Smiths, that there are scarce the like in all the North. For they know how to draw forth a great way, by reason of the richness of those Mines and Metals, to a lump, by the ingenious direction of Waters and Wheels; so that by the nimbleness and sorce of such Engines, in a very short time the greatest Work may be sinished, even the usual Vessels of Brass and Iron extended: whence no small profit accrews to these Nations: so likewise in Iron Ports, and Casements for Windows, and Grates for Nets, that are to be indissolubly tied together; the like work whereoffor joynting, is scarce found in all Europe.

and the fairle and

Of the Distinction of fu ble Metals.

Here is also amongst other Northern Artificers another way, in the most rich Mountains of Silver, Copper, or Brats, and Iron, how to melt them, or hammer them; which is to fitly and orderly diffinguithed, that every matter may early be brought in o a Mais, according to its own nature. Silvery in melting requires honow Furnaces and clear the to melt it, as being the molt precious Meral that being well melted that it funs it may be call by the Workmen into leveral Forms, putting under it long or round (mitters. The Forms of Silver are commonly made when it runs, like to utual Tables, or tourse Seats, or Souldiers Bucklers: & the r is chiefly done for this rea on that the magnificence and wealth of the King and Kingdoms may be thew'd both to the people; as also to the Amballadors of great Princes, to whom there mallie pieces of Silver are given. But Copper or Brais Metals are melted in long high Furnaces, made of Clay, Straw and Iron, Wyer and Cords, with many Bellows hung up here and there to blow withall to cause a greater hear, in divers torms also, without Gutters into huge Lumps onely in the Earth dug up: bur it is far the shorter way, by Winds blowing forth underneath, where, by the centinued mighty hear, the Metal, in the midit of the flames, is brought into divers Forms, that weigh 100; 200,600,or 1000 pound and more; also Naval Weights and Ballances in greater

CHAP. VIII. More of the same Metals.

But Iron Mines cannot be divided into pieces or Clots, with Spades; my thour the he'p of Water-Wheels that move the bellows, that they may be brought into a Lump that cannot be cut afunder; alwayes keeping this proportion, that yearly they may make pieces of Iron like to a mans Fift, or four times greater, to many hundred thousands: which pieces of Iron, to five hundred pound weight and more, are put into long Vessels, like Roman Barrels, and are carried to Forraign Countries, or Provinces at home, to very great profit. Alfo there is such plenty of the most choise Steel, that it serves, and to spare, all Inhabitants and Strangers, for all Building-Tools, for all forts of Arms, Breast-plates, Helmets, Swords. But the grain of it is made the puter, and stronger for work and the more tractable to mingle with Iron; the hotter Furnace the Steel is taken out of it is by leiture, not suddenly quenched in the water, for if it be all plunged in at once, it becomes so short and brittle, that it cannot endure any sorce in bending it: Amongs the Mountaineus Northern Feople it is made like two singers, in a rough shape, and is quickly sold by tale, as it were in a Market, by hundreds, or by thousands, &cc.

CHAP. IX. Of the Divels in the Mines.

Armies of Devils that have their fervices, which they perform with the Inhabitants of their Countries: but they are most frequent in Rocks, and Mines where they break, cleave, and make them hollow: which also thrust into Pitchers and Buckets, and they carefully sie Wheels and Screws, whereby the attracting Engines are drawn upwards, and they shew themselves to the Labourers when they list, like to Phantasms & Ghosts, in what form they will, and they counterfeit laughter, and vain loud derisions, and strange sports & delusions, and

HAP. 7.

ned about let doma

al Earth.

orced to

ut Bears,

e, or let

ושולבם סם

sers that

ft hardy

ig there

hat they

a bourers

e conti-

tichiefs:

in other

appen a-

hides of

om the

ten fubick than croshed

it fear-

how,

other ne like

oun-

e great

ductile

ed peo-

dawith.

e found

the like

eason of

nes, in 2

Teffels of

ions : 10 ets, that

is fearce

3

att

an infinite company of Hobgoblin tricks, whereby they deceive the unhappy people by a vocal noise. But they change their leeming services at last into nothing but destruction and ruine, by breaking down the pillars: or by the fall of Rocks, br. aking of Ladders, provocation of Hinking fmels, Suppression of Winds, breaking of Ropes, they oppreis and diffurb men; That they either fall and break their necks, or blaipheme God in the greatness of the danger, and are ready to go into a deeper prilon to be enchained with the Devils. And this they do chiefly in the richer Mines of Silver, where there is greatest hopes of finding infinite Treature. And for this cause many of the richest Mines seems wholly defo-Tare, and ucterly of no value; chiefly, because in those places of Metal, there are found fix forts of Divels, more malignant than the reft; for fear of whom, and dangerous Affaults, many Labourers in Mines are in great danger,

volticité sand ve CHAP. X. or moral solition and volticité mont solition of Minerals.

Hey that dwell in the Mineral Mountains have experience oft-times, from Thunder and Lightning, Flathes and Fire, breaking forth of Clouds, of wonderful Effects in the Exhalations of Minerals; namely, that there is a groffe Vapour coming forth of the Caves, that over-shadows all, and a great noise in the Superficies of the Monorains, about the entring in, and coming forth, that drives off such as come to it; and above all, that there is an intollerable tink, mingled with a fulphureous fmell of Thunder; and if any man, not used to the coming thicher shall suck it in he will fall fick bardly to be cured, having the passages of his throat slope; which is suddenly dissolved, by drinking hot Beer, mingled with Butter, that it may atterwards be cleanled by application of greater Remedies : yet men are in this case cured rather by the co-operation of Nacute that is firong, than by vertue of Medicaments. It happens also there, that by the blows of Thunder, new veins of Silver are laid open, thining clearly on the fides of the Mountains; and hereby they get a perpetual name for their ule, and enrich the Fortunes of him that pollefleth them. Moreover, Thunder and Lightning does to rage there, though it be in feveral years between, that many Herds of Cattel are killed by Tempelts all the fields over, very wide about.

CHAP. XI. The work of belles well Of Goldsmiths, or Refiners. The same state and state and

Aving now shewed that there is a vast and unexhausted quantity of Silver in the Mountains of Sweden, and how it is found and taken out there; it follows, that I them the use or abuse of the same, left this noble Metal should be concealed from such as have it not, and would use it well, if they had it. Repeating therefore the Cultomes of former Ages, it may be sufficiently shewed what huge Riches of Gold and Silver, and of other precious Brais there was; when, (as I premised in my first Book) the Temples of Idols, Kings and Princes dining Rooms, even to Childrens Cradles, and Horses Bridles and Trappings, were made the richest Ornaments they could be made. But as the Mine of Gold was then great; so afterwards, by reason of a cruel Mortality, that was raised by the Plague, Sword, and Famine, the care of that was laid afide, and it was loft. There is nothing delivered to their unlatiable Posterity but the memory of some places from whence it was taken, as I faid before in the utmost Bounds of the North : yet I think it cannot be denied, but that there is great quantity of Gold in Smediff Copper; which being bought and exported, and oft-times recovered after Minwrick, and refined by art and fire, brings great gain to the possessours of it : And I believe that the Hungarian Artificers do diligently attend upon this Art, and such as fell to Forraign Factors Copper very red, and perfectly tried and

ook All 377

tales Py

DECEMBER 10

thetallo

Wands

tall and

210 162-

they do

ing infi-

lly delo-

here are

m) and

es, from

ALS, OL

RICH &

a great

coming olleraoc wed

ang the Beer,

grea-

Nav

exhia.

ly on

tue.

but

Sura

ver in.

at tol-

ald be

Repea-

FERTW

when,

dining

a Work

eld nas

Shythe

There

e places North: ID SHI ed sitts THE OF ILE

this Art, ried and made

made into thin places : and faitly, those that carry is through the Dominions of the King of Poland in long thips, in the large River Weyfil, as far asthe Mart town of Danieick, of the Dukedome of Pruffia, to divide it there. The rest is lest as gain to the Workmen at home, if they can by any fecter Art draw any Gold from the Brais or Copper. As for the use of Silver, there is none more common or good in all the World, than what is fold in Sweden and Gothland; where there is caree a House or Family, that doth not yearly adde tomething by their Indufry to the Estate they have got. Also, there is a most huge gain in the great Images of the Saints, that are the tigular Patrons of the Kingdome, to whom are reverently deputed, Ciboria, or places made up with Gold and Silver . Likewite, in the Ornaments of Maids, in the huge Crowns made for their Heads, Neck-Jaces, Pery-coats, Bracelets for the Arms, Chains, Imall Gifts, and Rings given them by their Parents, Lovers, and Friend . Nor is this idle : For they providently give unto them filver, that may last them and their children after them, rather than filken cloaths that will foon wear out, and be esten with Worms. Also, of old, the most illustrious men wore Girdles of Silver, commonly called Silffchena, and they had round filver buttons to make fall their cloths every where. Also they had little filver bells ried at their hories tails, that those that were neer them, hearing them gingle might take heed they kicked not backward. Moreoverstheir Straps, Bridles, and Poitrils, and other parts of Silver, were made to adorn them for Luxury, rather thanfor any folid Furniture.

CHAP. XII, Common and allong Of the Silver Ornaments of Maids,

Here is a very old Town amongst the Ostrogoths, called Scheningin, because that a Torrent, at a certain time, runs fiercely upon the fides of it, which is called Scheng. But when it is dry weather, there is to little water left, that it will scarce serve turn to water the cattle. But this descet is every where supplied by the plenty of excellent Fountains, that run out of the Rocks continually. This Town, though growing old, it feems next to defolation; yet by its ficuation, fruitfulnels, and wealth, it hath not its equal in all the North Climate. For it hath a most wholesome figuarion amongst the most fruitful fields and meadows, and Oken Woods, that are very profitable and thick. The fireets of this Town were to ingeniously made by the first Builders of it, that every where round about, turn which way they will, they all meet at the common Market, and Court of Justice, as in the Center. Upon this Market stood a Statue of a Giant, called Long Turo, as that at Breme is called Rowland; at whose knees, Malefactors were questioned and punished, especially Adulterers, which yet were seldome found: who between the Arms of the Image, held stones bound fail with Iron bands about their necks, to their sertain confution, and endured many other scoffs, especially for terrour, that they might not dare to corrupt the weaker Sex. There were of old in this Town abundance of Countrey-maids, that went covered with Silver, and guilded Crowns, four fingers deep, on the more solemn Featt-dayes; who also were otherwise tricked up and adorned : as also other Women were, who were all richly clad with filver, of which all, even thatband-men had plenty, as it is supposed they have at this day, that the Prince may be honoured, who rather rules over rich and gallant people, than as a King over poor indigent Fellows, that are but Scabs, and pilfering Knaves.

and such as fell to Fortaign Factors Copper very sed, and periodity tried and

N 2



CHAP. II.

Of Arrows and Warlick Inforuments.

7 Hat concerns their fighting in Batrai, it is a certain cruth, that the Coths excel all the relt for their Valour in Slings, Arrows, Launces, and Swords, that scarce in the whole World there are made greater and ftronger Cross-bows, than amongst them, nor greater Swords, that are left as a possession to their poflerity, by right of Inheritance, and by way of gift, as a more tich Furniture than filver. And they have no less affection to flrong Steel-bows and their attractive Wheels, whereby with wonderful agility the Bows are bent with a crooked back; and there is such force in an Arrow shor from it, that they will shoot through a man in Armour, with a Coat of Male, and double-breaft, as if it were fort Wax : wherefore they ale these more frequently amongst Warlike people, than any other Arms; and for many other reasons, as I shall underneath annex ir, concerning Iron Walls. And few Generals of Armies want such Iron Arrows in the fields, but have many thoulands of them that follow them diligently; became they are portable, and seldome are castin vain: Also they have three-pointed Arrows dipt in Venome, that are cast when the Enemy is herce and mad, yet they make no great wound. Nor do they lightly me Venom'd Arrows but when they understand the herceness and cruelty of the Enemy, who will spare none.

CHAP, III.

Of the Sudden calling the Communalty to Arms.

7 Hen the Enemy is upon the Sea-coast, or within the limits of the Nor-V thern Kingdomes, then presently by the Command of the Provincial Governours, with the counsel and consent of the old Souldiers, who are notably skilled in such like buspels, a Staff of three hands length, in the common sight of them all, is carried by the speedy running of some active young man unto that Village or City, with this Command, that on the 3,4, or 8, day, one two or three, or else every man in particular, from 15, years old, chall come with his Arms, and expences for ten or twenty days, upon pain that his or their houses shall be burne (which is intimated by the burning of the Staff) or elle the Mafter to be hanged, (which is fignified by the Cord tied to it) to appear speedily on such a Bank or Field, or Valley, to hear the cante he is called, and to receive Orders from the faid Provincial Governour, what he should do. Wherefore that Messenger, fwi ter than any Post or Waggon, having done his Commission, comes slowly back again bringing a roken with him, that he hath done all legally, and every moment one or another runs to every Village, and tells those places what they must do. And thus they that are fit for War, either by their strength of body, or vigour of age, in one, or eight days time at farthell, come in innumerable multirudes, with their Arms and Expences; and the old Husbandmen alto, to give counsel; and by reason of the experience they got in former Bartails, come also into the Fields, and the Women ger upon the City Walls, and Forts, to call down Stones, or Lime, lodden in Water. the feet and the titles the reserver of hereafter

shows, assert, defended white the production and the state of the same as

CHAP.

h,

Slings,

oth that

nemies,

are cruel by realion

ith bossi

S. tourse

न विशेष Box of

कां क्षेत्रका

es, mar

CHAP. IV. Of the keping of the Wayes and Scouts.

No that the Enemies Forces may not know the minds of the Inhabitants, there are S. minels fet in convenient places, who will fuffer none of that munitude met together to go down, nor yet the messengers of the Enemy, when they are discovered, nor to come for peace, but to tpy them ont. For the Inhabirants will beignorant of knowing the Enemies number, and what Spears and Arms, or long Poles and Arrows they use : for as much as their Spears (called in vulgar Italian Piche) are two or three foot longer than the Spears or Lances of their Enemies; as it fell out in the Ejecling of King Christiernus the Second, Anno 1521, under the Command of the most noble Gustavus Erickson, who was afterwards King; who with twenty thousand of the Dalacarli, that dwell in the Mountains, and use Spears, came down into the Champion fields of Arefium, in the end of May, to fight violently with his Enemies, and he became Conquerout in a moment. For the horrour of Christiernus is cruelty, made not onely private Families, or one Province, but all the Inhabitants mad, that they came every man forth to feek revenge. In what order, and for what cause it was done, that the same Gustavur every where with the concurrency of an infinite multitude, and by the confent of the most famous Nobility, was first proclaimed Prince, and afterwards crowned King by three Bishops of the Church of Rome, I shall speak elsewhere, when I speak of his actions. The messengers therefore of the Footmen, that are to give warning to the people to meet for the Battail, run fiercely and (wiftly; for no Snow, nor Rain, nor Heat, can flop them, nor Night hold them; but they will foon run the Race they undertake : The first Messengertels it to the next Village, and that to the next; and so the Hubbub runs all overstill they all know it in that Stift or Territory, where, when, and wherefore they must meet; nor will the Governour be very fafe, if he waver or stumble about what he should command the multitude that is provoked. For they fight freely for their Countrey, and they will pretently know what it is fit for them to

CHAP. V. Of the Direction of the Multitudes enlled together.

Hen the multitude of Inhabitants are met, presently come the most prudent Generals, who at once flew them what they must do, and divide them into Troops, Companies, and Regiments, and fore-tel them what manner of Battail they must keep, they give them their Colours, and expound unto them the caute of the War, they open to them the infolence of the Enemy, and Thew to one and all their damages, and how necessary it is to defend their Countries Liberty: and these things, with a quick expedition, make them all to be most bold Revengers of their wrongs, especially for this reason, because they learned before by training at home, how to fight in War, and that with Javelins, Atrows, Slings, Swords, wherewith they often kill the Enemy, or put him to flight; and they know what they should do in War, and can as well teach themfelves, as learn from others: whence they fall upon the Enemy, like a grievous and fad Tempelt all at once, and run fiercely on; either they find an opportunity to kill, flay, or take the Enemy prison r, or to rout him urterly, as the Nature of the place will give them way. And it is the Custome of the people to fight in a cumultuous and running Battail. But those that excel the rest in Spears, or Standing fight, are deputed to their Ranks apart, that they may be Auxiliaries to their Fellows, if by the opposition of the Enemy, they should be beaten back, or put to flight.

¥Ó.

H, H

Bi

10)

功

n

推

mi

Set

Yei





he sound

TALLOWS.

two hos

ght from

figure fair

and Feet,

I incura-

he fame

chiefly

n dwel-

untrey-

people

Heaven

ts to one

was pre-

n.acthat

he tone

: provo-

King-

or Foot

with ten

icd with

world

or tea-

and ex-

. For

1 35 tel/2

leicribed

abitants

e them.

e quick-

ed them

they are

ey garber

olly with

e Buison

hetslong

ar a bun-

Falta by

illest they

motous #

Of the manners and time of bringing these Vel: z.

But that they may the fooner fatisfie their re-engefull mind, by the more ready and effectuall help of Nature, they walt purposely for the winds, and they chule them off temperations and that winds that may carry in the tmoke and flame of their Velra into the houses of the Fortist on the other fide the bett archers fall on by troops, who do so plague the belieged in their windows or pelt their bucklers they hold in their hand, or their head, with multitudes of arrowes and darts that they make them like to hedg-hogs. And at length that force proceedes so far, that the besieged being tired; or conquered with smoke and fine, are horrib y kirled, no conditions or agreements being allowed them. For the unbridled Country mens simplicity knows not how to make any other agreement than the most bitter death prescribes to the belieged; because they remember how often they have bin deluded and vexed by the falle Covenants of wicked Governours and enemies that they rather choose to dye once fighting valuantly, than to live any longer to be so mocked and tormented by Tyrants. And hence grew up that most cruell cultome, that the ordinary Souldiers fighting a battail with the Country Clowns and Inhabitants of Gothland and Swethland, give no quarter, being in dispair of life, so it is on the contrary fide also, but they presently kill one the other in a lavage sury, as every where all the fields over their cattered bones fast ned to rocks shew instead of Epitaphs, But this milerable Calamity confiames more forrain Souldiers with cruell death of divers Nations, that were come thither to fell their lives for a small matter, than it doth natives who growing daily stronger, & augmenting their forces, rife more cruelly against all that oppose them. For strangers that are Souldiers testify io much, who by the mercy of God have fometimes elcaped these miseries, giving a document to all others, that the spoil of the Swedish Silver must be bought by Forrainers with their lives and bloods, upon very unequali terms.

Of their Stakes, Darts, and Pits for Snares,

He Souldiers of Northern people, to oppose fenced places against their enemies coming on, the much art and force, as other Nations do, confidering time and place whereby they may certainly with a small hand circumvent the enemy; for the time, whether it be winter ipring Summer For bethey to fight in winter, by the help of low and Ice a hundred are sufficient to oppose a shouland (as I shall show underneath). If it be spring time, then they provoke the Enemy to come where he may fall amongst the Rocks, and there are infinite numbers of them, the inow being then melted, that they may fall, that the Rider can find no firm ground to fland upon, to be free from falling down headlong, how valiant foever he be in Battail. If it be Summer, then they encounter their rash enemies with ditches, sharp poles and points stuck up, covered with the shadows of pine tree boughs, or in some boggy places. If it be Antumn, they are provoked by the enemy into the vallyes and declining places, they infatuate and weaken him with rain, that he is brought into narrow Straights, untill that many of them gathered together, do not help but hurt one the other which is most lamentable and desperate to behold. For nothing to much hurrs horsemen, as a narrow and boggy place, which can scarce be avoided whilft the Valiant horsemen enraged follow after the enemy forcibly whether loever the y fee him fly. Nor can they fave themselves by flight, by reason of the horse that is ready at the backs of them, nor yet on the right or left hands by reafon of the steep places, muddy lakes, deep boggs, dangerous caves, and waters and

CHAPJ.

woods, that they cannot escape these dangers. And then they find that it is not enough to fight with swords onely, or lances, arrows, sharp poles, and daggers, but with hard and dangerous places, into which they are sallen by too much presumption and improvidence. And if they once conquer it will be hard to suppresse their fiercenesse, as to recall the perhasioninesse and cowardinesse of those that run away; and perhaps because on all sides they cry to arms to arms, and many speedy wayes of death.

Of the Stratagems of King Hacho by bonghs.

Have shewed a little in the present Chapter with what vehement desire the Goths are wont to revenge cruell injuries. There was once in Gothland a most potent King called Hacko, who was addicted to such famous and magnificent actions, that other Lords could better admire than imitate them. For he fatisfied all parts of the Common-wealth with such circumspection, that as in war he was most valiant against the Enemy, so he neglected no office of a bountifull Prince toward his friends and subjects. He divided his power and military forces into two warlick fleets, the one whereof his brothers did Govern valiantly to defend the bounds and people of his land, whilst he in the interim provided with other fleet, and part of the Souldiers, made warr against the Western Island of the Ocean. When he was there, and understood certainly, by messengers that his two brothers were oppressed by the Danes in a fight at Sea, and that the third was killed basely to the disgrace of Swethlands King and his Family, supposing it was not to be delai'd any longer, he halied to bring his whole forces from Ireland against the Danes; which thing though Starchaterm a Champion of Sweden & forme others by alleaging their reasons, did defert; yet with his fleet that was left, and with a prosperous Gale he came to the shores of Zealand; and in a straight and quick passage through Woods and Forrests, hasted to come to the very Court where he understood that Sigarus the King then was. Nor did he want good successe to his haste : for passing the first and second watch filently and foftly as he could, when he came to the outward lurking places of the woods, he commanded all of his men to cut down boughs from Trees, and to carry them in every mans hand, when they that kept the third watch observed, they presently declared to Sigarus that they beheld an unusuall and wonderfull thing with their eyes. For they faw a wood pulled up by the roots coming up to the Court. Then Sigarus suspecting danger, answered that by that coming on of the woods extream misfortune was foreshewed to befall him and hastily calling together what Souldiers he lit upon by chance, he marcheth against the enemy that advanced. And therewas a crue le violent fight, the Swedes as their custome is feeking fiercely after revenge. Sigarus King of Denmark was flain in that fight. But Hacho changing this victory into cruelty spared no Age nor Sex, and so cruelly oppressed the Kingdome of Denmark, that he brought it not to tribute and subjection but to extreame desolation, nor would he have been quier, untill he had made delolate a great part of it, unlesse by the death of his Father he had been suddenly called away into Gothland from that attempt; yet he lest another Hacho of the same name to be his vicegerent, whole firname was Fastussus, whom, when the Danes after the Sweeds were gone, perceived to want force, they presently fell to their Armes again, and refolved to shake off the Sweedish yoke, and to redeem their former liberty; and making Siwaldus, the fon to Sigarus, their King, they renew the fight more fierce than ever it was before. That battaill was to violent and bloody, that many fouldiers being first slain, at last both Generalls of the armies Hucho and Simaldus met; and there were very few that after for milerable a ruine could fave themselves by flight. And this was the end of that most unfortunate

unfortunate battaill: in which all of the Kings blood were flain, but only one woman called Gyritha, who was born from Gothland, and to her the Government descended.

CHAP. XII. Of punishing Hostile fires,

Axo, the most worthy Danish writer mentions that Sueno King of Denmark, I was relolved to let upon the Inhabitants of Sweed and Gothland with to forcible arms and hatred, that admitting no conditions of peace, none should be luftered to elcape with his life and liberty, though their King should yeeld to all articles. Wherefore taking the benefit of the Winter, he took the shortest way, and tets upon Finland now called Finvidia a South province of Gothland, with plundring and firing all. The Inhabitants came humbly begging yeilding themselves and their Country, and not content to cast themselves down thus, they bring him provision, and sought to win him by hospitable entertainment, But when they law that all their officioninesse would not keep them sale, they thought it lawfull by treachery to punish his implacable cruelty; whereupon the forelaid Finlanders with one confent flew their most noble men, and their friends, and Companions of their plunders and murders, that were feating most part of the night and were full of drink, who were got into a barn that was empty of Corn, when they were drunk, these they killed with flame and fire, which they wanted before in their houses, being deprived of them in extreme cold weather. For when their were dead affeep, the Finlanders barring the doors cast fire upon the house, and now the greater part of them con pired, and the house was almost burnt to ashes, before the heat had awakened these drunkards. Lattly, when the flames came nearer to them, whilft they thought to run naked out of the doors, they find that they were that on the outlide. The fire burnt them on the infide, and the enemy without kept them from coming forth, but the present pain took off the fear of that which should follow, and the danger prefent was held worfe than that which was to come, fo that the Danes defiring rather to be killed by the fword than burnts strove with all their might to break the doors open, and to avoid one danger run into another.

Of removing the same danger.

Children of hopefull parts, whom the forefaid Captains and famous Men Chad taken to their tuition, in respect of propinquity of blood; without any pity of their age, were drowned under the Ice of the River Wica, and their bodies stript naked, by the Mockery of the Finlanders, and in the same Channel they nad both their end and their grave. Thus by the hand of a few Country men, that is by just revenge, the labour of this great expedition came to nothing. Nor is it only observed to have fallen out in that antient time, but wheresoever the Danes set upon the Goths and Sweeds to spoil them by force of times, so often shut up in houses for the most part they are destroyed partly by fire, partly by waters, partly by sword, either openly or by snares layd for them a which is supposed to be done the more easily; when they sleep in houses built of wood, that are all compassed about with combustible matter, and are fast assembly drunk and weary, soolishly thinking themselves to be secure amongst those men, whom they afflich with all violence and cruelty: and the more quickly and severely are they punished, by how much they were more insolent by cruell tyranny to plunder and spoil the houses of the Inhabitants.

0 2

Fer

1d Goem the against ttainly. tghtat केंद्र अकर्त ing his weka. elerr; notes hallthen ond king atom. shire mainup by wered wed to et, ht n debt. VIDE OF crue ty on models olamos, ut of An DIO Girls 10 DC 115 arer the in Atmes it former EDOW the O COL 200 the atmics nicible 1 most un-OCCUPACE

md day-

ph too

to land

dinele rms 10

ire the

hland a

magni-

For

at 25 in

CC OF &

per and

For those that are deprived of their houses in the coldest Winter, hide their wives and children in Caves, in Woods; and being led on with fury, force, and despairs armed with Darts and Cross-bows, they flay these plunderers, and fires of their houses, as they can meet them in dangerous ways; that with loss of life, they may recover, that are the just owners, their goods that are taken from them: whence it is, that they will either perish in most cruel danger, or by sudden (or more foul) flight, eleape the force of the Countrey-men; for leaving the spoil amongst their Enemies, they oft-times hardly get home naked and spoiled, and frequently wounded, and make themselves a spectacle and laughing stock, not onely to firangers, but to their own friends: wherefore it is but to ly to make War against the Clowns in Winter, when by the command of their Lords, they are not afraid, if they find the like accident of flutting up their Enemies, to bar the houses, and fet them on fire, because by the abundance of Woods neer them, by mucual helpsthey can foon build more houses. Their houses have never any Windows on the fides, but on the top of the houle: therefore when the doors are barred, they are eafily burnt when they are fast afleep.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the custody of Banks in time of Hostility, about a place called Meler, in Upper Swetta.

Here is moreover in Upper Swetia, a notable Lake called Meler, of which before in my third Book, I spake many strange things; chiefly, because amongst the Northern Waters, it is most full of Fish; and there are many Forts and Palaces of Noble and great men, that are very well adorned, according to the manner of that Nation : besides that there are some notable Cathedral Churches at Aros, and Strengens, where of old time there was Superflitious Worship given to Idols, and there was a great fight between the Nobles, Champions, and Giants; as one may see in the huge Stones, brought out of the Fields and Mountains, and placed in the Walls of the Churches: wherein, in Gothick Letrers, long ways, and obliquely fet down, the Deeds of these Giants are to be read. Also in the bosome of this Lake, there are inaccessible Rocks, which the Inhabirants call the Hens Chicken. The Rock in the middle is called the Hen, as in Norway there are Rocks of Eggs; that is, they are called Eggiafiord. Moreover, those that fail by Sea into Gothland and Sweden, meet with certain Boloms and Promontories of the Sea, that are called by the names of Tables, Forms, Crows, Hogs, Faulcons, and Battails: wherein, when Enemies come on, they hide themfelves amongst the Rocks with ship-boats that will run in. The Inhabitants keep thele openly, that they may intercept their Enemies that fail prefumpruously to them; for if the Enemies enter upon the firm shore, they find an armed multitude every where met to fight couragionfly in defence of their Countrey, as I shall show in particular in the following Books.

The End of the Seventh Book.

Olaus

The state of the second state of the state o

de their one and focus of fine and focus on focu

make they to bar them,

doors

which

Fores

s, and

vidic.

eover, us and

COWS,

them-

keep

y, 25 l

Olaus Magnus the Goth, Arch-Bishop of UP SAL:

OF

The state of Governours and Officers, and Military Exercise.

on moreoverns. Apper Sale in moreover Cake called Mary

The Epitome of the Eighth Book.

The Preface.

He most mighty Kings of the Goths and Swedes, being spoken of by my most dear Brother and Predecessour Johannes Magnus the Goth, Arch-Bilbop of Upfal, in his Histories lately Printed at Rome, there feems a shorter way left, whereby we may shew, how, and what Kings were wont to be made in the Northern Kingdomes; namely, after that Noe and his Sons came forth of the Atk, before that in other parts of the whole world, those Sons of his, as it is thought, had obtained by their Fathers Appointment, the Title and Government; and so at last from thence had increased the whole world, as it is sound by the testimony of many grave Authors, that above thirty four Kings proceeded from that Northern Climate, and had fet up mighty Kingdomes over the World very largely, as it is more clearly declared in my Gothick Map, Printed at Venice, Anno 1539. whose Alls how great and Magnificent they were, he my faid Brother faithfully testifies in his Histories, These things being thus proved, I must farther shew the way, how they chuse their King, or have him by succession; and how Military Exercises were observed, from the most ancient time, by the Governours: Likewise of their Offices.

CHAP. I.

Of the Election of the King.

He glorious constitution of our Ancestors, delivered in the name of free-men by faccession from ages to ages, commands in the beginning ofic, that when the Inhabitants are to choose a King in Sweeden, all the Senatours and Lords, and Messengers of all provinces, Communities and Cities of the aforefaid Kingdome shall be bound to meet in the Archiepiscopall City of Upfall: from whence not far off, there is a large stone of the field, which the Inhabitants call Morasten, that hath in the circumference 12. stones little lesse than it, sall set in the ground; In this place, the said Senatours or Counfellors of the Kingdome, and messengers use to meet: there the chiefe of the Senate makes a folid occasion to their how necessary it is for the liberty of the Kingdome and all the people, to agree upon one King to Rule over them, as it was most providently observed by their Ancestours to do it upon fuch a frone which fignifies freedfallneffe; exhorring all that with free votes they should presently name, whom they would have. Nor do they stay long. But he that teemed alwayes to detend the publick good and glory of the Kingdomes peace and concord. He that hath won the love of all the people by living juffly, he that in private Government hath hurt none; he that hath won many Victories in War, he that is most the lover of Lawes and Religion; he by the univerfal confent of all the free provincials, is lifted up to be called their King; yet with this confideration, that if the Kings fon, brother, or kinfman, bath the forefaid vertues, he shall be preferred before all the rest, not as by Inheritance but by free Election. And it feems not to be denied, but that fuchtly all diligence, care, authority, grace, prayers, promiles, may procure to themselves the favour of the people. Some hallen to get the Kingdome by recommendation from forrain Kings, and Princes, and by violence and force of Arms, but there are none more unhappy than they: because their violent go-vernment, the free vote of the people being against it, will not last long, though fuch a one fettle his throne amongst the strongest Forts, or in the midst of the Stars. How ever it falls out, he alwayes enters more fafely, endures, and ends, who is called by the voice of the people, that are provident enough, to be their King, as being accounted for his courage and vertue the most famous and valiant amongst exemies or his own people: because there seems that nothing is first or chiefest to be done by him, than to see to his Nobles, and People, that they may have a just Government, firm defence and perpetuall peace. And when he dorn this, the people will endure no other man to challenge to himself the Kingly office.

Of the Adoption of Noble men by Arms.

Because the most Potent King of the Goths, Theodorieus, did not omit to observe the custome of the most antient Princes of Gothland, in his own time, in adopting his son, therefore I would here, insert his Epistle, in his Fourth Book, sent to the King of Heruti. He saith, that his son to be made by arms is held to be a great honour amongst all Nations, because he is not sit to be adopted, unless he deserve to be accounted the most valiant. We are often deceived in our of-spring. But they can be no cowards who are first proved

te

ume of

minn

en, all

mmu-

ne Ar-

oce 12,

chicle

liberty

c over

s they

But

entres

juffly,

ricto-

וויכובון

wuh:

the !

ance

2015+

ves

DOD-

ms y

1 60-

of the

ends,

their.

121-

ning 18

that

And

himleli

omit to

nis own

te in his

USER fit

este et-

Appoint

to be valiant; and these have it not by favour but by desert, when strangers are tied to them by the bonds of love. And there is so much force in this that they will sooner dy, than suffer such men to be injured. And therefore by the right of Nations: and manlike condition, I adopt thee my son by this present gitt, that thou mayest be conveniently born by arms, who are known to be a Souldier. I give to thee, horses, swords, bucklers, and the other Instruments of war; but those that are the strongest of all, I bequeath to thee, Our Laws, For thou art held to be the Chiefest amongst the Nation. Who are approved by the sentence of Theodoricus; Take to thee these arms that may be useful for thee and me. Such a man adopts thee, by whose people thou art most to be seared, we have given thee arms, but of old time the people waited for pledyes of vertue. Therefore falliting you with competent Grace, we give all the rest in charge by him and him, our Embassadours, who shall plainly expound unto you our letters, and shall adde what is more to be said to confirm this grace unto you.

Of the same form of the Adoption.

Oreover fo Strict observation was had amongst the old Guthish King for The experience of Arms, that their lawfull fons were not permitted to cat at table either in private or publick with their father, untill fuch time forrain princes did certify of their fufficiency in Arms; which also Paul, Discouns testing hes 1, i. c. 23. For when the Lumbards having got the victory, returned to their own places, they suggested to their King Odnin, that leads should be made for his fon Albuin, by whose valour in Battail, (the son of the King of the Gepide being flain) they wan the victory, that as he was his Fathers Companion in danger, fo he might fit at the Table with him. To whom Odmin answered : That he could not grant this, left he should infringe the custome of the Country, You know, faith he; that it is no custome with us, that the Kings fon thould dine with his Father unleis he first receive arms from the faid forrain King: when Albain heard his Father speak this, he took 400 young men with him; and came to Turismundus the King of the Gepida, whose son he had once killed in war, and demanded a coat of arms from him, the King entertaining him courteously made a banquet, and fet him at his right hand, where his own fon was wont to fit, whom he had flain, yet the Father remembring it, fetche deep fighs, thinking this a fad change for his fon, which when the other fon of the King, and the Courtiers, drawing their weapons thought to revenge, the King kept them from it under a sharp prohibition, affirming that victory to be wicked, when a man shall kill a stranger in his own house, whereupon he decreed that all should be merry at the leath, and taking the Arms of his son that was killed, he delivered them to Albain, and fent him to his Fathers Kingdome with peace and safety. Then fitting at Table with his Father, he related all things in order, and he deferved great praise for his fo great boldnesse: but Turismundan deferved a great deal more, for his fo constant faith held toward fo cruell an enemy. For it is a received opinion of men, as a decree of military persons, that the King can create a Souldier to be a Knight, who was not in that order before his coronation, because it is included in the Authority of the King, as a garland of roles upon a Golden Crown, and a the Dayon of the Route land

where therees and cours, of may as compared or when your

edge configeration in Wines in a mounty as a principal state of the configeration of the conf

on decired in till of loring. But they can be no covards who are finite ordered

requests better a at an email cost winter defaulow houring ability of the request on their floor in the act carrest and, so it that floor it the act carrest and, so it that floor it is not that it in the act carrest and the recent can be act to t

STATEMENT BESTW. AR

valitant aid at our dame CHAP. IV. voi to modelity and or bais

Of the Adilitary education of Hustrious and Noble men,

Twas not the least care amongst the Antient Goths to bring up their Children very hardly, and by a common law they took heed to employ them in military affairs and wars, that they might be upon all chances detenders of their Country, as in former dayes it was instituted by the followers of their ancestours. And that manner was chiefly kept, which lasts to this day. Of old, Children newly out of their Cradles had experience of being whipt with rods when they fackt. First they were lasht in most hot baths griveously, till the blood came, then were they thrust into the most cold water, almost in danger of death, that their limbs might be the more compoled : hereby they hardned their children, to endure hear and cold, also children were so whipt with stripes at the Altar, that much blood run forth of their bowels, sometimes that it was suppoled they would dy. And yet none of them ever so much as cryed out, or made any moane, that they drank-in severity of life, from their Infancy and Cradle, even with their Mothers Milk. Also when their Children were new born they first brought them to the fire, and hardned them in cruell frosts, and waters : then growing young men they received great blows upon their face and bodies, and bare them with that filence, that they would not fo much as move their eyes, or by fear shew their impatience. They will not use fort feathers. Their cloths are made of hard skin: Their meat and drink is ftrong. They lye more on planks, than feather-beds, and upon such hard things that they may harden their limbs, and make them more fit against all ill chances. But because Ludevicus King of Hungaria was daintily feed, he much complaind of his caterers, left he should be put to flight in war, and be forced to live on any hard Country fare to fave his life, as it fell out afterwards.

Country You know the CHAP. V. 1 of the reason and manuer of Riding.

Moreover youths are carefully instructed in the art of riding, darring, shooting, and that it ought to be very much respected by Princes. And amongst the rest, there is set upon their heads a weighty helmet, and a long fpear is held in their hands, that they may learn as well for strength as decency to ride upright, with their neck, and to hold that posture. Again a buckler is hanged at their back, that they may know by looking back more carefully to beware of inares: also because it is the most antient custome of the Gothick Nobility, with such ornaments, namely a helmet, lance and buckler, to come to publick meetings of Princes, and with other such arms to defend their Countries Liberty, and Iustice. And that they may not be ignorant of the military discipline of other Nations, these youths are sent to torrain Princes Courts far off, that they may Learn the fashion, Language, difference of perions, and the Inventions of Countries, their order of Fighting and dispoling of their Armies, that they may not come rude to the Government, yet some come no fooner home but they are made Kings. Alfo it was the manner of the ancient Princes, to change their ions hair one with another that by cutting their locks, they might be made their fathers, and such they fent home again adorned with royall gifts. But the Goths do not pole their hair, but bind on close helmets, and coats of maile, commanding them to mount upon the ftronger horses, and in cruell cold winter to follow hunting and by course to stand in their armour when it freezes extream hard, as if they stood sentinel, and were to avoid danger of those that lie in some hostile siege; which is more frequently practifed in Winter than in Summer.

CHAP.

Children

m mil.

ortheir

mceif.

d Chil-

5 When

e blood

nger of

edtheir

s at the

ias fup-

or made

Cradle,

orn they

Waters:

bodies,

e their

Their

e more banden

De In-

Coun-

, gott

a long

ecency

buckler

willy to

No+

come

d their

of the

Princes

e of per-

dispoint

yer loone

perotehe

v cutting

me again

t bind on

uponthe

(entire)

this more

CHAP. VI.

Of the choice of Young Souldiers for Arms.

Shall here shew after what manner the Kings of the Goths, Swedes, and Nore I megians and other Princes of the North did inflitute formerly their Kingly and provinciall offices, and do in these dayes, dispose of them. Therefore they thought those young Souldiers the most famous of all, in wars, who, from their childhood, bridled their unconstant yearswith early manners, for there is nothing worse than that, if it be let loose to ill customes. For that age is thought neither faithfull to the Prince, nor profitable to the Country, nor tolerable to their Companions, nor yet pleasing to any unless by military rigour it be bred up into valour; that in such case the most valiant desenders et their Country may be instructed, to whom provinces may be falest committed to govern them : But that these young men might not alwayes be under the rigour of these military disciplines, the Kings liberality, doth alwayes advance and exalt them, and give them speciall gifts that they may be bound thereby to continue faithfull to their King, and that they may undauntedly undergo any danger of life in battail. The gifts therefore they beltow on them, are fwords, crofsbowes, quivers, helmets, brefts, coars of maile. bucklers, Javelins, war-hories, and when they grow elder, they are tied by tome fervice. To all thefe, after the old custome there are speciall forms in words and reasons in particular annexed to shew why they are given and received.

Of the same by an outward Ceremony.

He Goths count their age by valour, as when they can wound an enemy ; they are then tied to abstain from all vice, which also Paulus Diaconsu testifies 1. 1. concerning the Lombards, who that they may multiply their Souldiers, they take many tervants from their Masters, and make them free; and that their liberty may be ratified, they confirm it after their usuall manner by an arrow: yet mumbling tome of their Country Language to fortifie the thing the more; which are as much as it they faid, Let the Gods inable thee by this arrow, and let them destroy thee when ever thou shalt prove salse to thy Prince or Country. And I must not passe over the testimony of Saxo in his 2. Book, that the Lords of old, about to enter into the Court, began their first service, by obliging themselves to their Prince by vowing some great thing, beginning their first employment with valour, yet no strangers ever deserved to be counred faithfull indeed in the Courts of Gothland and Sweldand, unleffe they took a drawn sword, or dagger by the point, from the Princes hand as a gift, taking an oath of fidelity, left taking it by the hilt they might thrust it into the bowels of him that gave it; as it hath been formerly done, whilst he suffered him to revenge, who gave to an ungratefull person the hilt for the point, contrary to the custome of the Antients. But they make standard-bearers, and Vandragers that are famous for their valour: and very gallant men, by only tendring them the flandard, which by the law of Arms they promife to defend as their honour, and their life: To thefe they joyn a most bold guard, men that have that p pole-axes, and iron-balls hanging at their girdles: with which when need is they can knock down a man that is neer when they cannot conquer them with their two edged fwords.

Series and the constraint of constraints who have the

state by the real for more than to become acting the incident from the state of the

CHAP

CHAP.

CHAP. ME

CHAP. VIII. Of the manner of the old Warfare of the Goths.

Hey had of old heavy Helmets, not very neatly made, but according as they could in those rude dayes; also they had thick Breast-plates, partly of Iron, part of Leather, part of Filletting, made of Linnen and Woollen: Likewife they had Iron Sleives and Gantlets: And they carried great long Spears. Procopisu speaks of them 1.2. in these words: But the Persians not enduring the Goths that marched first with thick long Spears, ran away: Also the Curasiers the long Spears. Their Hotles Breafts are covered with Breafts of Brais: about the Bridles and Trappings they wear Gold, not using Iron or Silver: In whole Countrey since there is so vast a quantity of Gold and Copper yet there is no Iron nor Silver. But in their Native Countrey, namely Gothlana, they of old, with unspeakable magnificence, used Gold as the most worthy Metal, to the honour of their gods, in adorning the chief Churches, (as I said in my first Book,) But now a days, there is a Law made, that Brasse or Silver Bells shall be tied to their restive storse-tails that are cut short, that weak men, hearing the founds may avoid the danger. But those that use more Silver for Ornament, have large Belts, (called Silfischena) as well for to adorn them, as to defend the middle of their backs, and they wear other Ornaments also that are brave Courtiers.

CHAP. IX. Of other Antiquities of Knights.

A Lio former Ages used great long Spurs, and broad Rowels. Moreover, they had Boots that turned down, vainly enough, with great Tops, that were made for no profit at all; as I saw when I was a Boy, above 60, years since; and these are now kept in some Noble-mens houses to be seen. Also the Garments of Souldiers Coats were so short, and folded together, that they could scarce cover their Buttocks beneath; and they were so chequered and slathed above that they would neither cover their shoulders, nor could their hair, falling down, keep off the cold, specially in private souldiers, who were not allowed to wear long hair, but onely for Princes, chiefly Kings Sons, who were never poled from their Child-hood, that their Locks might fall down upon their Backs, which were divided, and hung down on both sides before, but not after the Turkish sa-shion, platted, toul and ugly, or otherwise crisped, but sprinkled with sweet linguents.

Of Military Exercises and Disciplines.

It was of old a constant Custome, and is observed to this day, amongst the Northbern people that the Knights armed Cap-a-pee, should from the plain ground, and from any hard place, by nature, mount upon high horses, with their Trappings on especially upon the slippery Ice, and Snow-Fields, where more frequent and more sharp W ars use to be made, as I shall shew underneath, concerning their sights in Winter; especially by reason of their heavy Armour, and thick Spears, which they commonly use against their Enemies; and this is held to be no absurd thing amongst them. Moreover, there is another Military Discipline of the Gaths, whereby they are wont, in all their Armour, to vault from one horse to another, and so to the third horse, when the horses run swiftly; and they will do it, and never touch ground, when they are in a hot battail. Also they will lye upon their horse backward, or lift themselves up, or incline themselves, and rise up again, changing their Javelin, or Spear.

CHAP, XI.

祖祖

ROC

44

bay

ton

tod

the

S they

Iron,

Like-

etrs,

ing the

diers

THOU

hale

S DO

old,

ie ho-

00k,)

ed to

large lie of

II.

m,

CAL

OFE

fa-

CHAP. XI.

Of their Arms and provisions for Knights and Horsemen.

Then the Northern people are to enter upon a horfe-fight with thick heavy spears, they adorn the points of them with fex or wolvs tailes, in contempt of all their enemies. Also they never use spears with banners, as the Persians do. But they we crosse and seel and horn bowes for the great force and firength they have, for they are made most true, as are all arrows that are joyned to them. Lastly, they use long straight as well as crooked (words, and when their lances are broken, they cut or push with them. Also they ase broad swords that are to be wielded with both hands, also Iron mallets that are crooked, at the end, with which they can the more sharply penetrate their helmets,& break them, than with any other warlick Instrument: and with these kind of malls they will either force the rider from his horse, or else they break the horses brains out, that he will cast his rider. Also fighting near hand they use many divers kinds of punniards, and weapons, as straight, and broad, two edged, crooked, and hooked. The coverings of the horses are steel or Iron corfelets, or leather, steeps in quick-lime, and senced with iron wiar to keep off the cut of a fword. And being so provided they do more providently raise many Armies if need be not far distant one from the other, that one may relieve the other when the enemy falls on: and they do their best to inclose the enemy, as in an whirlwind, that they may not be hemmed about with his subtilty, or long Stratagems. And to do this the better they are directed by some figns from their Scouts and Trumpeters.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Tyrannicall severity and exaction of their Governours.

IN the Northern Kingdomes as there are many mighty provinces; lo to govern them, there are fet by their Kings, Governours that are of divers Nations and Languages; as beams fent from the Sun, that, in all the Country; Equity and Justice may be preferred, and all the people may live in fecurity, yet that this felicity of government proceeding from equity may not last long, by the Counsels of malignant men elsewhere in the Kingdome, such presidents are set, that being blind with coverousnesse and malice, do torture the innocent, exalt the wicked, perverting all lawes, and in a short time bring the whole Kingdome into ruine, themselves into calamity, the King into scorn and infamy, mifery and exile. But that we may have an example, amongst the rest of those bloody and covetous Rulers that Ericus King of Sweden who came from the Dukes of Pomerania, &c. preferred, to rend out the bowels of Sweden; There was one Dane Jusse Erickson: he being constituted over the Country of the Dalacarli, was so cruell to them all, that it was thought that all the souls of all malignant Tyrants that ever were before him, were met in this one desperate villain. Cicero reports that cruell Verres, by caufing imoke to rife out of rotten wood, destroyed one innocent man; but he killed of the Inhabitants of Dalacarlist a vast number of innocent men hanging them in the smoke, though they could have treed themselves from him by force if they would have rebelled, therefore least he should seem a hang-man not ingenious enough to find our new kinds of torments, he was not ashamed to put the wives of the men so cruelly murdered to draw ploughs instead of Oxen: and it was his chief delight to see and hear them in fo great firaights to cast their dead Children away, and then to put into the plough again, untill they fell down dead or half-dead. Here might be layd down more horrible acts of that Danish Tyranny, that then were not committed by him alone, but by all the King's Governors: let it suffice to fay that

1725

DO'S

100

Ofti

Na

and

ing feet

the

Boo

be

Wi

田山

840

lai thi de Tra

whi bitt

tty

Bat

and

alle

the [

they

token

艇

IDE

082

nelic

ECTUDIO

his pr

Whele

they brought upon themselves by these practises their utmost ruine, and banishment upon their most wicked King. For by the Fury of the Peasants they were most cruelly slain; when they were more ready to plunder than to sight. But King Ericus of Pomerane, being forsaken by the Danes, whose counsels he used to the ruine of himself and many more, by the urgency of a Potent man called Engilbert, who was guarded with a tooooo of the Inhabitants, that were provoked to the war, betook himself to a little Island in Gothland as a runnagate in his miserable old age.

CHAP. XIII. Again of the same most wicked Rulers.

Hough in the former Chapter the whole Country feemes to be purged of crueil Governours, yet the damnable remainder of them have perievered by the same traud and art, by their Complices and Schollers as it were Venome, who the more in the oblequioninefle of their minds, they could beag of their loyalty to their Prince; by to much they supposed they should be preferred before others in the Kings lecrets and offices; nor were they deceived in their opinions. For whereas first they did professe themselves supplicants and humble, as experienced in what belongs to free-men, chiefly in the exacting of Tributes and Fines, they were presently made president, without any further deferts, over the simple people: and by the Cooperation of the Tyranny of fuch Governours, the most mighty King of the Goths, Swedes, and Norway men, Charles, who succeeded the forelaid Eriem, was forced to endure a Rebellion, of his most faithfull people, and at last to be exiled. For when the King himfelf, for the vast wickednesse of his Rulers and their facriledges, was befieged by a most wicked fiedg blocking him up in his ownCourt by the people, and flaid for help in vain from his Rulers, who freely wandered up & down his Kingdom, he was doubtful what to do in to great perplexity for a more fafe Remedy; and he fent again fecret messengers to the foresaid Rulers, commanding them upon their honour and fidelity, and oath they had taken, to come and help him in his calamity, but it was in vain, for they had learned nothing elle, than to domineer proudly over humble men, to wrack the Inhabitants for monies, to wrong the milerable; and punish the guiltlesse. Then the King being in thraight necessity, toreseeing that his fatest way was to sly, he commanded fome Ships to be prefently made ready in the most horrid cold in January, and he put infinite Wealth into them. And when now the Anchors onely were to be weighed, one of the Governours asked the King whether he had forgotten any thing on Land: when the King heard this, he fighed and faid, Truly, faith he, I neglected many years fince to hang thee and fuch like on a Gallows, for had I done that, I might now be at quiet in a peaceable common-wealth; and so hoising fail he came to Dartzick in Prussia by a more welcome than pleafant voyage and was most courteously received by King Cassimer, lang of Poland, untill, seven years being past, he was received into his former dignity, and power, being most dear to all, who was so larely hated by all. For he set Governours over them, who preferred vertue before vice, juffice before wrongs, honelty before profit. But what Christiernus King of Denmark, the second of that name, suffered in the Northern Kingdomes for the cruelty of the cruell Rulers, no man can be ignorant that Reads his History.

But amongst the rest, he had one bloody Governour called Nicolas Halste, whose only delight it was by going before this cruell King, to raite high Gallows, that he might hang the unhappy subjects upon them, unless they redeemed their lives with a certain summe of Gold and Silver: saying that long Theevs must have high Gibbits. Nor did this cryer misse a just end; for being condemned by the King for the much money he had extorted from the people, he

Was

and ba-

is they

o fight.

Omiell

Potent.

s that nd as a

ed of

ctiele-

II WELL

ld btag

oc pre-

Wed in

ots and

ting of

orther

my of

DEWAY

int a

n the

Was

aple,

n his

Re-

and

elit,

m0-

nded

and were

200°

uly,

us;

ples-

200

r let

rnell

was hanged on the same Gallows he had made for others, yet the King got ner'e the most security from the surious people, but he was sorced to fly every moment. But of this King Christiernus and his Actions, I shall write something underneath, that I know to be true, because I saw those horrid things and was present at them.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the causes of perpetual discord, that the Swedes or Sweens, and the Goths, have against the Danes.

Thy the Goths and Swedes are so violent both in minds and Arms against the Danes, the most diligent Danish Historian in 16. Books here and there, unto extream horrour, affords us a most plain rea-For he every where speaks of the violent and cruell Government of his Nation over the subjects, and their false triendship toward their neighbours, and both of these against all their confederates; that every prudent understanding man hath just cause to beware, how safe he can be in their fecurity, or naturall bond, or any other fworn confederacy. For he affirms in the fittl book, that King Lotherus faid that it was honely to spoil every Noble man of his life and goods, and to empty the Country of good Citizens. In his 2. Book, that King Helgo was so prone to Venery, that it was a question whether he were the greater Tyrant or Adulterer, who ravished the Virgin Thora, which afterwards invented fuch a detestable wickednesse, that Saxo exclaims much against her. In his 3d. Book he taith, that Tergo laid snares for his brother and flew him, and lying with his wife added incest to parricide; and Saxo himself restines how he covered that wickednesse with so great simulation of good will, and coloured his fratricide with the name of piety. That the woman he ravished was full of all mildnesse, hurring no man, and indeed he induced the woman to this, that she affirmed that her husband was a Traitor to the King, and killed himself. Nor was this perswasion lost, whilst Princes will believe lies, where offtimes Scoffers are in grace and backbiters are honoured. In the 4th. Book, the last lease, Saxo testifies, that his Country men the Danes, hold it no fault or ill way to ly and to deceive, as the fashion is amongst the Parthians. In the 5th. Book 2, leas is shewed what filthy manners and foul wicked violences and adulteries the courtiers are adicted to. Indeed all the world and all barbarians abhor it. In the 6th, Book, the cruelty of the Danes so grew, upon the Saxons after that their Champion was slain, that they forced them to pay for a tax yearly the fore finger of every mans hand, in token of their flavery, untilt such time as one Swertingus moved with the affection of the Cirizens, burnt up both himfelf and the King, under the pretence of a banquer. At the beginning of the 7th. Book, Frotho commands his own brother to be flain by one of his fervants, fecretly; and that the wicked nesse might not be discovered by him that was guilty of it, he caused the same murderer to be flain privately; but at last he was burnt up, and suffered for his parricide by the fons of his flain brother, who were kept close and bred up as whelps.

the state of the control of the state of the

con-

W25

CHAP, I

emed

(المع

1000

mote mife

cienti ci Sun

the At

WEB

Chem

Stra

the ?

and

cedh

2 Mo

beto

200

M

D),

and

abo

EEE

grici

time

with

choice

Wing!

thou

CCW.

elpecia

his po

I) And

Woold

they

YOUR

deace

hm at

Blood !

MOY:

and Jan

Friend

With

tice of

Of the same causes.

Mongst the rest, Saxo very largely profecutes the monstrons cruelty of King Jarmericus, which was hercely continued from his Childhood, unto his old age : which as it exceeds all rage of Beafts, so cannot it be read or heard of by any fenfible man, but with great horrour. For by unheard of Tyranny, he often killed with exquifite torments afflicted men. For by high ingratitude, he flevs their King and Queen with fire privately, by whom he was taken captive in war, and fet at liberty, and taken into the number of their familiar friends, and made the chief of them, and exalted. Then, when he took fourty Germans, he joyned fo many Wolves to them, and strangled them; yet this would not latisfie his bloody mind. For he destroyed their Nobility, thrusting Thongs through their Legs, and then he bound them to the hoofs of huge Bulls, & tet Dogs to tear them, and drew them into the Mud and Bogs, a most miterable spectacle. Lattly, the Earls, Dukes, Princes of Germany that he took Captives, thrusting cords through their legs, he tied to horses to pull them in funder; yet he could not stay in this highest cruelty. For he gave his own Queen, the Daughter of the King of the Huns, though the were most innocent and chaste, fast bound to the Earth, to be trod down by horses, and a whole Troop of Cartel trod her to death, and tore her in pieces. Also he took his Nephews his own Sisters Sons, by hand, and strangled them. And the Nobility that were their Tutours, he wed in the same manner, inviting them to a Banquet. Moreover, in the same Book there is to be seen the unipeakable cruelty of one Haque, a Dane, that it may well fright all men, to think themselves to be lase, either with any Victories or accords made with that Nation. In the ninth book at the beginning, the tame Author observes, that the publick piety was torn with the private fury of the King; and after many things, that King Harald from a glorious Saint became a foul Apoltate, and fell from it. And in the Tenth Book, that the Danes winning Sembia, killing the men, compelled the women to marry them, and divorcing them from their Wives, being more desirons of strangers, divided the Victory with the Enemy, by marrying the women. Laftly, that King Harald bound men's necks in the yokes of Oxen, and at length that they D. Olaus, King of Norway, by murderers corrupted with money; and last of all, by the hand of Blaccho, a Traytor, they flew S. Cametus. In the XI, that King Swene was found to have fortaken the true Religion, rather then am incessuous Bride. In the XII. that the Danes might destroy the captive Germans, with a more violent death, they bound their hands behind them, and fastened them upon stakes: then they opened their Bellies with their Knives, taking out the first part of their naked guts, they opened the rest with stakes : nor did they leave off corturing them, till they had drawn all the guts our of their bellies, and made them give up the Ghoft: which spectacle, as it was fad to behold, fo was it very profitable for us: for it not onely brought the guilty to punishment but it forewarned others, that they should avoid the like cause of torment. Wherefore it was no less an admonition to those that saw it than it was a punishment to those that endured it. But in the rest of his Books, because very many horrible things are spoken of amongst a few that are good, I rather leave them to the free choice of the Reader, if need be, to find them there, than for me to be tedious in fetting them down; thinking it a fufficient and lawful cause why the Swedes and Goths, and other Nations, cannot be secure in the society of that people; To whom, for the Reasons aforesaid, (to use Saxo his words) whoever shall shew humanity and courtefie, doth a good turn to ungrateful peoVIII

of King

has old by any

e flen

War,

made

acd to

loody

Legs,

mand

Earls,

their

gheff

Hung

trod

erin

gled

leen

5. 10

that

fell

加京阿然

eli-

ind eir

ith

CULT

fad

illy

lect

vit

de

ner

nan

luky

CHAP. XVI.

Of the same canses, out of the 24. Book of the History of Gothland, of Johannes Magnus, the Author's Brother.

IN the year of Christ, 1512, there fell out a most pernicious discord betwist Stene, and Gustavus, the Son of Ericus Trolle, Arch-Bishop of Upsal, whereby not onely they two, but the whole Countrey came to utter ruine. They were both young, and both born of most noble blood both high spirits. But Steno seemed more just and modest in his cause, who said he would obey the Ecclesiastical law, and stand to the arbitration of good men; and he caused Gustavus to be sufficiently admonished, as well by Leo the Tenth, as by the Bishops of the Kingdom of Sweden, that he should not trouble or take away the quiet of his Countrey. But the Arch-Bishop was of a stonter mind, than to be perswaded any ways to agree with Stene, who had secluded his Father Ericus from so large a principality, and shewed that he put his greatest hopes in Christiernus, the Danish King. Then Steno understanding that the Arch-bishop would by no means be called off, not perswaded to forsake his implacable hatred he raised an Army of Souldiers, and besieged him, shut up in the Castle Almer Steek, and he put to slight the Army of the King of Denmark that came to raile the fiege. Then blocking him up again, and when he waited to no purpose for relief from the King of Denmark, he forced him to yield; and pulling down the Castle to the ground, he shut him up in a Monastery at Aros, (called Infulense) that being done, he had his cause opened before the Popes Legate, Johannes Arcimboldas, in the Parliament at Arbogum, and he was by the intercession of the Legate, and the Senate of the Kingdome, received into grace with Steno, upon this condition, that henceforth he should not intrude into the Arch-bishoprick of Upfal, but should live on his Patrimony, sudying to be quiet, and maintain peace. For he shut up his Father Ericm, and some other Lords of the Danish Faction in prison : Then going progress about the Kingdome, he was received with the general love of all the Inhabicants, and he bound himself to them, and them to him by an Oath. For he was gracious in the fight of all his subjects, and exceeding popular, because another time he fell down on his knees to his Father Suanton, who oppressed the people with Tributes, and he obtained a relaxation of them. Wherefore, being now chosen Princeshe found that not onely Tributes were ready to be paid by his lowing Subjects ; but that they were willing also to hazard their lives for him in a thousand dangers of death; wherefore being affifted with so many people, he grew fo potent, that he could oppose the Forces of many Kings and Princes; especially if he had had as much prudence in his daily Counsellers, joyned with his power. But there were in his Cabinet-Councel men, that spake for flattery, and nothing for the publick good, because they were not prudent enough, nor would they admit men that were more prudent into the Kings Councel, but they flandered them by Detractions, Whitperings, and falle Acculations, to the young Prince: whence it came shortly to passe, that by their malignant impudence, and impudent Malignity, many of the best and most powerful men lest him, and expected a change : Which when Christiernus the Danish King underflood, he thought a fit time was come to enlarge the narrow Straights of Denmark; and that he might by force subdue the spacious Kingdoms of Gothland, and Swedland: Wherefore drawing out a great and potent Army of Saxons, Frises, West phalians, Scots, Danes, French, he besieged Stock holm the court of Sweden, with a powerful hand. But Steno being fortified before with the love and fervice of so many people, he could not be conquer'd by the Dane, whose name was hateful amongst the Swedes.

Cap.

ling. Jody

000 0 order

bebes

WICK

dead

City

lyin STREET, hise

CTUE Glid

WE

wh

WI

pen unit

the

de l

their

King

DE O

ofall

21 g

aame

Washo

即加

cone

The Ch

that on

Kittels

pletha

teveng

Marie Di mi [thin) distan

Also Christiernus in that siege wherein he seemed to beleaguer Steno, was so hardly belieged himfelt with hunger and want of provision, that the greatest part of his Army was like to perith for hunger, whereupon calling off his forces from the fiege, he provides to return with his Navy into Denmark. But when he was ready to fail, and to begone, a vehement contrary windflopt him: which standing in that point for four whole months forcibly, it drove Christiernus to intolerable inconveninces. For to return to land, Siene oppofing him, he could not, nor yet fail into Denmark, for the wind that was against him. Then Steno a Prince of a generous and lotty mind, finding his enemie's necessity, used a most rare office of humanity toward him, and most treely gave him as much provision as might serve his whole Army. Christiernus tetenting this benefit, fent messengers to Steno, laying that he defired a private conference with him concerning the publick peace. It lacked but little, but that Sreno perswaded by the Danish traud had come to his fleet; but he was called back by the Counfell of some that were faithfull to him, and he sent Hermingus Gaddus, and the most Noble youth Gustavus Erickson, to treat with him for a peace or a truce to be made on both fides : there, he prefently horning tail, carried into Denmark with him. And this was the end of that was that was waged by Christierum in the year 1518, against Sieno and the City Stochholm. But he, the year following, leavied a greater Army than ever he did before and marched over the Ice into Sweden, whom Steno, more valiantly thats prudently, fought with, on the Ice in the Country of the Vefiregethi, and playing his first pare in the Army most couragiously, was wounded with a shot of a Gun in his thigh, and pretently put into a Chariot he was carryed to Stockholme, and when he was almost come thither, he died on the frozen Lake Meler; he was worthy indeed to have lived longer, and he had done to, had he but removed imprudent and ill counsellours from him. In the interim the relice of Steno, Christina, periwaded by a few Lords that took her part, by speciall messenger, and a promise of a free Stipend, to revenge her husbands death, did in vain defire auxiliary forces from Sigifmund the first, King of Poland. When therefore Steno was dead, the numerous Army of the Swedes, being ruled by no body was dispersed; and there was an occasion offered to those Lords that favoured the Danish King, to call him presently into Sweden, and to Crown him at Stochholme. But when he confidered that he was called in to be King by the least part of the Lords, and that thereupon his Coronarion might be made void, when the reff were referred to their Liberty, he caught many Senatours and Lords of the Kingdome, the same day he was crowned, that is on the Sunday after the Offaves of all Saints, Anno 1520. whom he invited to a feath, and who supposed they were secure upon the Kings word, and caused them to be flain too feverely, which cruelty fince it feems now to be scattered into all history. I will no longer stay in relating this Tragedy which brought no lesse mischief to the Danes and their King, than it did to the Common-wealth of Sweden. For the King among't to many Lords caused the greatest part to be flain, by whom he might have been long preferred in a most ample principality from which he was, presently and the same month he came, excluded, and returned into his own Country of Denmark : being made a fingular example to all Kings and Princes, who defire to rule with more feverity than clemena san amenanta aminonana tan amin'i Ark

the few payers or or a face of results above each staff and the Conjugate of the Conjugate - The add figure and the control of the property of the control of

They make the form of the party of the control of the party of the control of the

EVIE

Was to

in the

dict

droit

oppo-

House

Demic's

Ittely

W ft-

minite

t, beit

報信記

t Her.

at with

to that

Stock-

did be-

y than

p1292

ot of a

Stark-

+ Me-

e hoe

telia

cdall

, end

Vhen

700

·

town

mg by

mage

rs and

unday

and

to be

hifto-

e mis-

John Co.

to te

ipulty

mite-

men-

TAP.

CHAP, XVII.

Of the Severity of King Christiernus the Second.

Mristiernus the second, King of Denmark, at fundry times, and divers wayes, obtaining passage into the foresaid Kingdomes, by some Lords of the Danish faction, in the Kingdomes of Swethland and Gothland, that were kindred and of the Danish blood (amongst whom was that most unhappy man Gustavus Trolle, Arch-Bishop of Hofal) he became so cruell and severe, that taking no respect to his oath, or Letters sealed, or of the sacrament of the Lords body, that was to be trembled at, or of any pity to commiserate any man, he one day commanded, namely November the 8, 1520, the Princes of divers orders, the Lords and Confults and Citizens, to the number of 94. to be beheaded, most wickedly, to which he was egged on by the ill counsell of wicked men: this I faw and trembled at it; and he commanded that their dead bodies should remain unburied 3. dayes, before the City house of the City Stochholme, untill they were carried forth of the City to be burnt. Truly it was a milerable fight, that questionlesse would afterwards trouble Christiernus himself who was vexed with a thouland miseries; that at the instigation of his cruell Councell, he should barbarously murder those, and after an unusuall cruelry, whom he had paffed his word to, and friendly invited to a feat as Ghests of the Kings Table: For he fastned to the Gallows one Magnus who was one of Johannes his Peers, and a most valiant defendant of his Country; who was faltned to a plank on the ground, and first his privities, then his heart was cut out, and they were cast into his fathers face, with many infulting opprobrious words given to him, that he might shew the greater rage and perpetuall horror in doing it. After that, in the night of the same day, the most unhappy widdows, whole husbands were flain with the fword, and lay for the dogs to eat in the publick Market place, being spoil'd of their moneys and all their goods by the unfatiable Captains of the Danes, did lament without remedy. Indeed those officers were most filthy and most cruell, who plundred thiefly the innocent, laying afide all modesty and honesty, onely with the terror of the Kings name, or cruelty that they would put them to. Nor was the condition of Orphans and Pupils better, who were tormented in their parents and spoil'd of all their fortunes. A long and terrible Hiltory should be writ by me, who saw all this lamer table practife, if I would relate every part of this calamity, namely how all things both divine and humane were in a confusion. There was no regard to promite, no respect of Religion, all things were done with a facrilegious rashnesse. Death was every where, and there was no place to escape it: and to live amongst drawn swords and cruelt men was impossible. The City was kept by a most vigilant Guard, that none might break forth of that common prison for all the Citizens, to relate to the Inhabitants of the Kingdome, the order of this cruell dealing; for had the multitude of the people that was at liberty perceived it, they had left none of this wickednesse unrevenged.

CHAP. XVIII. More of the ernelty of the same King.

Which when the King observed, reposing all his safety in slight, after a few dayes he was forced to return from thence to his own Country of Desmark: in which journey he caused many to be broken upon wheels, and hanged, and put to other cruell deaths, quartering them. Especially amongst the Offrogothi in Vasten, the Land of Brigit. Lastly in the Monastery at Nydalum, called so from the new dale: where though he were most humanely entertained,

G.

vet

yet on the day of the bletted Virgin's purification, he commanded the Abbot with 7. Monks, when they had ended the facrifice of the Altar, to have their hands bound behind them, and to be cast into a swift River and drown'd: and when the Abbot who was of a strong nature, broke the cords and swom to Land, the Kines guard beatt out his brains. So, little children of a noble family of the Ribbingi of Vestrogothia, whom a barbarous enemy is wont to patdon, were killed with the sword in his sight: whereupon 30000 armed men being collected under him, he being guilty in himself, he returned into Denmark through defarts and unpassable places almost, rather by night than by day, where he not long stayed secure, but was in the same sear. For same was so swift that it was every where reported what he had done before he came; especially amongst the Emperors subjects in Hollande & Braban, andether Nations: where he was lately in glory and high honour, before he had committed such an unhumane slaughter upon so many innocent Children.

ter upon lo many innocent Children. Let Saxo the Danish Historian speak in his 12. Book, in all his circumspection, as we alleadged before in the 37. Chapter, whether this fad spectacle, was any profit to the Danes, whether by inflicting cruell torments and tortures; or by clemency, modelly, equity, and other vertues, Kingdoms are to be won, and preferred: Truly he will confesse by experience that the Danish severity spoken of in his former books, and here again upon this fact of Christiernus, gain'd more Infamy, horror, cruelty, and despite to the Kingdom and the Kings thereot, than if they had been just, and humain: unlesse perhaps they would glory in malice, when using fraud they think themselves to be potent in wickednesse, that they may use deceit, as cutpurses do, but God forbid. For who can fecurely hold commerce and friendship with such men? who (as Saxo affirms, in his, 1. 4. c. uls.) hold it no fault nor foul matter to ly and to deceive. Let therefore their words be, It is, it is; Not, not; and all will believe them. Nor let good men think that I have faid what I have faid, for hate or malice against the Danish Nation, and their former actions, or against the severity of King Christiernus, but I have purposely left out far more terrible things, which cannot be read without groans and horrours, much leffe be fet down in Books. But the Danish nobility, after they had driven out the faid King Christiernus, fent out 44 Articles into the City and all the world, to be read publickely to excuse themselves, wherefore they revolted from that King. So also the Senatours of Swethland and Gothland and Norway, both before and after at fundry times excused themselves, in Books and Letters. But why I do write more bitterly than others yet more truly and sparingly, he is bold to testify, because with my great danger and sorrow, I was prefent and beheld all these Tragedies grieving to see the miseries of my Nation, which now feem to be increased a thousand times, and without remedy, made worse by the wicked constitutions of Laws, and oppressions of the Subjects.

The End of the Eighth Book.

a chi

Polest by choice the Special S



or with a back of the sort of

tit was will the is latelaugh-

in all er this ments sedoms

fact of gdom pertrobe od for-

men? men? dall

ons, t fat

i sil

and

m.I

Olaus Magnus the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

OF

Field-Fights.

An Epitome of the Ninth Book.

CHAP. I.

Of turning-Swords in Wheels.

He old Goths are known to have opposed in the way Engines like to Wheels, and turning-Swords, to break the Orders of Horic and Foot, when they were to make a fudden Onfet or Retreat; and at this day, though not fo usually as they were wont, where place requires it they diligently oppole them: Now the maner of this Engine may be taken thus. There feems at first three Wheels, two higher, that turn about an Axeltree, and there is a third in the middle of thele, which is united to one of them by way of commissure; and this necessarily causeth a two-edged Sword, fastned to the former Polesto move (wiftly; which so turning Sword, being raised up on the sides by those that are cunning movers of it, and being brought near, doth not a little rend and break the Enemies Ranks: yet this is wont to be well looked to, that the Spokes of the Wheels may be covered with Shingles of plain Boards, left Spears being cast in between them by the Enemy, they should be stopt from moving. Also the higher and nimbler the Wheels are, the more wide doth the Sword cut. And there are poles or pieces of wood to guide the fword, that are above three or four foot long, longer then any Souldiers Lance, that the Drivers of it may be the more fafe from the affaults of Horsemen; and these are senced behind with Troops of Bow-men. But the Axeltrees of these Wheels, that they 0, 2 may

The man To see that Go be be po

A winding by the

may run the iwifter, are greated with Sea-Calves greace, that is well purified at the fire, and there is plency of this amongst the Northern Merchants: whence keing provided by the diligence of Factors, it is carried in huge Vellels in a valt quantity, both to the Upper and Lower Germany to make profit by. With this Engine the force of the Enemy is broken oft-times or troubled, as a large piece of Wood is cleft with a strong and sharp Wedge.

the Marie along both of their Charles with Hooks. The sale of the

For this fallion, of old time, the chief Souldiers of Sweden and Guthland A wind Chariors with Hooks and Gramp-Irons, amongst their chief Wartike Engines; especially in their more herce fights, against the most strong Armies of the Germans, Daves, Engles, namely to, that having fearthed by what may the Emenny would emerabey bound their empty Chariots, with their Wheels well finestodes from Beams, in the thelving fides of the Mountains, and filling them with themescher would with cords make them little hanging bridges, comming chesa all over with green leaves or boughs, until they had drawn the Ememies by this dangerous pallage, into these states, by seeming to tun away from them; and so they would let soose their Charlots, which with swift running, would exther break their Ranks, by reading them, or would disperse their bodies. This being done they that before feemed to fly, and the other Troops they had, Hunfe or Foot, were work to run in a body upon the disperied, or refilting Enemy : allio cher exercice choic Chariots, as movable Forts, when need was in all other fights, always observing that moderation inviolably, that these Charior-dimens had corace as much of the spoil given them, and their stipend double to the housemen; and likewife to them, who running amongst the Enemy, put him man Braighes, and suppliable places, with these Chariots that had long Poles on the fides while from Crooks before, and those sharp pointed.

CHAP. 111.

Or must I omit in this place what Saw mentions, L. 9. concerning the crast of King Regresses, and his stratagems; For he taith, that in Hellessone, the King Dies being stratagem after many criticalities of War, that Regresses fought many critical figure, and was string by his two Sone, namely Dies and Danos: For these Sone who termetry married the Daughters of King Rechant, obtaining somes from wheir Fischer to Law, went boldly to revenge themselves on their Finder. And when Regress size their huge Army he despaired of Forces, and therefore the commanded that they should with all their might drive Brazen Hoses that would spit five, said upon curring wheels, and carried about with vertain Charicos, into the chickest body of the Enemies: And this prevailed to far no difference the Enemies forces, that there seemed more hopes of Victory in the Engine, that in the Soulcher; for the large weight of it over whelmed when ever it went against.

to gainer obligations on the entire and Societies there are the the property of the entire that the entire of the

whence Sin 1 vafe Withdis

or pas

T

Schlad

Watel

tries of

The E.

र्टा प्रशी

DE LOS

den :

suldici-

This Here 1:200 other

disess hair-

om:

to the

Of the Guns of the Northern People.

Here are Guns in most Cities of Sweden and Gothland fo greats that a Woodden Vessel, greater than a Roman Barrel for breadth and length, with an Iron Bullet, and pieces of Iron like a mans fift, of fix hundred pound weight and more fitted with Powder, and lighted with fire, with a most vehement force, as a Tempelinous Whirlwind, or Rain, is flot out; and nothing can fland against the violence of it: and also this is used in all fights on Land, or upon the Ice, so often as there is need of it. Also there are mean and very long great Guns, that will shoot forth balls of Earth. Also there are Petars that will shoot very high to fall amongst the Enemy : And the more formidable is this fight, when by such Gens (that are greater and larger than others) nor at one short or great noise, but with many crackers one after another, they are shot unto the places to be battered, and with the violent blow of them, the dust flies out of the walls, or places battered, as Clouds of Smoke, CHAP. V. CHAP. CHA

OF these Triangular Guns, there was formerly amongst the Swedes and Goths more use then there is now adays: For by this three-fold Engine, a mighty Army by renewing the forces, and other employing them, might be disperied, where the Wheels running swiftly against them, any, force of horses that came close together, might be stopt with a small handful. But by the fraud and deceir of the Mafters of the Ordinance, it sometimes falls out, that for Iron bullets they charge their guns onely with Towe or Paper, or else the Enemies coming on boldly, hinder the moving of the Wheels, by thrusting onely their Spears between the spokes.

CHAP, VI. the man of selection of

Of Organ-like Guns.

A Life the Northern people had amongst other Engines of War, especially when they were to fight with Horsemen, collateral Guns, bound together Lio the Northern people had amongst other Engines of War, especially like Organs, or Organ-pipes, that they might discharge them all at once, er facceffively against their Enemies, and they could soon charge them with ball and powder upon every turn against the Enemy; which though they seemed in fair weather to make heavy Wars, and bravely to defend their own Camps: yer because the more frequent and bitter Wars, (as I shall say hereafter) are sought by the Northern people, in the terrible cold Winter, when the Snow is very thick, and then they cannot use their Canon; therefore are they seldome used in the fields, but more frequently in Castles, to defend the besieged.

to discontinuit blances, which nevert kept yields and so workshousen

司经打

ter

pi.

胡

100

the Con the fine but his San it w

the

thi

tie

Por

did

VICE

they

this thes tria

ADY

ann

Way.

经行行

Mild then

放送

mos

Of the burning the Foundations of Castles.

In plain and Champion-Grounds, where, by accord or choice of the Enemy, or by event of time and occasion, there is an opportunity to fight, the Inhabitants of the Countries, that they may affault the enemy the tironger, or for a time decline him with greater caution, use great Gons, with wheels, which are also called the Camps for the Cannon whole waggoners, no lesse than the standard beavers, or rather Commanders, are armed, and the very horfes have tanned Ox-leather on their Necks and Backs: wherefore four skillfull Cannoneers or more, are deputed for these Guns on both fides; and these use what are they have, the waggoner helping with his skill and valour, against the enemy, that being cut on the front or wing, he may not easily reful armed horie-men.

S) seed stends asso well as CHAP. VIII.

Of burning the Foundations of Forts.

He prints of the Old rains in the Northern Kingdomes do thew clearly enough, how many most strong places, built upon Rocks, and unaccessible places were blown up by artificiall flames raifed underground by mines, as if they had been rent and torn with thunder. For when many fuch forts were found made to pillage and rob with especially on the frontiers of provinces, by common arms, and the unanimous content of the Nation, and by the decree of the Judg , the Inhabitants were called together, and they fell upon them, and did by wonderfull arts demolish them, by this means : for they entered into the most ruinous places of the mountains, and they broke them, with hammers, axes, wedges, and other Instruments that are to hew stones and break down walls, with a strong hand, or were it a natural hollow cave, by means of such Tools they would by degrees cut the tops of it on that lide, where the foundation was naked of defence, ferting up posts in order, upon which the weight of the walls might be born up, that the whole frame might not prefently tall down and be dissolved. But, that the noyle of the sones falling might not be heard, on the other fide of the fort armed men made as great notice and shooting either fainedly or seriously leaping upon it to assau t it. But when the wall where it was stretched over the cave, was made all hanging, that it refled only on the props of wood, they gathered dry fuel every where, and call if into the fire, and prefently the posts yelloed to the weight that lay upon them; and all that part of the fort that was underpropt with wood, funk into the hollow cave, and the turrets over against it, and forts, were soon broken off from the places where they joyned, and sell down; all the doors and gates were fast united, being shaken down with the like ruinc. and the formatted of Hade I =) was well and the formatte in the formatte

Vincer, winderelec Snow is sary CHAP. IX.

Of the cruelty of flatterers, Traitors, and strangers, often committed most fearfully in the Kingly City Stockholm.

Tockholm is the most famous City for merchandise of all the Kingdome of Sweden, and of all the North, where Citizens were wont to be made free of all Countries and Nations, but chiefly out of the Netherlands; and amongst those ofttimes they are mingled, who either for debt, or some toul crimes dare not flay in their own Country: these as they grow rich we ofttimes to discover their Natures, which poverty kept close, and to work the utmost milchief he Ens

nheels,

no lelle

he very

17 Skill ...

d thele

lgain(t

atmod

office

ines,

fuch

od by

fell

they

15,

120

cies

¢2\$

mt

訓

即山山

III:

西山田の出

mischief to a Country where they were received in a very hospitable way; especially when they have such a King to rule them that lets them do what they Such were the Germans found to be in the City Stockholm in the dayes of King Albertus; who conspiring secretly being 170, in number, called themfelves the hooded bretheren: and afterwards their number increased to above 1500. Their chief aime was by catting fcorns and reproaches upon the native Swedes to provoke them to quarrels and diffentions, that at length being brought before the King they might deprive them of life or fortunes, or both; as afterwards it fell out. For, that they might rend them in peices most cruelly with most exquisite torments, they made taws of wood, wherewith they tormented the chiefest of them to unto death, that a man would rather lament the horriblenesse of so cruell a deed, than write of it. At last, the rest of the Citizens of Sweden, at midnight being carried forth alive from the King's Cafile, where they were kept Captives, in Ships to the next Island that was a bowshoot from thence called Keplinge, were shut up in a certain house, with their fingers rivered tast in holes in the wall, by knocking in of wedges, and were burnt with fire cast upon them, they were more than we can affirm them to have been: for as sheep tied together many were thrown in to be burnt. Of this City, Albertus Crantzius speaks thus. Stockholme the noted Mart Town of Sweden, suffered a great mischief; for, being thunder stricken from heaven, it was almost all burnt down. There died 1600, men; but that is more milerable which follows; women and smaids number esse carried their goods and children into the ships, but the presse was so great of those that sought to run from the fire, that in a moment they were all drown'd.

Of the Original and scienation of this Kingly City.

His chief City of the Swedes and Kingly place Stockholm, was built from the foundation, by a most illustrious and famous man who was the King's Turour, whose name was Roger Ierl, and he forrished it with walls and other buildings in so fit necessary and invincible a place, that it is supposed that he could never have done any thing more commodiously. For it is a place that is on all fides fortified with Torrents (& was formerly only for Fishermen's ule) and is so placed between fresh and salt water, that it may be called the Port of all Sweden. For formerly the Effones, Muscovites, Ruffians, Tavefthis did constantly pass through the mouth thereof, and plundred the Swedes privately, who suspected no hostility: and destroying great multitudes of men, they treely, and unpunished, loaded with great booties, returned to their own Countries. In which incursion they flew John the second Arch-Bishop of Upfal, in his own mansion house Alme-Steck, and some other Noble men. But when this Stockholm was built, all and every man enjoyed a long peace, and the enemies were in continuall fear, who finding such a strong Garison raised for the time to come against all enemies, forbare to plunder Sweden any farther. If any man shall presume to beleaguer this Stockholm and think to take it, he can never win it; though he should continue resolute in the siege thereof every way. For it is fituate in the most deep waters, and most swit Rivers having only two Gates on the fouth and North parts with long bridges between them, which Gates and Bridges cost the Kings of Denmark more money in a siege that came to nothing, than ten the greatest Cities of his Kingdome. Nor can it be befieged, but by 3 most potent Armies, divided into Islands that are parted by firm land and water, yet those Armies can never be secure from bowmen that will put them into fear. Let him try that will, and he shall find it

fight in any story, or pure, and a

CHAP. XI.

of the Situation of the Mountain Bruncaberg, beyond the Kingly City Holm, and of the bassels fought init.

Vichout this Kingly City toward the North, there is a high mountain or hill of Sand; upon the top whereof, and the oblique fides, there have been fought many cruell battails of Princes, Nobles, Citizens, Country people, both in former and latter ages, as well by imbred as forrain enemies, concerning which because my most dear brother D. Johannes Arch-Bilhop of Upfal hath written many things most true; and namely in his Gothick and Swedish Histories, I need not tire the Reader to repeat them; yet with this exception, that Christiernus King of Denmark the first of that name, flying from this mountain the Dalaearli following him in amost tharp battel, unto the forts of his warlick fleet, loft his four upper reeth by the blow of a Musket, as the age next following, boafted of it in fongs and comporations. Besides, Christierns the 2d, had much a do to carry off his army that was fick and hungry, from this Mountain by water to his Navy that rode behind the Mountaines on the South fide of this Holm. Yet not there could be refresh his hungry army but by falle covenants, that he offered to the Prince of the City and Kingdome, and Inhabitants, and so had received necessary food and provision, by the toolishly periwaded Citizens, for his Army, and from the King's own Table, by a most liberall donation. But how he gave fatisfaction for his Kingly honour, which must defend his repuration to posterity, I leave it as it was in part written by others, long before this relation. Namely that breaking his faith he carried fix of the most noble pledges of the Kingdome against their wills into Denmark with him. A'lo this mountain hath got its name from one Bruncho in respect of the event, who was a traitor to the Kingdome; and a most filthy adulterer. There was also formerly in this Mountain a Cave under ground, where sometimes there lived Hermits, who gave warning for the lafety of those that should depart out of that City, untill such time as wars came (wherewith that City is often afflicted) then they departed to some other place, and that place was turned to a den of Theeves, and it being again freed of them, it lies filled up with earth, that it may ferve for no murderer, nor any that meditate on wicked devices.

Of feeding their eattle in the houses of the besieged.

Mand Sea, with such obstinate Souldiers, that they will suffer nothing to be brought in to solace or preserve the besieged, but all things are taken away by the armed men, in the greatest danger, from the enemies themselves, and are carried forth; and oftimes upon that occasion the fight is made so fiercely, that for taking away a few cattle, many thousand Souldiers lose their lives: and whilst they strive deadly for the Cattle, the fields are filld with the dead bodies of the slain men. Not are the besieged repressed with that blood and sury. For the first years they strive by force, as when the besieged are weakened with continuall slaughters, they contend by cunning, slights, and Snares, to take from the besiegers their provision, especially cattle, and what they can catch they hade in the grassy paths of their houses to be fed. But there is great observation to be made, concerning the customes of the Gorhs, how they do very handsomely feed their cattle within doors.

For

F on the

1年 日 日 日 日 日 日

日の世の日本田田田田

but seed with the seed of the

四四年五年四日

uni of it Mercin

there

COLLA

onics,

and and

from

lorts as the

britis.

trom

t the

y but

forms,

the the

ble,

oon-

part

faith

scho

For they build high and large from houses, and of Wood also, which they cover with Rafters of Fir-Trees, and Bark of Birch-Trees, by exquisite industry, laying upon them square Turks of graffe, cut out of the fields; and this they tatten the better, by lowing it with Barley or Oats; and so these houses shew like green fields, and serve for the same use. But that the grafs of their houses may not wither before it be gathered; they use to water their houses diligently: to necessity instructs these valiant men, that they will resist against the benegers beyond the force of men, and will avoid them, and overcome all want, despising all advertity.

CHAP. XIII.

Of supplying their want of water.

Rom this occasion, for want of fresh meat, and it may be a greater want of Water, here I shall shew how the Northern people being beneged, amongst other remedies for necessity, take care to provide themselves with Water. For fometimes the belieged are in such want of Spring or Pit-waters, (by reason of the Besiegers) that they must either yield, or fall deiperately sick, or dye inevitably: Wherefore the wife Governours of Forts or Ciries, hang Sails or Webs of Cloch, concavely bended, and stretched out very far in length from the tops of their houses, and they falten them beneath Wedge-fashion, and to fit them to catch the Rain or Diew that fall from above. And it is to the purpose, because the Water they receive by the frequent meeting of the Snows, are so great that fall from the Mountains, when the Sun melts them, that they are sufficient for all men and beafts, for their use and necessity. Lastly, they that have Veins of the Salt Sez, or Springs, that come up under the Foundations of their Forts, they purify them, by often diffilling them through Veffels full of Sand, and fo they make fresh Water, and fit for all uses, and as good; onely by this simple art. As the Senators of Venice not many years fince, bought fuch an Art of diffilling Water from a certain Alchymist, because they dwell in Salt-Waters, and amongst Sea-Weeds.

CHAP. XIV. How to supply want of Bread.

Hen the Goths and Swedes are to enter the Hoffile Lands of the Moscovites, they often find them, by reason of the coming of a formidable Army, not onely to fly suddenly away to the Caves or Woods, and Rocks, but fetting their houses on fire, to carry into these Defarts with them, all things necessary for mans use, leaving nothing that can be eaten by the Enemy that come. Upon which occasion, the provident Generals of Armies, after the manner of the old Gaths, left their great Army should fall with hunger, sooner then with the Sword, ate wont to bind a good quantity of Wheat-Meal behind the faddles of the Horfe-men, in facks appointed for this ale, with an Iron-plate; and prefently, as need requires, they kindle a fire, and make Cakes upon thefe Plates, as if they were bakt in an Oven: yet they all me thele Plates for Bucklers, (as they are made after that fashion) to defend their bodies, and so they most prudently feem to borrow two necessary conveniences from one thing, to ferre them in the Wars. For they bake bread under the Ashes, made of this lump of Dough, and they wrap it in the thin bark and leaves of Poplar Trees, and cover it with hot Embers; and though this feems to be bale bread, yet it fooner takes off their greedy appetite, and is fitter for firong flomachs, than any other White or Brown-Bread,

They have allo a third way easier than the former, whereby they make bread in plain Mountains that they often meet with: For they make huge fires in one or two or three places of the Mountain (for they have wood enough athore for nothing) until that part be all over hot enough, and well purged, that they may foon bake a round or square Cake upon this Hearth. In the interim, they burn wood constantly upon other parts of that Mountain which are near, to bake more bread upon, and when they have purged this place, as they did the former, they make it most fit for this use; and thus they will in a short time make many thousands of loaves: by the plenty whereof, a whole Army is kept from deadly Famine many days, and enters into the Enemies Country, and wastes and destroys the same every where with fire and sword-unless there be a Covenant made to hinder it; and laded with huge spoils, they retreat, and can think it to be none or very small calamity they have suffered, which they see recompensed with so great enjoyments and abundance of wealth.

The land of the control of the contr

The end of the Ninth Book.

And the North Consequence of the organization of Workers and Andrew with the organization of the organizat

control of the contro

doep

pair it ocep en compe to remain compe find;

THE PERSON NAMED IN

bloowing A rodrea Haw as

t many deadig

and demade to be

Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

Sea-Fights. was a base of the second and the second

The Epitome of the Tenth Book.

salve demon trem to CHAP. I.

Of Fights in Lakes, and of Bridges broken down.

LL the North Countrey almost is Mountainous and Woody, and there are many places that are naturally fortified both by Waters and Rocks against the Incursions of Enemies; so that against an Army of Horse or Foot, they will with a small Company keep themselves secure almost every where; and many Lakes are so muddy and unpassable, and deep, that they will scarce freeze in the coldest Winter, that a Footman can lafely pals lightly over them. Rotabro is such a place, amongst the rest, that are also deep enough: it is called to, as much as to lay, the broken Bridge, it is two hours journey from Stockholm, the Kings City aforelaid; from which City, when as an Army in hostile manner presumes to march forth very far into these rich Countries to plunder, coming from the Discions or Germans, prefently they are forced to retreat to the place they came from, repulled, by the Forts and Arrows of the Inhabitants gathered together in the middle of the Woods; or elfe by force they compell the Inhabitants to retire themselves into some other place that they can find: and to (which feldome falls out) they fly to this bridge in the Marthes, and fland unmoved in the greatest Conflict. For breaking of a most long wooden bridge, there being a great Bog on both fides, the Enemy can find no occasion to offer violence to Nature that is so strangely fortified. There have been many

面你你即都你你在有有

fom

and

they

then

thei

109

god,

byp

blok

飲品

Min

Bit.

tim

too &

Non

西山

most terrible Wars fought there often, in the times of divers Princes, as the Songs ung every where in Verle and Mother-tongue at Fealts, with mirth and joy do retifie; namely that by Art, Nature, Force and Experience of the old Soidiers, and industry and fidelity of the Commanders, they wanthe Victory, which was very great.

CHAP. TI.

Of the form and use of the old Northern Ships.

He progress and end of wars in the Marshes in the Northern Kingdoms, hold I this charge and change with a forrain Enemy; that when it talis out amis, (as it oft hapneth, by reason of the ignorance of the places) the Commanders have a certain refuge through places unpassable, and Delarts, and Woods, a shorter way to their fhips that are this in tome fure Harbour; and as at first they marched continually, as often as one challenged the other, or they both alike challenged one the other, perhaps for tome imali matter to fight a battel, as for tavishing of Maids or to be ravished (as Sawe, the Danish Historiographer, mentions, that it hath been frequently done in the Northern Kingdoms between the moli potent Princes, a most bloody War being fought by them), to they returned with dilgrace, and great lois : therefore they made their thips formerly, long or broad, as the Rivers were narrow or wide: as in the Ocean toward Norway, they are spacious; also in the Spanish Seas their ships are long and broad : but in the Gathick Seas, and of Sweden, that run by their shores, their ships ore short and broad especially such as are for burden; and they must be so, by reason of the narrow Waters that have to many Turnings and Windings. Of old time every Province, even that was far from the Sea, kept their thipping in tome fafe Port, or near the shore, under some covering, and all their Tackling belonging to them, such as I have seen on the shore of Norway: And lastly, of Swedland; which thips, when necessity came, were fuddenly tent forth, well rigged and provided with Tackling, Arms, Provision, and Souldiers, as well as that Age would afford it, to make an Expedition by Water, in a great or small number by the Princes Command; yet they were all to diftinguilhed by their Flags, Colours, and Names, that whatfoever Conflict they had with the Enemy, they were alway, governed by the Order of their Officers withour any confusion : unless they were carried violently, and parted in the Sea unhappily by some imperuous Whirlwindselpecially a Southern Wind; for that Wind is as deadly here, as an Falierly Wind is in Hellefpont,

chie chesite de de de CHAP. III.

Mitting many kinds of ships, that agree almost in their sashion with the chips of any other Nation onely differing by the names of the Countrey, I shall speak here alone of those, that by a more common name are demonstrated tor a general knowledge, as are Galleys, Hulky, Barks, Wherries, Ferry-Boats for Hotles, which are shage great, by reason of the multitudes of Horses that are to be transported from the Northbeyond Seas into Germany. Moreover these are ships of Wat, whereof there was one so great that was built for Gustavan, King of Ameden, that it could carry forth a thousand armed Souldiers, and three hun-ored Mariners that are excellent souldiers, and there were huge great ships, besides very many appointed for Sea-sights. Moreover the same King first brought in the use of two Ours, three and sour Oars, about the year of Christ, 1540, in the Gustack, and Smedish Seas, by means of skilling Vinetians, that he hired with his liberal bounty, e.g. in that he might the sooner conquer and subdue the Mustinessian and Esthorian Pirats, that invaded his Countrey, and had often broken their

Dom

the when a raticourage

OF SWEELAND

their Leagues, and now his Finlanders, that are very skilled Carpenters, know how to make Galleys as ffrong and good, or better then they were, is I have feen force made with excellent skill among to the Venetians, but they cannot make them to tudden y to be ready to fail for the War, as they can, who in the space of one moneth can make of the wood not yet framed 60 thips, or more, for to go to Seasprovided with Arms, Guns, and Victuals, Moreover they had Barks, Boars, Pinnaces, Galleys, Frigats, Ship-Boats, and the like. Moreover, Wherries are much nied by the Northern people, because they are easily made hollow of great Fir-Trees and Oakes, that they will hold 20 or 30 men; those that are leis, are used by Fisher-men.

CHAP. IV.

Of the mutual flaughter of the Merchants, for the Harbours of Iceland.

It is a miserable spectacle of Factors, that fall foul one upon the other, either ac home or abroad, and kill one the other for g in, or put all their Merchandize in danger to be lottor to revenge their Kindred. They cannot look upon this with eyes open, and at Noon day, to consider what Robbings and pillaging they are subject unto every where, unless they knew how to manage their weapons, and to fight to defend themlelves. Amongst there are the chief, as it is supposed the Bremers, or the Cities of the Vandals, the Rost schians, Vifmarians, and Lubekers. And laftly the Merchants of England and Scotland; who fo Hifly contend for the primacy and priviledge of the Iceland Ports to ride in, as if they fought a fight at Sea, and fo wound one the other for gain, that whether the one or the other gets the Victory, yet there is always ready one of the Officers of the Treasury, who knows how to correct them both sufficiently, both in their moneys and bodies, either by ordinary or extraordinary Exaction,

CHAP. V

Mhow 39A 21172E on we reduced Of the punishment of the Rebellions Marriners.

A Sthere are Laws and Orders appointed for all forts and conditions of men, whereby men may live more honeftly, justly, and warily: to in Sea matters, and rational bulinefles, Cultomes are made and observed strictly : of which kinds (though they be innumerable, I think he, at least, to let you understand fome of them that are the most general. He therefore that moves a Sedition, and lets upon the Captain or Mafter of the ship, or shall prefume to affault him, or thall pernicionally tallifie the Marriners Compais, especially the Needle which they all treer by or shall commit any such like horrid wickedness in the ship, for the most partsif his life be spared, he must pu'l away his hand he useth most commonly, which they fasten to the Mast of the ship, or some chief piece of wood in the ship, with a (word or knife, and cut it in the middle: But he that is tumul-tuous, and injurious is tied with Ropes on one fide of the ship, where he is plunged in, and he is drawn up under the back on the other fide : and if there be need by realon of the water he took in that he may not be inflocated he is laid on his back or belly. But some being well known by the foulness of their Crime, or for their Rebellion or Treaton, especially in a fight at Sea, are cast into the Sea alive least they should destroy the whole Fleet by their wicked devices. The rest for imall faults easily obtain pardon, asking it at the Fore-Caffle : or before they come into it they are raken by their fellows; and wrested thrice at the Sail-yard, or Maft, and endure that punishment, turned as though they beheld the Stars at Noon-day. Thele, and the like, and greater punishments, as need requires, are med often more firstly by the conflictations of the most ancient City Visite, in the Island of Gothland, that is by a perpetual right subject to the Dominion of

withthe murey, I DANGE THE CO Boursot at inte chere are wo King

1 at the

par qua

plosoid

VICTORY,

ms, 6614

aumili,

panders

a thor-

ich they

oth zink 15 Mg

ct, men-

ren the

they to-

armerly,

to Nor-

broad:

Ste Room

FTCMOD.

old time

interfate

gingto edland;

and proe would

bythe colours,

were alun eis

DECEMOUS.

15 25 25

benoute ol intic ables lito Majbroken

their

ce bun-

ins, be-

in in

ini

Arm

623

arqu

WILL

with lath

heal

thin

den

cher

Ayr

11 (0)

atte

the King of the Swedes and Goths. And though that City was formerly most potent and exceeding rich and was humbled for a very small occasion, namely for breaking of one pane of glass of a window, nor worth a half peny: yet the Laws for Sea Affairs, and the diecitions of all Controversies severally, star and wide, as far as Hercules his Pillars, and the utmost Seythian Sea, are fetcht from thence, and are observed, being given, that all things may be done in a due tranquillity, that may be sit and agreeing to peaceable Commerce.

unqui inconcerdente mingras, facerare, diev. are esa y mara nol uny di great inte-Leccasion) desgrebate annante, IVI. VI. CHAP. a chode that are tree are used

Of the swimming of Horsemen.

Hough it be no less unhappy than it is rash, for an armed Hosseman or Poorman, to venture himlelt to fwim in his Armour : yet because the Goths would we all means to adorn Military buliness, they have left nothing unartempred that is fit for Military Exercise: Wherefore they were so cunning in the art and me of twimming, that oft-times in their Armour, riding on Hories, they would wim over great parts of Rivers, between their Enemies Armies, either to fight orfly. Nor was their Industry the less to use their Horses to the Cultome of swimming, is Cornelius Taeius affirms of the Germans, whose most noble practice it was to teach their Horles to swim, and to take the Waters boldly on Horseback, when the Horses had skill to swim. Not is Saxo his Testimony in this Case to be omitted; for he saith, that one Biorno of Norway, a noted Champion, had a very well made horse, which was exceeding swift, and so couragious that he would never faint in (wimming over a roaring Whirl-pool; the Water whereof runs to twift and downward, that all other Creatures almost were fired out and drowned in it : yet he lost that Horse, Friderus, a most valiant Champion, putting him to his faifts, (of whom I spake before in the fifth Book) and in respect of the stony and unfortunate place he was in ; and at lest by a stratagem of his Enemies, and the errour of his horse, he was taken prisoner, so that Sejanus horse seems no where for fashion or nature to be wanting. But that the Horles of the Gothi are faid to be fo well skill'd in swimming, there is a neceffary cause for it, by reason of their great and broad Rivers every where. For there can hard y be any Battails fought amongst the East or West Goths, the Finlanders, Ruffians, or Mufcovites, but they must swim over huge swife Rivers.

kinds (shoughthe, be consected at 1 making or less to let you endestend tome or them that a feet on the Carlotte mover a Sedition, and let you the Carlotte or LIVX . A AHO or that prefume to all sult bim,

Of the swimming of their Foot Souldiers in Arms especially Too form the boat of such as are fat,

monty which they follen to the Mail or the fluip, or tome chief piece of wood in

I Shall here alleadge a fingular Example out of Saxo, of one Sivardus of Norman, who after that he had shewed many famous Actions in the Wars, was intercepted by the Enemies, and was carryed in a ship to be drowned in the deep Sea. As if he would precede his funeral by funeral Solemnities, he made the Marriners drunk, buying drink for that purpose; and when they were merry, he defired of them, as the last thing he should ask, that he might steer the ship; and desiring the Marriners to sail fatter, when he saw the ship run very swiftly, he cast away the Flelm, and threw himself headlong into the Sea, and came to shore before the ship could, and so killed King Harald unawares of him. Asterwards sighting a Sea-sight with them, by a most incredible and gailant courage, he alone, for a good space, defended his ship from the Enemies, when his Company was killed,



Prince

per t

P 5

by to

tuch Tall

Line

in bac

leeso

Citale

Garage

thir i



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UP SAL:

OF

Wars upon the Ice.

An Epitome of the Eleventh Book.

CHAP. I.

Of the Bloody Wars in the Northern Countries.

E E find in the Chronicles of the North Countries, both of old, as of later time, that oft-times most cruel Fights have been sought between the Russians or Musicovites, and the Swedes or Finlanders, for divers very weighty causes, both by Sea and Land, and the plain Ice, and thick deep Snowes; and sometimes as it happed, now one, then another got a notable Victory, as Fortune changed; and this again was a lamentable affliction to the Conquered. The cause of this difference is from the Circumstances of Time, Places, and Commanders, that in such cases hasten a speedy occasion: Wherefore there are two most strange Castles, the one whereof, a deep Gulph being between, belongs to the Dominion of the great Mr. of Livonia, (for so is the Prince of that great Province called) the other belongs to the great Duke of Moscovie. But one called Narven is subject to the Government of the Christian Livonians, and another to the Schismatical Moscovites. The Fort that is subject to the Moscovites, is so so fortified by Nature, by the Waters that run round it, and the Forces there, and thinks it self so safe, that it sears the Asaults of no Enemies, be they never so mighty.

But

both of

nes have

and the

s. book

mes as a

ed; and

les,the

n of the

ne other A coche

1 16/-

inc, by

that

But this madnefle as it proved falle, to it felt an inevitable calamity. For the most inlustrious Princes of the Swedes and Gaths, Stene that was before Sinr, and Suamo, being provoked by many great injuries and trauds of the Moscovites, after most high wars and damages by the Moscovites, brought upon potent provinces, and people, letting upon an army of 50000, armed men, and the forelaid Fore of the Mulcouries, with fire and fword (whilest their friends in the Cathes of the Livenians looked on) they won with incredible fucy, that the Molcovites being cruelly wounded, and many flain and burnt, could carie fave themleives by running away. And this Fort being taken, the Princes of the Swedes and Goths aforetaid and their Souldiers got an ineffimable spoil of Silver, and couly Sabel skins, that from thence they ever gloried, that for the great troub es they had inflain'd in fights, as well in hot as cold weather, they now triumphed, loaded with great plunder. But these rich booties, as they were to the conquered enemies an inrecoverable loffe and grief, to they canled such discords among the forefaid Princes, and their triends and peop e, and inch a permeious and implacable hatred, that from thence alterwards ato'e the mine of the Kingdomes. Wherefore this fort, taken from the enemies by force of Arms, when as the great Mr. having it freely given to him for a gitt, by the conquering Swedes, feared to annex it to his dominions, the conquering army left it, putting fire to it, first having taken out all the rich spoil that was in it, and returned by Finland, Sweden and Gothland: yet there was fuch abundance of Wax left in the faid Caffle (whereof the Eastern factors make a valt gain, and it is a rich tribute for the Governours) because they could not carry it away with them, it being to beavy, that it melted in the flames and made fuch a steem that one might have failed a great way with

CHAP. IL. Of Fights upon the Ice.

Dor do the Sweder and Goths fight against the Moscovites or Russians that break their leagues with a hot desire of Rapin on the borders of the Finland Sea, with lesse agernesse on the brittle Ice, than they do on the most firm Land: and as I laid before, where they fought in Summer most fierce navall battails, in the very same places, when the Ice is frozen, they set their armies in battail array, and place their Canons, and fight horribly. So firm is the Ice to bear troops of horsemen at a distance or drawn up close in a body. Nor let it seem strange or incredible to any, especially to any Italian, how the horses hoofs can stand tast upon the slippetry Ice, nor onely to run with the greatest violence, but also to wheele about, and run round to fight with an armed enemy. For the horses are made fit for it by having their feet shood with crooked Itons, and sharp nails, that the rider need never fear falling, be the Ice never so smooth, also such pieces of Ice are cut up with the horses shoots, when they run away, and are east into the sace of him that sollows, that he is knocked down dead with them, or wounded not easy to be cured.

Of the breaking forth of the Moscovices or Russians.

He Moscovites for the most part go forth not so much to war as to plunder, keeping either very little or no military order at all; especially those that enter the borders of the Kingdome of Sweden, and of the great Dukedone of Finland to fight or pillage; as it is recorded in the Annals of the same Kingdome, especially in the year of our Lord 1495, when they came

with 60000 men. The cause of their inrode they made to be, their demand again of 3. parishes adjoyning namely Egrebpe, Lasche, and Savalox, as it they did rather belong to them than to the Kingdome of Sweden. But the truth is to great a flood came in by the provocation of John King of Denmark, that a mighty Province of Sweden being subdued, he might bring part of it under the Dominion of the Moscovites, and part of it should be joyned to the territories of the faid King of Denmark; as afterwards, a few years being path, Anno 1500. in the Kingly City Holm, the Moscovites Embassadours propounded it to the same King John in the Lent, affirming that this Leange was confirmed between both Princes by killing the holy Croffe folemnly to humble and fibdue the Crown of Sweden. But both parts became vain juddenly in their Imaginations, that King John was forced to fly in halfe into his Denmark, (leaving Queen Christina a Gallant woman descending of the Dukes of Misnia) and the great fumultations forces of the Moscoviter were humbled by force and were driven away like Thiefs; and compelled to get them gone to their habitations at home, reseiving such a notable defeat, that he never durit any more, by the Danes pertivation, or of his own prelumption attempt to come upon the Dominions of the Kingdome of Sweden. How ever it is, fince the Kingdome of Denmark, as Saxotaith, is contain'd in a very narrow Land, he uleth importunely, and craftily to provide that he may Ufurp the valt Dominions of Sweden, Gothland, Finland, that are near him, by the confederacy, and affiitances he obtaines from many Princes, especially of Ruffia, or Moscovia, from the East; and from the West of the Sents or French, and Germans from the South: all these Nations joyning together and coming into Sweden to subdue it, sooner find aurave than a victory. A streets one trace the street

CHAP. IV. Of a fearfull founding Cave, the Common people call Smellen.

TE have shewed in the former Chapter that the Ice is so strong that it can easily bear troops of armed horse and foor. And now I shall show that there is a cave under the Earth near Viburgus a City near the thore, which is a clote neighbour to the fame Lands of the Moscovites, that hath such a secret force, that if a living Creature be call into it, it will make fuch a horrible noite, that fuch as are near to it, according to the greatnesse of it, can neither hear nor speak nor stand; by which vehemency it kills more in a moment than the greatest Cannon, or elle it debilitates them. Nor doth this workmanship of Nature seem to be idle. For when any enemy comes on, the Governour of the Land bids all men to flop their ears with wax, and to hide themselves in caves and dens that they may live, and then fortifying himself, he casts in some living creature headlong into the mouth of the cave, or bound with a cord, whence there arrieth such a horrid noise, that the enemies that are belieging round about, fall down like sheep to the slaughter; and when they are fallen, if the Inhabitants will, they stay to, for a long space to be spoil'd by them. But the Conquerours find no pleasure to revenge themselves on them, when the enemies feem to be fo throngly oppressed by the power of nature, who as foon as they come to themselves, have no mind to fight but to run away, least if this noise should be heard again, and they should dy of it, or having got some mortall disease thereby, they should live but in a short time though they did fly. In which case it happeneth that they who cannot be subdued and repressed by arms from their warlike sury, are daunted by the only noise of nature, roring; and seldom or never recover their former firength.

CHAP. S.

A shop 100 Jels:

Sapa 1212 5743

the

citt adi

2/4 in th video bosh

the P

defare them (that a Plate o

PRINCE! 中山山 Marcha (27/19) DEED OF

COMP

IN LOOK

cemind is it they

e imeh is

i under

ne tem.

h Acres

midd it

n med

nd feb-

ear Im-

(lea-

in) and

M were

by the

or Do-

impor-

Sweley,

1: 00-

Ealt:

ner find

that it

Liber

ar the

, that

itnesle

th this

hide

felf,

ound

that

when

Pobp.

1 10

dy

e be

CHAP. V. Of the fame.

A More mi/erable and unhappy example of this calamity was once left to potterity by the Moscowites or Russians, above all other enemies, losing many thousands of their men, that they may learn not to proceed to oppresse their neighbour Nations by proud multitudes especially the Finlanders, giving them no cause so to do. For these Finlanders are wont to keep firmly themselves and their Country, by mutuall help, and by the Arms of Goths and Swedes, by Magicall Arts and the tecret force of the Elements. But whatsoever is the reason of this cave it must be alwayes held and governed by a provident Man, and that with many walls built round about it, because there is great power in the secret nature of it, as there is in other things.

Of the battail of the Finlanders against the Moscovines,

S the principallity of the great Duke of Moscovia, and of Russia is most la ge and molt potent; to also he enlargeth and extendeth the Title of his Government, as his last Letters testine that were lent by one Demetrius to Pope Clement the 7th. after this Style. The great Lord Bafiling, by the grace of God Emperour and Governour of all Russia, and great Duke of Volodemaria, Moscovia, Norvogrodia, Permia, Vetcha, Bolgaria, &c. the Lord and great Prince of Novogrodia the lower, Cernigovia, Razania Valotchia, Rozeria, Belchia, Roschovia, Jaroslavia, Belozeria, Vdoria, Obdoria, and Cordinia, Ge. Given in our City of Moscovia in the year from the beginning of the world 1307. April the 3d. But this to great and large Title is more admired by neighbour Nations, than feared by reason of his forces, especially the Finlanders, who often being provoked, do not leave off to beleaguet his mighty forces and to con pire against his Potent Tirles. Yet not so frequently in the field (unleffe the winter be extream fharp,) as in waters that are diwided into many Rivers and Lakes. But for the most part they are Robbers on both fides, who fight, as I faid in heat of plunder. And for this small occasion the Princes of the North will not fall to open wat.

CHAP. VII. Of the Molcovines way of Stealing.

He Ruffians or Moscovises have a most pernicious craft and subtilty in piracy, and robbing; as we shall shew briefly. For when they purpose to invade, like theeves the Careli or other neighbour Nations, they gather their men together, and instruct them by certain laws and agreements, and they make long light firr tree barks that will carry 20. or 25. men, and there are made in the defarts with plain and thin cloven boords, namely in this order, that some of them hew them hollow with axes, others boyl pitch in holes underground (that they may not be discovered by the smoke) from pine tree boughs, or pieces of them : some burn the points of their darts that they may be hard; others make ready their bows and tirings and arrows. For they have most fit matter for all such Instruments in their delarts. These Barks being made ready, they Theevilhly Lanch them into the waters like a Navy of Ships, and furnish them with arms; and then they set upon Villages, Farms, Castles, and Marchants Ships, in the white lake or Venedick Gulph, or the Livonian Sea, as they ly at anchor, to rob them. Nor are they content to pillage them and spoil them of their goods, but also by an imbred cruelty, without any difference or discretion

discretion, all they can thus master, they cast into the sea, and drown

CHAP. VIII. Of the Same.

Nd relying upon such prosperity, they grow so insolent, that they will not fear to fee upon and molest men of war, that are wind bound, and bore holes in their planks next the waters; for with their arrows they fight fiercely to hinder them that are above that they may not defend their Ships, yer they feldome get the victory by their great prefumption and boldneffe, because they are frequently repulsed with Guns, Crosse-bows and throwing of fiones at them. Then when they confider that they cannot flay long in fecurity among men distressed by them, when they have used violence and Rapine, or, by any turther mischief to all, exercise their publick piracy any longer, they take their barks on their shoulders, and carry them back into some secret places of the woods, for they know the most secret places of them: that they may another time make use of them to prey abroad as they did, upon more fit occafrons; fetting guards in the woods that there they may live as in the most private places of the wildernesse by the abundance of their spoils, and defend themselves by arms. But as their wickednesse is horrid and pernicious, so it suddenly finds fome men to revenge it. For by the diligence and skill of hunters they first fearch out thefe Theives that hold guards in the woods, then the people go forth in troops putting on black armour, and utterly deltroy these enemies, yet they cannot do it but by a bloody victory, for these Theires being conscious of their wickednesse, will strive and fight stoutly for their lives. But at last being overpowred, some run into caves in the mountains, others to hollow places in the earth, and some climb up into thick trees to hide themselves thinking themselves the more fafe, as they had in the valt defart made choice of those most private places to conceal themselves in before they did their robberies. But God's revenge following them, they delerve not to enjoy their lives or liberties, by that means or in that place, who are wont with fo cruell torments to oppresse the Innocent. For they put them all into their barks and houses of defence, and so without any mercy burn them alive. But those that lie hid in Caves and Dens, are kept in with great stones and planks and Stakes of wood, that they may dy with hunger a more lamentable death. They that think themselves safe amongst the thick boughs are discovered by the barking of Dogs; and unlesse they do Compound for their lives, they shoot at them with arrows, and make them fall down dead. And they have no more powerfull and effectuall course to find out these Rogues and Theifs, than by the scent and cry of hunting Dogs.

CHAP. IX.

Of the way of receiving Embassadours amongst the Moscovites,

Some old Histories of the Northern Kingdomes relate, that some Princes of Moscowy did receive the Embassadours of Kings and Princes with wonderfull delutions & they do the fame yet. For they choic then, & fo they do now, for that occasion many common people that were very tall men, & very ancient, & grave, & graceful, with grey long beards, in gallant cloths (for the Prince cloths them for it) that being let in the ample company of the Nobles scattered here and there amongitchem, and faying nothing, they may with the Splendour of their Ornaments, and great multitudes, ravish the eyes of the Embassadours that come in: who being charmed or terrified with so great state, may propound nothing that is harsh; or if they do propound, they may consent to have it ended by

如如

(cu

ti

20

m

to fit the for

Em gui lear pris

md the state with the state the stat

and will

ed, and

watt and

end their

oldbeffe.

to gains

Security

ipine oc,

tiet pla-

pea mak

ht occa-

it private

emelies

rdeenly

hey first

yet they

of their

te over-

in the

mielves

ace pla-

erenge

means

ocent.

richout

is , are

dig wath

mongli

they do

: them

arie to

unting

INCES D.

derhall

or that

em in

here a-

othing ded by

the !

the common votes of them all. But that state as it is but counterfeit magnificence, so it is supposed that it grows contemptible in the end of it. For they are far from that effect they thought to win. For the more perfect Embaffadours, who have gone into the world upon great affairs, delpile and are alhamed of all that counterfeit state and talle pomp. Moreover it is a custome amongst the Tariars that the Embastadours before they propound their Embaffage to their Emperour thatt beforced to paffe between two fires, especially for this reason, that I they carry any poyton to deltroy the Prince, it may first kill those that carry it, being difforced by the heat of the fire. And they will not otherwise hear those Embassadours, unselle they bring presents, and deliver their Embasse, on their knees, and give such honour to a mortali man that is due to Saints and Angels in heaven: and they that refuse to do this are scarse absolved without danger of their lives. But that this cultome of entercaining Embassadours amongst the Moscovites, may appear by more clear examples, I shall infert the Embassage of the most illustrious King of Poland, Anno Domini 1551. which was directed to the great Duke of Mosco in the order that here follows. The Embassadour of the King of Poland Matthews Barthlomievicza Kneze, Gedrotzhi, a very noble man, comino 200 German miles, from the famous City Vilna, of Lithuania, to Mosco, the Metropolis of Moscovia, when he was to have his entrance, after he had gone the foresaid journey, he was entertain'd by some Knights, that were appointed by the great Duke for this purpole: and afterwards a few dayes being past, he was brought into the Calfle in great folempity (fuch as the Moscovites thought fit) to deliver the King's Letters, & he passed through two portals, where very tall men that had huge long beards, (weh are most commonly of the baser fort of people) fat round upon feats, and were clothed in very glorious clothing, that belong'd to the great Duke, that so he might boast of the glory of his court to men that came from far Countries, at last he was brought into the Palace, where the great Duke with his Princes all cloth'd as the other were, flay'd for him, But the great Duke fare upon a feat, that was farr off from the other Princes, and was clothed with a long robe down to his heels, of piled velvet and the outward skirts of it were Embroidered with perls and Jewels: and he held in his hand a Scepter or staffe, guilded on the upper part, but it was Silver'd over on the lower part, that he leaned upon: Lattly he had on his head a Miter, which they in their Language call, Kalpak, which was made of the best black fox skins, which are of a huge price in that Country, and far dearer than Sabels. But when the Embassadour entered into the Palace, prefently they that brought him in, and prefented him to the great Duke, cart themselves down upon the pavement before him, and they knocked their heads against the ground 3 or 4 times, as the custome of the Moscovites is, to thew their reverence to their supreme Lord. But when the Embaffadour was come to the doors 50 foot off from the Duke , together with his 12 fervants that came with him, he was commanded by an Advocate with him, (which they call Przisfaw,) to stand still, and this was done by order from the great Duke, nor was he inferred to come any nearer to him: and there he flood untill he had made his speech to the great Duke, and delivered his Kings Letters to the Dukes Secretary appointed to receive them. The Embaffadour of the great Duke had on a time when he was in Poland refuled to receive the Letters of this King, because he had not stiled his Lord Czar Ruzki, (that is Emperour of Ruffia as he was created by the Metropolitan of that Land, and for this reason the same Duke had sent his own Embassadour. After this the faid Embassadour of the King of Poland was brought back again by the Advocate in great state to his Lodging for Ostentation take. And let this suffice concerning the manner of entertaining Embassadours amongst the Mostovi-

ing

411/

dry

amp thick

orth

of th

Deed i

Roth:

COLUM

gen,

Were

ably, t

WID TO

関語を

CHAP. X.

Of the Italian Embaffadour cruelly flain.

Oreover Albertus Cranzeius, a famous German Historian, affirms in his Vandalia, that an embassadour of Italie was most miterably murthered, because he did not uncover his head when he was to deliver his message before the Prince of Moscovia. For when the Embassadour alleadged the cultome of his Country (so that no majesty nor power could be supposed to be offended for the Embassadours head being covered) the cruell Prince scoffing, said, That his hat should be nailed to his head with an iron pin; and that he would not violate such a cultome but confirm it the more.

CHAP. XI. Of the Ingensity of the Merchants of Moscovia.

There are to many Lakes and Rivers, and to carry their goods in them. For in the North Countries they trafique at least 300 or 400 Leagues off: and since in to long a journey many woods and long Rivers and Lakes are found, they use these ships ready made, or else they make new ones to transport their Merchandise. And there is no man that complains of Injury for the cutting down of woods, or for fishing by these Merchants, so they usure nothing else besides these benefits of Nature, the Patrons being ignorant of it, against their wills, or either to use their cattle to draw their Ships, or to feed on their sheep, but instead of them, they kill wild deer abundantly with their arrows as they travell on the way. Their Merchandise are precious skins, of all sorts, as Sabel skins, Mardure skins, and Varolina, which are called sulgarly in Italian Dossi, whereof both before and after something is observed, and is to be observed turther.

Of the divers wayes of the Finlanders making war.

Because amongst the Finlanders, a Northern people, by reason of their too great fiercenesse, it is published under severe punishments and their Kings Censure, that they shall not use military Arms, at hand to destroy one the other; namely Lances, Spears, Darts, Swords or long daggers: yet they are suffered to have hatchets and axes, to use on all occasions for the necessity of their houses: wherewith also they will build admirable buildings. But that they may not seem to want arms to defend themselves from the thieving Moscovires, that live too near them, when they have occasion, they reput e and keep off their first affaults with slings like Spears; then when they come to fight near hand they desend themselves with Stones tied to their girdle; that they can throw at them. For they have very strong Arms, and are very cunning in throwing stones, that they will never misse. They have also very long first tree Spears, that are dried in the Sun; and they sharpen the points of them with nails, or burn the ends of them sharp, and with these they sirst repulse the force of the light horsemen. Some use cords that they can cast on high, and draw them in again, as nets for wild beasts. For when they fight with their enemy hand to fift, they cast these cords as snares over their enemies heads, and will draw a horse or a man to them.

and will draw a horse or a man to them.

Some also bind a stone as big as a man's fift to a cord, that is a soot long, to a staff, (those that have no iron nor leaden bullets, nor chains,) and with these they involve the rider's arms, or horse's legs, and draw them to

make

me in all and

rahered,

t before

niome of offended

d, That

nid nor

becanie.

For in

fince in

they we

ur Mer-

down

belides r wills,

p, but

s they Sabel

a Doff,

perrtoo

ir Kings

e other:

infered

their

t they

courtes,

c:post

t neur

icy can

ning in

THE STATE

with t

ie the

their heads,

make

make them fall tuddenly. And the tame Finlanders have no less help from their huge biting Mattives; which the Muscovian hories are as much afraid of, and run from, as the Persian hories do from Camels. For these dogs, as they are taught, fall on with leaping, and biting upon the hories notes, and therefore they being fearfull of it, will suddenly rise upon their hinder feet, and cast the Rider, who is presently taken prisoner, or slain.

CHAP. XIII. More of their Arms and Ammunition.

The same Finlanders we also, for to desend their bodies, partly corsets of Sea Caives skin, tanned with lime; and some we Elks skins with the hair on: and this they suffer to freeze, if they war in Winter, by pouring cold water on it; nor will that Ice that sticks to the hairs without, melt by the sweating of him that carrieth it, when it is once frozen: Some of them we Helmets, like the skales of Fishes, made of the hoofs of Elks, or ranged Deer, or Oxen, ingeniously framed together: some we the skins of certain birds saltned on the inside with iron wier curiously. Some we Helmets of skins, that are moyst, thick, and green, boyl'd in lime, drawn upon wood after the form of the head, and drying this by degrees in the Ayr, it proves a safe-guard for the head. But that these Helmets may not flag, when their heads wax hot, they sortifie them within with fish-lime and thin bark of the poplar Tree, which resist all moysture.

Of the Northern Governours, or the King of Sweden.

S I faid before of the Officers of Iceland, that is, of the Land of Ice, how, A by the Edict of the King of Norway, dispencing of Laws, they might put an end to controversies that are moved in the harbours of that Country, or amongst the German Merchants falling out, that they might punish justly those that fail there, that the Merchants might not be deprived of their lawful gain, or the Inhabitants of their profit, or the Treasury of the due tribute, and all of the pleasant lociety of peaceable traffique; so in these Finlanders Countries, that are most populous and rich, the Officers of the King of Sweden are appointed, that are prudent and knowing men, valiant and courteous, that they may remove quarrels as well of the Inhabitants as of strangers by a right rule of Justice, and may settle every one in peace: For the more fierce and sharp the people under that Climate are found to be, (as they are so indeed) the more need have they of the more prudent men, who can better periwade, (faving Juflice) than rigidly compell, spoil, or torment them: and in this case they are most ready to make them obey them, if they resule to pay their tribute as they ought, or do what they command them, though it be joyn'd with mortall dangers. The Northern Kingdoms alwaies flourished with such Officers that were just and prudent, and moderate, with their Kings and Princes, as I can fweetly remember Old Steno State, who for 24 years Ruled valiantly and peaceably, this rigid people, so wide as 2000 Italian miles: and again, King Charls, who was banished 7 years, because of his coverous, reproachfull violent Officers fer over all his Provinces.

CHAP. 15.

p

git

05

bo

ä,

BOO

DES

the

(c)

122

501

tic

the

192

(2

NI.

Wb

如此

ther 即

and t moft

tti mb

COLOR

Freih

elleri

and 6

如世

TITZ

COE

Of burning the Forts of violent Governours.

"He Commonalty when they feel that they are vexed by implacable violence of wicked Governours, besides all right, being provoked to anger, they come all as one man with their Troops and Companies, and encompasse their Forts that are largely forrounded with Ice, and encamp against them to beat them down, in the manner that followes: For as oft as in these Northern Kingdom intolerable burdens are laid on the people, when there is no necessisty, or any other cruel oppressions used, so often they rise together with arms to infringe and break off all luch heavy bordens; namely fo, that the Inhabitants or Pealants (who are alwayes potent, and united together in that place) friving to demolish those Fores, at a set time many thousands of them mean in the Woods, and upon the Ice of that Territory, near to thole Forts, and by a common leverity, they inddenly advise what to do, and conclude upon it. Amongst these, men of the sharpest understanding, by first making a shore speech to the multitude to stirre them up, concerning the burdens they have fuffered, and are like to fuffer, affigu and appoint the duties to every Company. under fevere Commanders; To tome, that they shall forthwith build Engines of wood that are very flrong and high, upon the Ice: To others, that they shall cut many thoulands of lagots in the woods, and carry them along. To lome, that they shall defend the Masters of the work with their crosse bowes and weapons, by keeping watch against their Tyrannicall Incursions; untill they are all ready, and fall on upon the bufineffe decreed on rogether. Hence it is that they first securely thrust before them upon the slippery Ice such Engins or sences, that may keep off the Guns and Arrows of their Enemies; and they have by files as they march infinite numbers of faggots carried in Carts and on their shoulders, which they cast about the walls untill they are as high, or higher then the walls, and to their they put fire and confume the befreged with flame and moke; who are neither able to turn away this danger, nor yet to defend themselves by reason of the valle heap of combustible matter; nor yet can they make any conditions with the furious people that will not hear them, or be intreated by them:nor can they flie away, because the multitudes are all over, ready to destroy them, and tokill all; and thele Forts are barnt as with burning towe : if they can be burnt. For, for the most part they are not built of burnt brick or fiones out of the fields; but, of beams failned together, cut out of the thick woods, they build their houles that are vaulted (to keep off the cold) as I shall fay underneath concerning the houses of the Northern Countries,

CHAD. XVI.

Of their Engines for the Ice.

Lio the Goths and Swedes use, when they fet upon and spoil the most strong A Forts, Castles, and Cities, oblique Engines, and lences, that are made most ftrongly of fir-beams, and these Engines they let against the walls, that are eafily driven upon the Ice by violence of their hands; and being fenced by thefe, they avoid all stones or logs that are cast upon them directly, either from above or beneath, that they can do them no burt. For nothing by force from above, or by the weight of it falling, how violently foever it be let down, can break or diffolve those Engins, because they are made overthwart, nor can they be burne by calling fire upon them from the belieged: because in violent cold weather they alwaies call water on them, which freezeth very thick, and they continually continually thrust them nearer to the gates and walls, by their armed violence, and they tatten them with Troops of Souldiers, using almost the same commodity under their Engins, and guards in their Camps, that Travellers use to enjoy in houses of Ice, where they have wood enough to keep off the cold, and provision tufficient, and pay enough for their Souldiers, and by this means they put the belieged to greater difficulty. When they fee this, the trembling Souldiers that are belieged, are forced to keep themselves with more trouble within the Walls and Forts; untill such time as no place is left free for to hurt or repulse the enemy, that hath beleaguer'd them round. For they cannot burn their Engins because of the Ice upon them, not can they break forth by digging mines under-ground, because the Earth is trozen as hard as a stone; nor is there the leaft place for them to kill the Enemy with their Guns or Cannon, or to be at them off with arrows and flings, nor can they fafely relift them in open fight, nor can they leave their Forts and run into the woods to hide themselves, the cold being so sharp; yet they that are beleaguer'd defend themfelves with great courage and with their Arms, untill fuch time as the beliegers fearing left the Ice should melt, do either willingly set the Engins on fire, or going farther off carry them to the shores with them back again. Yet the befieged are not so freed from their fierce besieging them. For they presently turn the same Engines into most broad Ships, and early make them ride on the same waters where they stood on the firm Ice before, or elfe they make them larger than they were, and let them swim on the Ice that is thawed, and they joyn barks and kinds of small vessels to them, whereby the most skillfull Archers can defend these Ships, and keep night-watches, that none of the beneged can escape. And the same is done by all that have the command of their Bullwarks in the fields. For they profecute the belieged with the fame cruelty, by whose wicked cruelty they were provoked to so great a sury to revenge themfelves. Hence it is, that most commonly, they that are thus straightly beleaguer'd begin to bethink themselves, Whether they shall hang or drown'd, or burn, or cattchemielves down headlong, or poyion themselves, or one kill the

CHAP. XVII.

Of Fiery Chariots.

Vien a fight upon the Ice is threatned either with Horse or Foot by the Danes, Moscovites, or Germans, or other internal enemies, against the Goths and Sweder; and those Enemies to offer violence, hide their Engins in the hollow places of the Mountains or Valleys, whereby they may break forth upon the Inhabitants, who are gathered in Arms for the fame purpole to defend themselves; that they may afford them no time or place of robbing, they use all the skill and force they have, and they fill long Chariots with dry boughes and other combustible matter, that they may oppole against their Enemies a most black smoke and intolerable stinck, when fire is put to them by those bold guides, and is drawn on by wild and furious hories: and this is done the fooner, when the mad Hories standing side by side are forced to run, perceiving the fire in the Cares behind them; and they never leave running, till they have difordered the Enemies Army, that in that place, or ellewhere, they are forced to yield to the furious enemies that came on collaterally with all their forces, or elfe they purine them, who counterfeit as though they ran away from them, and to being drawn forth or dispersed, they may be destroyed in the secret gulphs in thelce, rather than by the snares of armed men. And it need be, more company breaks forth of the Woods and joyns with them, with their crosse-bows and weapons to joyn in battail, and to oppose the Enemy, and

neomposite
them to
Nowhern
to necessisvith arms
inhibihat place)
them meon
to and by
upon it.

12 a shore
they have

ompany

table nie-

10 mgg.

Engines toy that! to tome, and wearate a!! is that tences, have by

higher higher hime defend can they at be in-

brick or e thick

frong emost re ear their, from

troot natey coid

dehey /

they never leave following till they have driven the Enemy away, and most everely revenged them elves. But where these Battails on the Ice use to be fought, or on what Lakes and other places, I shall show more at large in the following Chapters.

Of Canons and Bullets to be carried forth, and of the manner of shooting.

Here I shall shew clearly, what crass and Aris the Northern people use in making Battail either in the fields, or upon the Ice, and undanntedly highe against their Enemies when they are injured by them. They have also Chariots (for to they call their winter or Ice ploughs) that are long before, and for their better agility in turning, they are made wedge fashion, or bended in ; the commodity and firmnels of them is to great, that against the rifings of waies, or hills of Ice and Snow that fwell up, with one or more hories to craw them, they will earry more burden than 5. or 6. Cares with wheels can upon plain and firm grounds. Yet they choose rather to go with one horse upon the glib Ice, or beaten Snow, than with two; that when Waggons meet them in nar-row waies, they may the better passe, by declining a little; also by reason of the depth of the Snow, they are enjoyn'd, by a penall Law, not to drive a crooked Chariot, or more heavy Waggons. But on the Ice, because there is breadth enough, they find no rubs, unleffe it be in some certain places, where the Ice is broken, that is caused by the violence of Exhalations coming from beneath, as by force of Thunder, by reason of the farnesse of the ground. I say as it were by force of Thunder, became there is heard tuch a horrible noise and roaring under the Ice for a long way, as on the fides of thick clowds here and there that of necessary this crack must come, as by the violence of Thunder, that is, 2. 3. or 6. foot broad according as the Exhalation is, and the spirit that rifeth from the bottom.

CHAP. XIX.

Again, of the same, and of the manner how to passe over these ruptures in the Ice.

"Hat Travellers may passe over these broken places, they presently take pieces of Ice they find lying by, and hew them with their axes, and hewing tools, and iquare them fit, as if they made bridges with stone. But if an Oxe not leeing the breach were drown'd there in a dark night, then prefently is he drawn forth with cords and small pieces of wood they ever carry about with them, by their usual nimbleness. But it men, as it oft happens, fall in, they are straight pulled forth again, and those that help to pull them out, are a pleafure to them to think on. And they are not any waies frighted thereby, though their cloaths are frozen about them; for by running and stirring they foon grow hor again. Wherefore in these Chariots, when a battail is to be fought on the Ice, provision, bullet, powder, and other things necessary for Wars, at a certain price are easily carried by the Inhabitants, as in Summer by use of Ships, in the fame windings of the Sea or waters, or in Carts with wheels, by Carters of Marriners they are wont to do: also these Chariots growing to great numbers are fet as Forts and Bull-warks against the enemy, (as Cares are in the Wars of the Cimbrians) and arrows for Bows or Guns are eafily shot from them against the Foe, untill they make an agreement and depart, or are forced to haften away for fear the Ice should melt; or continuing obstinate, they fink to the bottom like lead.

dee

att

Take

PIC

951

int

क्षेत्र

100

Vid

Bei

pais

it mi

313 W

fha]]

lence

DOE出

EDOD!

more.

25 100

Tesmo

of Wa

Cann

their

let the

to diet

1010

TOTAL ST

WOOW

Rembe

ice.the

Tree in

de1 | 1

ele to be go to the

pleme in

Lintedly

line allo

ore, and

nded in a

O' Wiles,

ow them.

on plain

the gilb

n in nar-

czico of

(700g-

breadth

m keis

ent, at It were

foiring d there

that is, f frieth

ike pie-

DEWINE

in Oxe

is he

with

i, they

a pica-

CHAP, XX,

Of their hindring the Waters to freeze,

He most fenced Cities and Forts in Winter time, when all places, passable and unpaffable, are bound up with Ice, are oft closely beneged, which otherwife in Summer feem to be invincible, and cannot be approached unto: Wherefore I shall here shew how they that are subject to dangers and streights defend themselves. When therefore any publick or private Hotality is neer hand, if the places stand in the middle of Rivers or Pools, they that are shut up are exceeding careful to keep the Ice open with their Hatchets and Spades, and make it like Ditches round about at the least 24, or 30. Foot broad, drawing the pieces of Ice unto them, that being left upon the Ice, as the Cold increafeth they may treeze in heaps; and having made such an open place, they prefently pour in the fat of Whales, or Sea-Calves, and with their Spears they dilate and spread about what they poured in in great quantity. Thus the Waters that were frozen deprive the Enemy of his hopes, because he cannot come neer to enjoy the Victory he so long looked for; and it is more frequent for them to slip in and be drowned, that boldly venture to come on, than they can come to the fight of the Belieged; not because the Ice it self is weak in a deep Lake or River, but perhaps the bold Enemy enters there, where the Rivers run in from the Banks of the Lakes, and where the Ice is suddenly weakned and cut away.

CHAP. XXI.

Of Walls of Ice.

There is also another way observed, or to be observed in fortifying when there is a fiege upon the Ice: Namely this, that when a stubborn Enemy, fending his horses away, or that they are drowned in the Gulph of Waters, will pass over that open place, that is filled as Isaid with the fat of the Sea-Calf, that it may not freeze, uling very long Beams, and laying Boards or Shingles upon them joyned together, like to a broad Ladder especially in the night, and thrusts in with what violence he can, topals over the Waters, toward these that are or shall be besieged, that he may pais over the Frontier of Ice. Against this violence, where the Enemy being exceeding fierce, and making extream haft regards not the refistance made with Guns and Bows: Then the Besieged pour Water upon the Walls, and on every side; which being suddenly increased more and more, the bitter Cold co-operating with them, all along the fireets they appear as Looking-Glasses, and these Walls are bound up with the Winter Cold and Ice, weak Women Boys, and young men coming together, and bringing Pitchers of Water: fo whilest the Cold lasts, they fear not to endure the shooting of any Canor -3:1 ets with undanted valour. Also Women tucking their Coats above their knees, take up full Pitchers of Water between the frozen Waters, and deliver them up. So in this straight they are in, necessity of invention makes them to dare and attempt any thing. But whileft men fight by such firatagems one against another, one side or other at last shall win the Victory as God pleaseth, a new difficulty arising, but it is not a Victory without blood, which is ulually won with as many Funerals as Trophies, that Army being not wearied that is hembed in with Warlike men : Wherefore hanging their Engines upon the Ice those that are without, and those that are within, do for many days, weeks, or momeths, fight one against the other, until such time as the Ice, ready to melt, forceth the Besiegers (if they mean to save their own lives) to be gone suddenly as they came before,

T 2

Ic

though in grow on the CENTRAL in the ers of mbers

ars of 20250 haften to the

7, 28

五四五

At lan

忧

Oth

COD

the

SEL

25,5

by :

nd i

tily

time

DOWN

they.

Jay 2

bony

It is worth laughing at to fee it, (if any man can laugh upon such an occasion) and should take pleasure to behold the danger and shame of others) especially when they must hold a sight more against the Waters, than Weapons, which also is perceived to be more terrible and near hand, when a sudden Tempest ariseth, and the Ice breaks, and they seem all to sink as low as Hell, where but a few days before they went on, and made their approaches continually like Triumphant Conquerours.

CHAP, XXII.

Of Watches kept on the Ice, and in the Night.

"He Northern Souldiers bring in Arms, both the Horse and Foot, when Forts, Cities, or Caltles are belieged, keep diligent Warch, either in the Fields, or upon the hard frozen Waters, all the long nights that are 20, hours long almost, and they divide the Night into two; and they change their Centinels, not with Horns, or ringing of Beils, as though they were alleep, but by fecret Signs, that in the Night, if any man come from any other place, they can understand by the Word who and whence they are: It any man should forget the Word, which is the Sign, he deferves to be condemned for his life or goods by the Prince, as a Traytor, if Military Law be taken upon him : and this falls out to feldome, that it is held monitrous if any man be found guilty of that fault. But the greater force is in the imparience of the horfes, by reason of the Cold, for they make a contimual notice by trampling upon the Ice, when they carry their armed Riders wrapt up in Skins, in this extream Coldsyer the e Sentinels keep them elves awake. & flay they where they are appointed to fland; and that with more care and diligence as the morning comes on : about which time the most violent Wyles are practiled, when mens Forces are bound up with aftonisment and sleep : and then are all that lay mares above other times, as if they were tyed to do it, more intentive about their bulineis.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the more fortunate Battails in the Morning.

Herefore it is the fashion of the most valiant souldiers to ride about early in the morning, or to fight with their ships, and not to seat Hail, Clouds, Dew, Snow, Cold, or Enemies, that may hurt them. And this is done not onely for love of the Prince, but in imitation of valiant men, to endure all hardness, and to confirm it by an Oath, that they will not for any fear forfake their station; and there is also a penalty annexed. If a Horseman forfake his flanding he is difarmed and his horse is taken from him, nor is that all, for he is deprived of his Fame, Honour, and faithful Estimation, and the circumstances being weighed he is also punished severely. If he be a Foot Souldier, he receives to many thripes, all the reft looking on ; yet the punishment of perpetual Infamy lyes on them both, as a scar that cannot be taken away. But if he be not weary with fighting bravely or constant keeping of his station, in the bitter cold Weather then is there a liberal stipend appointed him out of the Exchequer, according to his quality and honour, whereby he may live handsomely for the time to come which was the Custome of the Wars in old time: and this is favourably augmented by the Kings magnificence. But for a special remedy of their body scorched with Cold, they use the Ashes of a Hare skin burnt, and this is an excellent remedy to allwage the infirmity of their feet, Of which also I shall lay something inderneath, when I speak of the more fimile Medicaments used by the Northern people,

CHAP. 24.

CHAP, XXIV, ad a same a galactic manufacture

Of the besieging of Forts fenced with Ice.

Here is also another very common and usuall way of fighting upon the Ice. When in Summer the Enemy cannot come near because of deep waters: fo foon as mighty Frosts come, and the Ice grows hard, and the people defire to be revenged on their cruel Governour, they can upon the flippery Ice fer up their Engines, and eafily make their approaches. And thus they shoot as fast into the Fort and against the enemy, as it they had their Bullwarks made in the most firm field. But where the Fort is in an Island, they place their Engines to it, they fight continually against on all fides; and the beliegers proceed the more violently as they are united and agree to ether, being people of one Religion, and one mannet of Ceremonies. Because an Army levied of divers kinds of men, that cannot understand one the others language or manner of living, they one diffrust the other, and are not fit to effeet their business; and from thence discord arising, they go on faintly, or sly openly, or prove treacherous: and chiefly, because such forraign Souldiers nor used to the cold, cannot endure it, to draw off or on, to fight far off or near hand. For it is far another thing to fight upon the Ice or Snow, (as I shall shew eliewhere) than upon Mountains, in Woods, Fields, or Valleys. A battail upon the Ice is fought with woollen locks on their feet, not with skins, or hides greated. For the force of the cold turns what ever is oyly into an Icy flipperinesse. But the cultome of the Souldiers is to use cuttrops or triangle irons, or 3. points, that they may run and fland the faster. But some purposing to make an affault at midnight, ftrew ashes upon the Ice, and so they can run and stand securely.

CHAP. XXV.

Of affaulting the Enemies Ships that are frozen in.

Toften happens on the shores of the Gothick Sea, that the Enemies Ships, as well those that have hooks on their stems, as those that have grapples and other terrible ammunition and weapons to do hurt, being long vexed with a contrary wind, a sudden Frost coming on, they are thut up as within walls by the Ice that freezeth fo ftrongly; nor can they get out, or get help from beyond Sea, or stay for it, or obtain it, nor can they receive provision by their company, whole Ships are thut in as well as theirs by the Frost. Wherefore in the mo tharp Winter, they being held with these and such like difficulties, chiefly by the dearth of wood, deadly necessity forcing them, they either yield themfelves, or run the hazard of prefent death. Moreover, by reason of their horrid wickednesse, (whereby they had raged in murders and slaughters, and cruelly spoiled the Nations round about, beyond all humanity) they often run to extremity, and work indefatigably in the dark nights, trying to break the Ice, that if they can cut the Ice for ten or more German miles, they may come to the wide Sea. Yet in the mean while, the Inhabitants coming to subdue or spoil them, shoot arrows at them as thick as hail, which falling upon their ships, puts them all in danger of their lives. And oft-times kill'd with cold, they are put in a Coffin by their fellows, and buried in the Ice, because they cannot well be carried to Land. But if they be Nobles, or men of great qua-Jity and repute, they are kept without any great flink, as green wood that is frozen as hard as a flone, be their fellows that escape the danger, for a more honourable buriall, that they may not be left in an Enemies Country. But intreating

on XL

occasion) cipecially which also the articola

an a len e Trium-

n Forts, voids, or galmor, not with that

dby the minch ce, as a thac is a force a conni-

s wrapt the . & l dilales are

and more

about Huil, done realk

e his theis esber ceires plung

Wear Mear meto

body scel-

24,

Amu

のはな

mired

them

御脚

inthe

ted:1

fath

they

iron p

ed, 2

he is

aft for

Cotsm

the Na

then

to and book th

intreating and obtaining a truce, if they defire to bury their dead on the Land, it is never denyed them: and the most noble and best men of the Inhabitants will honour them with their presence at their Funerals: which is also observed with great Ceremony when they fight on land in an Enemies Country. As we had an example lately of a most potent Knight, D. Acho Hanson a Western Gub, Anno 1510, who was slain at Schoningia, and was run through with a Lance of his old acquaintance that was a Dane: and all the Nobility of the Land came to his buriall, where he was honourably interted.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the punishment of unfaithfull Servants, that is inflicted on them by cold frozen water.

D Aulus Jovius Bishop of Nucerum, and a curious searcher and writer of the actions of other Nations, supposed that it was a most bitter punishment of Theeves and Robbers, and fuch like villany, to have cold water dropt upon their necks, to make them confesse their wicked actions. For so he testifies in his Sarmatia. The Muscovites examine Theeves, Cutters, Murderers, asking them questions, after this manner; letting cold water tall by degrees from a high place upon their heads; and this they hold to be an intolerable Torment. Thele are his words. But the truth is, that good Prelate was thus informed by mockery, by the crafty Embassadour of the Emperour of Moscovia, called Demetrius, in the time of Pope Clement the 7th, at Rome; or else being intent upon fome other curious matters, he did not fully understand him, who related the Customs of his Country, that this should be held for a most intollerable torture in that hard Country, where fire and the Rack being put to them, they will hardly confesse any thing. Yet the Swedes and Goths are stronger than the Moscovites, who onely in January instit these punishments upon Rebels disbedient, and infolent people, especially for that cause, that they did not follow and wait upon their Princes and Lords coming to the folemnities of Christs Nativity, first by Night, next by Day: and whoever in a private house or family doth not do the same, or speak ill words, or commit scanda ous actions, . thole their fellows, witnesses, accusers, and Judges, with the found of Trumpet and Bells, bring forth with a long train, to the waters that are frozen, and make them kneel down, and make their neck bare, holding their faces toward their knees, and they drop co'd water on their necks, all shouting when they do ir. But those that they intend to punish in a compendious way, (who promise to mend their errours) to them they grant this favour, that all at once, their whole heads being naked, a whole pitcher of water is poured upon them. Onely the Egyptians because of their extream bald crowns tremble at this punnishment, who though they seldome come to the Northern Countries, yet they come sometimes amongst the auxiliary Souldiers that were sent from the French King to the King of Denmark, to fight against Sweden and Gothland. Oft-times the efore when these Ethiopians, as well as the Danes fight with ill successe, they are not punished with cold water, but with hard bondage, and inevitable death,

CHAP. 27.

ne Land, subitants

As no

Weilern

With a

of the

ihment

t spon

liber in

asking

from a

ment.

ed by

K upon

tot-

Ilw P

in the

CLO-

tol-

rilis

Will-

mpet, and

ywand

ey do

their

iem.

pun-

they

reach

imes

ansidedal add was CHAP, XXVII.

Of the same Punishments.

There is also another way of punishing obstinate and stubborn people, anpointed by the Antients for all other times in Winter, namely, that boring holes in the Ice 20 or 30 foot alunder, they should have a cord tied under their Arms, and put into one hole under the Ice, and be drawn forth by the cord at the other hole of the Ice. If this be done quickly, they thank their friends for doing it so suddenly: but if they be long about it, as may be the stubborn offender deserves it, when he is drawn out, he finds that he had severe Censurers and Judges, because he was in great danger of being drown'd. It is not to be admired, that thefe things can be done upon the Ice that is as slippery as Glasse; because by 3, points of Iron onely, or else made fast to their shoos, they can use themselves not onely to do this, but any other action upon the Ice, as I shall fay underneath concerning their fishing upon the Ice. But this ducking them in the waters is appointed for the Schilmaticall Moscovites upon point of Religion, because they dipping their young Children under the Ice that is persorated, they baptize them after their manner, and if they be carried away with the fwift stream, they think that they are gone to the gods presently.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of a Horse-race for a Cloke, or a prize.

Hen their Chariots are filled with many men, (for so the Nation calls the Winter Waggons or Coaches) with one horse alone before them, they will run five or six Italian miles so swiftly, that you would think they did not run but fly; especially because the horses are frost-nail'd, and have iron points in their shoos. The prize (as I said, lib. 1. upon the like race) is a garment, or the horse beaten, ar a certain measure of Salt, or Corn to be sowed, and this is tax't to be paid at a set time; and if he that is bound pay it not, he is never dismissed.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the wild Affes or Elks running on the Snowy Ice.

Northern Swedes, especially beyond the Kingly City Holm, toward the upper Ports Northerly, but lower toward the South: which though there be great multitudes of them in the vast Woods, yet by the Kings Decree they are not to be used, lest by their swift running, which is far beyond horses, Traytors might have an opportunity to reveal suddenly to the Enemy, the secrets of the Nation. For this beast can exceedingly endure hunger, thirst, and labour, that night and day running 200 Italian miles, which is a great way, he will do it, and eat nothing. The other vertues of this Creature shall be shewed in the book that followes concerning living Creatures.

det id

in to

them

Aller

be, w

the factor

COST

Fot,

Moo

is co

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Ranged Deer running in the Snow.

A Life there is a great multitude of another kind of ranged Deer in the Northern Countries, who are used not onely to draw their Chariots, (as I shall shew underneath, speaking of living Creatures) but to draw loaded Catts over the tops of snowy Mountains. And these ranged Deer (so called from the Instruments they draw with) are forbid by the Kings Decree to be made use of by the South part of the Country, for they are wonderful swift as the Eiks are, that they will soon run a long and hard journey. But their Charlots differ from the forms in other Countries, because before they are made wedge-sashion like shoos to penetrate into the Snow, or like Ships at Sea to divide the floods and waters.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the drowning of the Enemies in the Snowy Valleys.

Hen the Swedes and Goths greatly provoked by injuries are forced to prepare for a Winter-battail against the Germans, Danes, or Mofcovites, they use all means to find out how great Forces the Enemy marcheth with be they Horf or Foot. And finding that they came with great Horf for War, and armed men from top to toe, for the most part, with an invincible number almost, and strength, and that they will cast down by their force all that refift them, the Inhabitants go forth to meet them, man by man, not so much armed with weapons, as with courage, especially that they may kill and spoil fuch cruel enemies, who are beaten and walted with the difficulty of the waies, and his own Forces: For they know by certain experience, that it is no hard matter to conquer such an Enemy who is entangled and shut in between the deep Snowes, dark Woods, fecret precipices, and gulphs of Snow and Ice, and loaded with his Armour of proof; for were there no man to defend the Counery and stop him, he must needs fail by the nature of the place: and the sooner do these Enemies come to ruine, as they have been finely bred, and are ignorant of the places and dangers, whilest the Northern people who are used to the hardnesse of the Climate, are not afraid to march through Mountains and Defarts, that in the coldest Winter are deep with Snow, and to fight with their Enemies in the way. And when the battail is near to begin, they feem to run away, and draw the proud Enemy after them, either into places full of Snow, where they are drown'd by the weight of their Arms, as it they were in a gulph of mud, and like bealts taken in ners, they are killed by the Country people that are unarmed, or elfe they draw them forth into Lakes, Pools, and Rivers, because the water lies under the Snow, and so they fall continually and are drown'd. The Snow indeed teems firm on the top, but underneath where the waters run and eat it, it is so weak that it will hardly bear a Wolf, much leffe a Man, and he in his Armour.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Snow-balls sticking in the Horses hoofs.

Oreover, there is another danger for Enemies on horseback, and it is to be feared as being inevitable; that under the hoofs of the horses being shod with iron, by reason of the cold Snow, water being under it, or dew above

he Noe-

4 (2)

de tile of

Electro,

fer from

nion like

ods and

or Mof-Enemy teat Hori

vincible
all that
omuch
it fool
wates,
no hard
ten the
ic, and
c Counc fooder

and are used ains and ith their ito run Snow, the in a Country als, and ally and in where f, math

it, Snow-balls will flick like to Tennis balls, as big as Childrens heads; and these stick so round, and hard trozen, that it is impossible but the Rider must fall off from the horie, or with the horie, and lo be killed or taken prisoner; for he cannot bound above tour or fix times either right forward or obliquely, by reason of the Snow-balls sticking to his feet, but he will presently fall: and the more he spurs his horse to make him run or bound, the sooner he salls, and falling fud denly he is bruited and dies of it, or elfe falls into other mifery, may be, worle than death. But they that fight to defend their Country, fo foon as they are entring battail pull off their horses shoos, that those Snow-balls not flicking, they may the better affault the enemy. The Enemy dares not use this convenience and fafe way, because they have no place to retreat unto as the Inhabitants have, and friends to help them. Nor is there any leffe danger for the Foe, when he is constrain'd to ride up or come down the sides of Valleys and Mountains, that are as glib as glasse; and this danger is the more when this Ice is covered with thin Snow, that is blown thither by the wind, and fills up all the concaves and hollow places and deep pits, making them to appear like to plain champion ground. These places the Germans, and Danes, and Muscovites fall into, because they know them not, and in their rash passage they are miferably destroyed; and many most warlike Souldiers who with sword and fire made the World to tremble, were here easily drown'd in the Snows.

The End of the Eleventh Book.

V

Of the Variety and Forms

Olaus

it is to s being wabove

dia

fre

the



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

OF

The Buildings in the North.

The Epitome of his Twelfth Book.

CHAP. I.

Of the Variety and Forms of their Stones.

Efides the Works wrought with hands, there are found in many Mountains of the Northern Provinces, heaps of Stones, that are so framed with divers Figures by Nature, as chiefly fquare and long fashions, that there can hardly be any thing more added to their perfection, than the polishing of them to make them shine. As it appears in a certain vast Mountain called Amaberg, which is not far from the famous Monastery at Vastum, which was built by that most illustrious Woman St. Briget, whose body is there kept in most famous memory, and the body of her Daughter Katharine, which was the first Abbeis and now rests there: Also in another Monastery of Sr. Bennet, called Alvastra, out of which are taken stones of divers colours, especially black, and that freely, for any Buildings of the Inhabitants; and thefe are carryed away with Barks or Caravels, and are made to serve for most beautiful and commodious use from the Foundation to the tops of houses, onely Windows being placed between them. Leaving here a Dispute, whether Art may seem to exceed Nature, or Nature Art. I faid, freely, because they are not bought from the posfessors of the ground, either for money, or begging, there being such an infinite number of these stones, that they are allowed for the publick and private good.

imed

that

n the

ntain

which

COC LO

asche

lack,

away nodi-

And that Mountain to tull of delight, that is broad and high, is feen by those that fail atar off, as a City with a Spire, and compaffed about with Walls. There are at this day many Buildings of the aforetaid Monastery of Alvastra, and of the City Lincop, that was built with the same kind of dones in former time, square and very comely. There are also other Mountains of the Oftrogoths, toward the more Easterly places of the Gothick Sea, that produce thining itones like to Diamonds, with fix Corners like Crystal, in long Rows, to be found here and there: of which, if a man would be prodigal, he might frame thining Walls, that men would admire at. Moreover, amongst the Vestrogoths, there is a Monntain called Kindaberg, that hath round about Marble stones, to finely differing in colours by Nature, that, let in any Building, they are very handlome and commodious. Lastly, in the Islands under the Poles, there are found Mountains of Load-stones, to pieces whereof, Beech-Wood being joyned for a fet-time, will grow hard as a flone, and attract as the Load-flone doth. Besides, there are found very many Natural Stones in the Fields of divers Forms, as well as others that are made, that will ferve for Houles, Walls, and any other Buildings.

CHAP. II.

Of building their Houses, and of the divers forms of them.

THere are in the Northern Kingdoms many strange Buildings, some Pyramidal; others Wedge-fashion; some arched, others round; some square: Pyramidals are made with Spears, onely bound together at the top, and fet wide below, for the Summer time alone, that Mannual Artificers may not be troubled with smoke and flame, as they are with the heat of the Sun. All the Wedgefashioned Buildings are built very high, that the thick burdensome snow may fooner be blown off with the Wind, that this may not weigh down their houles, which are covered with the Bark or Birch, or with Tiles, or Planks cut thin from the Pine-Tree, by reason of the imbred Pitch, or Fir-Tree, or Oke, or Beech, but rich mens houles are covered with Plates of Copper, or Brafs, or Lead : as alfo the Churches are. Their Arched-houses are built very artificially against the force of the Winds, and falling of the Snow, for divers and very necessary ules, as well with Stones, as with Wood. And fuch are found in great mens houses to keep their Domehick or Countrey Houshold-stuff in Round Buildings; and these are very rare, that divers Workmen may enjoy the same light at their labour, by reflexion from the top of the house. Square houses are the most frequent 3 but the'e are fallned together with huge pieces of Timber, in a wonderful combination at the Joynes in the Corners: and these have also Windows that stand very high in the houses, whereby the Light may descend inwardly upon every one. But these Walled Houses have Dores proportionable, but narrow Wincows, by reason of the bitter Cold, and Dews and Snow; for were they great and large after the Italian manner, the houses would prefently be filled up with small snow driven in by the strong Winds, (as it were with imall dust, driven in by a Whirl-wind) and would be ready to fall down with a weight they cannot bear.

CHAP. III. Of the same.

The most common Windows in the Northern houses, especially in their Stoves, are made in the oblique Roots, whereby a clearer light comes down from Heaven, but they are framed of Glass or Oyl Cloth to keep out the Rain. But they are made on the sides in the Cities, because the streets are narrow, and they have Iron Frames to shut with all. The Dores of the Inhabitants

200

10

W

the

ati

120

ini

DO

Pol

bera

1523

titte

Nu

2 1

Frui

Fam

da B

hiry

bitants who dwell in the utmost parts of the Kingdome, are narrow and lwo, that they may not lye open to Thieves and Enemies. And that they may relift open Enemies and Robbers, they have holes in their Walls to shoot out at. Also they have secret Dirches of Earth cast up, that are covered with Reed or dry Sticks, or Boughs, left they should not be able to destroy the Enemy the other way. But their hou'es are joyned together with Beams, and Planks of Fire, with Poplar-back and green Turts of Earth, in a double order, casting a little Oats or Barley betwist them: and this is done, that they may not be burned with Lightning, and rather that wh. n they are belieged by the Enemy, by calling on Water, they may have Palture for their Sheep and Lambs as I shewed before. Some allo in Ciries so build their Houles, that by a mutual charge and agreement, five or fix houles being joyned together, may make one Caltle, and before every house they make a most strong Iron door, that if the Enemies should gain the Walls, he may be forced to fall back again, as in the Metropolitan City Holm, he is every where besten off from the tops of the houles. Now the skilful Artificers know how to find materials in all places that shall be strong, and long laffin sand graceful to build their Houles with, and oabltain from Trees, that bemy laid upon their Works, may do hurr to the Walls, and kill men most misera-

-noting one community of CHAP. IV.

Of the great multitude of huge Trees in the Northern Paris.

N the Northern Woods there is a very great plenty of Fir-Trees, Pine-Trees, Juniper, and Larch-Trees, and they are as high as high Steeples: and therefore those that grow nearest the Sea, are made use of for Masts and Fore-yards for great Ships, and chiefly the Pine-Trees; which by reason of the Rofin and Pirch in them, are wont to last long against Rayn, and they will not soon corrupt. But the Fruits of Firr or Pine-Trees are for no use as they are in Italy, where they make pleatant Medicaments with them. The Pine-Trees being fawed, are made fit for Boards to cover the ships. Also the Inhabitants feed on the sweet Pith in the top of them (which they call the Marrow) especially the Laplanders, gathering them in Summer, eat them for bread, as the Parthians do Dates. The Bou his of Firr-Tres ferve for Hoops about Veffels, and to make fences for fields, and for Crois-Bows; fo do the Larch Boughs that are more flexible. But Firr-TreeRafters are highly effeemed, because the Tops of Churches are covered with them, being strong to last, and leight, and they grow the taller, the more gravelly the ground is they grow upon: but they have slender bodies, because they are nourished but little by Sandy Nutriment; from whence that most fat juyce which tends forth Rofin or Pitch teems to proceed. Belides there is great plenty of Birch-Trees in all the North parts; the vertue whereof is this, that being out between the Bark and the Tree they will fend forth Water that is porable, as the Fruit of them in time of Famine ferves for Bread, and the Bark for Clothing. As alfo Juniper-Berries, and the Roots of it are eaten for Bread, though men can hardly come at them for their Prickles: In thele Prickles or Thorns, live-Coles of Fire will last a whole year : And if the Inhabitants do not quench them, when some great Tempest or Whirlwind ariseth, the Woods take fire that spreads all over, and burns the Fields that are round about.

todiwo.

ray reidt

ray, Allo

d or dry

he celet

Out or

ALIER

00 W2-

Some

or, five

e every

sinthe

folia,he

Anin

00012

hat be-

merti-

Trees.

thereds for

Puch

Bur

they

arc

NEEL

iders,

The ields.

Fin-

with

welly

T are

high

to en

t be-

sthe

L. As

n can

DICS

rem.

eads

CHAP. V.

More of the Trees in the North;

HE Oke will remain uncorrupted under Waters, and therefore is most fit for the Ribs of Ships. Hides are tanned with the Bark of it, as I shall thew underneath, core rning Buildings upon the Ice. There are other Trees also that are harcer, of which they turn Rings for the use of the Sailyards, and Bottles and Veffels that mult be imeered within with Rohn that they putrifie nor. Befides there are others that grow up of themselves that have no names, which yet for their effects in weight, colour, hardness, roundness, tallness, and fruits are held to be most profitable. There are also found there Quinces, and Elders, and most iweet Jujubes. Also there are observed to be two sorts of Willows, which Hares feed on to stay their hunger. And those be barren; yet, the thick Boughs being cut off and planted, they will grow again, as other Springs of Trees cut up from the Roots use to grow from their Roots. Also many Trees. are found which because they have many deep Roots that cannot be pulled up, unless they be blasted with Lightning or Thunder-tricken, they will last always; but it is not an easie matter to give the reason of them, fince others there are, that grow elfe-where. Moreover, the flattering Ivie is fo common and burdenfome, that being fostered by Snow; unless it be rooted up, it will by degrees overthrow the Walls.

CHAP. VI.

Of the diversity of Trees.

Here are also many forts of Trees in those cold places, as Poplars, Ashes, and other Juniper Trees, which by reason of their fie Tallness, and their fweet smell, like Cyprus Trees, are used for choise Houses, and for Fuel, both in the Plague time, and for daily use at other times. For these Trees growing of their own accord, grow perpetually, new Plants ribing up, and cannot be rooted out; so that when they come to their full growth, (as I said) they are employed for firong Beams in high Hou'es and Buildings. But Okes and Beech are not found beyond the leventy Degree of altitude of the North Pole toward the Frigid Zone: and but few of the other kinds, except the Birch-Tree, and crooked Shrubs, in the utmost shores of the Scythian Ocean, because of the frequent Tempests. But in the Lands toward the South, there is a very great increase of Fruit-Trees, the Fruit whereof the Inhabitants eat in time of Famine for Bread, as other Creatures do eat them; as Acorns, imall Nuts, and Beech mast : yet these Creatures, as Mice, Dormice, Birds, to prevent a Famine to come, are more fore-feeing than men; for they will carry their Fruits to their Dens and Holes, whereby the provident Inhabitants perceiving a Famine like to come, take more diligent care to their business, than they used to do. Beech Nuts are triangular, shut within a reddish shell, and within they have a hairy covering: Hogs are wonderfully fatted with thefe as they are with Acorns, onely with this difference, that these make harder Fat; those, softer and more fluxible.

idol Eut 0

WOOD

你是

aftin

mili

80004

pozed t

CHA". VII.

Of the quality of Fruits.

Mall Nues grow in such abundance there, that there are sufficient for the Inhabitants, and for strangers, for all utes they can defire: Whence it comes, that for gain and profit of Merchants, some thousand Vessels of them are transported out of the North into Germany, and Hazel-Wands, whereby all Vessels are hooped almost, being they are so flexible to be wound every way. Apples and Pears of divers forts being towed there, or tran planted, will grow in abundance: of which there is some one kind most noble, that like an Olive-Tree (which grows no where in the North) grows ripe in the greatest Cold: Alto there are Wild Apples that will last to long as Nature hath ordained they shall; for they first grow ripe in December, and these taste like Wine, and therefore they make Syder of them, by preffing out their

juice; and this is called new Wine.

CHARLT

Some also are found to fowr, that they will dull a Swords-Edge with their juyce, and they are used instead of Vinegar : some of these are round as Apples; some coppid as Pears, some are eval to whom Nature gives peculiar Honour. But such as are Forraign Fruit, and come from beyond Seas, because they are more fleshy and sweet in mens opinions, they are more esteemed. Likewife Pears and Plummes dryed; for there are but two kinds of Bread in the North, namely White and Black. Cherries are of two forts, Garden-Cherries, and Wild. But such as are too sowr, and set mens Teeth an edge, are used for Vinegar: and this comes, because they grow in shady places, and dark, where they want the heat of the Sun; but fuch as the Sun shines on, are pleasant enough. There are moreover some Trees of an unknown virtue, that produce Fruit as white as Snow without Flowers: yet Fruit-Trees defire to be transplanted, and they will grow sweet; but the Wild-Trees yield a wild raties it may be by reason of the hoary Mots of the Trees, that keeps off the Suns hear: otherwise some might be of a pleasant rast.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Firr-Tree Gum, or Rofin, and of the Original of Amber, or Succinum.

B Ecause there is found great variety in Authors, concerning the Original, and Nature and Quality of Amber, especially as Perotten relates it, who by great diligence endeavoured to reconcile the feveral Opinions of many men; from whence and how this admirable and lovely Liquour proceeds: Therefore I shall here shew what is most probable, according to the Opinions of the Northern people. The Firr or Pine-Trees, that are by Nature refinous, and shoot forth exceeding tall, be it, that they grow near the Sea-shores, or Banks of Rivers, or other steep places of Woods, do sweat forth Amber, especially when the Corn is ripe, and the Sun faines hortest and scorcheth it, (as I shall underneath shew) in June and July, and toucheth the Bounds of Cancer and Leo. Then those Trees, the ftrong heat chopping their Bark, sends forth a Liquor, which is Amber, into the Waters and Rivers that are near, to be hardned there; and fo dropping

ne for the

Thence it

leffels of

Wands,

e wound

plamed.

oble, that ipe in the as Nature these tasks out their

vith their d as Apliar Hoi, because theemed, of Bread Gardenan edge, and con, are se, that fire to ia wild he Sons and so dropping forth, what ever body it meets in the way, it is so clammy, that it holds it sat as Glew: Hence it is, that Frogs, Mice, Gnats, Spiders, Flyes, Ears of Corn, Pulle, and the like are found wrapt up in this Rosiny Bird-lime, and there they grow hard: also if these continued Drops sall into the Sand, because when the Rain comes upon them, they are carryed away to the Rivers, and so to the greater Waters, and at last to the Sea: where like to other Trees, they are at a certain time made so hard, that being boil'd as a Stone, by a cruel Tempest it is cast forth through the Gothick or Finland Sea, and Livenian Sea, upon the Prince such shore; namely the South shore, directly opposite to the North: and at all times this is done when the waters are driven by the winds to the Prinsian Land; where, by reason of the Kings Command, none may gather it unlesse they be deputed and sworn Officers.

The end of the Twelfth Book.

The Cyclosic at the Carlot Back of Black.

otherwifatilled, and spain the new blands ore ordered extension than these. Arter the Sorthern Councies, thirds cension That he

many fields of the Palisymbly on the pair which is really de Santh, baley is a per and mower in 36 dayes a on the time a mest forced, the is from the color of force and the middle of sounds and almerance becomes for the analysis of the color.

mini meetir grow to and over to berigge and behavior of to the base of worse should from

and needed years to any or any or any or any or and the second se

Denicale is the Dr. or times of his one, the constant of the single property of the constant o

tiginal, who by ny men; Thereis of the s, and

anks of y when and Les.

opping



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UP SAL:

OF

Husbandry and Mans Food.

The Epitome of his Thirteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Of the diversity of gathering in of Harvest.

Dmirable is the Dispensation of Nature, that after another manner, and at another time, and by other means and Industry, the North Climate is dreffed (as I faid); and the Æthiopick or African Land is otherwise tilled; and again, the new Islands are ordered otherwise than these. As for the Northern Countries, this is certain, That in many fields of the Vestrogoths, on that part which is against the South, barley is ripe and mowed in 36 dayes from the time it was fowed, that is, from the end of June, untill the middle of August, and sometimes sooner. For that maturity proceeds from the nature of the foil, and the mildnesse of the Ayr, and the moutture of the flones that fofter the roots, and the Sun scorehing, that it must needs grow so and come to be ripe: and such ears of Corn have six ranks in number, but they are smaller than the common ears, and they are very fit to make Beer with. But other grain cast into the ground in the beginning of May, are gathered in the middle of August, by the mutual help of the Counery-men, not with any great pains, but with alacrity and willing minds, left cold wind should blow upon it, and blast the Corn. And they dehre no other reward for their daily labour, than a merry Feast at night, where the young people of both fexes, by reason of their faithfull labours in the fields, by the judgment and confent, and permission of their provident Parents, are made choice mon have made Rie: talk

> piain their tris c sp is sector

In lame leaded with an eleaded with an eleaded leaded lead

may he mind to

choice of for to be married: but not for marriages for delight, though they be Noble people, but to live privately, in an honest and commodious way, to govern their Families wifely and contentedly.

CHAP. II.

Of their Bake-houses, and baking of Bread.

Because it is a received opinion amongst the Antients, that Cores sound one Corn, and Pan is reported to have made Bread of it, (and from thence he had his name Pan); she is prais'd for finding it, and he for applying it to man's use. Wherefore I shall here enquire what kinds of Corn are good for this use; and to whom this office belongs amongst the Northern people; which, as many Countries, distinguished as well in Situation as Manners, are divided and parted one from the other: so those things that grow on the Earth, according to the variety of Climates, vary also. Wherefore the more North you go, the lesse plenty of Wheat there is, and there is more plenty of it found every where toward the South. Yet the Swedes or Sweens, have a world of Wheat, and more Rie. But the Goths both East and West, who seed on Barley and Oats, have an infinite abundance given them by the mercy of God. Yet there is use made of all these forts of Corn in both places. But the Sweens provide most for Rie; where their women know so well how to winnow Rie, that for colour, taste and so health, it surpasses the goodnesse of Wheat.

CHAP. III.

Of parching their Corn that must last.

On the hortest daies, when the Sunshines strong, they spread cloaths like thip-tails, or else the tails themselves, upon the superficies of the Earth, or plain tops of Mountains where there is no grasse, and they lay the Corn upon these to dry, for 6. or more, or sewer daies, as the Sun shines hot: then when it is cleanted, they lay it up in vessels of Oke, or else they grind it, and to lay it up safe; and when it is so torressed, it will last good many years. But if it be not ground meal, but corn, it is convenient once a year to set it in the Sun to be trressed again, and thus new corn torressed may be mingled with it prudently, that there be no want when we need. But the meal thrust into the oken Vessels or Tune, by strong ramming it in with woodden mallets, and laid up in a dry place, will last many years, and never be worm-eaten.

CHAP. IV.

Of the manner of drinking among st the Northern People.

IT will not displease curious Readers, to hear how the custome is of drinking amongst the Northern People. First, that they hold it Religion to drink the healths of Kings and Princes, standing, in reverence of them; and here they will as it were sweat in the contention, who shall at one or two, or more draughts drink off a huge bowl. Wherefore they seem to sit at Table as if they had Crowns on their heads, and to drink in a certain kind of a vessel: which, may be, may cause men that know it not, to admire it. But that were more admirable to see the servants to go in a long train in troops, as Pastours of Harts with horns, that they may drink up those Cups sull of beer to the Ghests. And not content with these Ceremonies, they will strive to shew their Sobriety, by setting such a high Cup sull of Beer upon their naked heads, and dance and

X

turn

to other

100000

by the
e male
choice

mandel,

e North

Land is

herwile That in

parley is

ays, and

thic is

ry fit to

ping of

e Com-

100

the

No

the

tot

200 (70)

mid

011 fim

med

then

fee.

OUT-E

Office

Were

the ci lead o

li, and

200点 the

for so

Veltry

meli

turn round with it: In like manner they deliver other Cups which they bring in both hands to the Ghells to drink off, at equall draughts, which are full of Wine, Ale, Mede, Metheglin, or new Wine.

CHAP. V.

Of their divers manners to boyl Salt.

Monest the Sweens or Swedes and Goths, there is no boyling of Salt: not A because they cannot draw salt-water out of the depth of the Sea, but became the Nation abounding with other things, can more eafily bring in forraign falt, than with greater charge to boyl it on their own shore. For by the comming of great thips from Holland, Germany, from the Ports of Spain, France, or Britanny, especially from the Port of Lisbon, and Brovas, Salt comes that is fold at a reasonable price: But in Poland there are deep Mountains of Salts chiefly in Vielifen and Bochna. Where I was to fee it, Anno 1528, on the 5th of January, and went down 50 steps, where I saw Labouters in the deepest places, stand naked by reason of the hear, and with Iron Instruments they dug forth a most rich treasure of Salt, as it were gold and filver out of Mines that cannot be exhaufted.

CHAP. VI.

Of the difficulty of carrying Salt into the Northern Kingdoms.

But when there happen Wars by Sea in the Baltick Sea, that for want of Salt they may feem to be in danger to be oppressed by their Enemies, then they find an art to make Salt at home, left for want of it they should yield up their liberty to their Enemies. But that the Inhabitants of Northland might do that more readily, and for a perpetual and continual gain, R. D. John Magnus the Goth, Arch-bishop of Upfal my most dear brother and predecessor once, Anno 1523. being the Legat for Pope Adrian the 6th, and after that about two years being elected, and visiting the Diocesse of Opfal, at his own cost, and beflowing every where sufficient Inflruments, he communicated to the most convenient places and fittelt for the Inhabitants, the manner and the Art of making Salt, which he had received from experienced men : and thefe they may easily and freely make the of ever fince, and for perpetuity when they want Salt, in time of any hostility.

CHAP. VII.

Of the great quantity of Butter.

Paffing over all the Provinces of the North Country from 52 to 84 degrees, of the elevation of the North Pole, every where by reason of their rich Pafture-grounds, and huge herds of Cattel, you shall find a vast quantity of Butter; but it is not all alike good, by reason of the variety of Salt, as also because of the more tender and rich grafs, that they feed on in Provinces, far diffant one from another: For where the fields are more groffe, and the Salt is more grofs the Butter is leason'd with, it is not of the same efficacy, as the other butter is that is well falted, and where the Pasture-grounds are finer. Yet they all alike in every County have a custome to sell it away, whether it be salted with Bay-Salt, or White Salt, and they fell or barter away many thousand barrels of it to foreaign Merchants, (unlesse it be forbidden by the Kings Proclamation when there is Wars coming, or already begun) as also for Corn, Bacon, and other food necessary, there is care taken that it may not be transported to the Enemy. Moreover, Moreover, there is an Illand of South Gothland, called Ocland, where the Ayr is wholetome, and the ground fat, which produceth most pleasant graffe; and with this graffe is there abundance of Cows fed, and they give such wholetome misk, that when many Physicians cannot help sick people, their Butter-milk alone will cure them: and this Butter as aromaticall is preferred before all other butter.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the greatnesse and goodnesse of their Cheese.

TF Parma of Placentium, or other Countries and Cities of Lombardy may be I commended for their many great excellent Cheefes truly they must thank the original of it, which is the Peninfula Scandiana, and especially the Country of the West Goths in the Northern Kingdoms; For their Vestrogoths, above all Northern people, obtain this greatest commendation, That no Nationis like to them in making Cheete: which teems to proceed from their most plentiful pastures: wherein also there are many strong tall Warlike Hories, and many tall Oxen bred almost infinite for number. Wherefore oft-times they make fuch huge Cheeies, that two firong men can scarce carry one of them a little way; Yet men never have any hand in making them, but only women; which from all the Villages near bringing great quantity of milk, coming in Summer to the hon e of one that will make a Cheele, beat the milk in great Cauldrons, and putting runner to it, they presse it in a frame of Wood, that is commonly fquare, and they break all little cheefes dried in the Sun, into small crumbles, and put them into the same milk when it is almost scalding hot; as it is used in great Walls, where by piling one flone upon another with mortar, they are made the more compact. Nor is any man thought fit to be present at this work of the women, though he should beg of them never to much. For those most strong women have several offices in their houses, that their husbands never meddle with; as Spinning, Weaving baking of Bread, boyling Beer, to deck themselves, to make Beds, and lay on the blankets, to provide for Lambs, Calves, and other imall creatures; but men have greater Labours to take care for; as to till the ground, thresh the Corn, to break horses, (which also women oft-times do) to tharpen weapons, and to make fences, and to order Ploughs, and dreffe fields. But the cheefe of the Offregoths made of theeps milk in great quantity, is highly commended; to also is the cheese of the upper Sweden, especially among the Helfing i and Norwegians, who having their cheefes all as ic were rotten, and full of Worms, are much delighted with them. Also when the cheele is eaten out within-fide, they ule the out-fide, like a dried Hide inflead of a buckler in the War. Also the cheeses in Finland taste most pleasantly, and they make them very rare of Goats-milk, many thousand pound weight: and they make them the more commendable and favory by putting under them the moke of Myrtills; for to they will keep many years without Worms, chiefly for to hold out Sieges in Forts. For amongst the Northern people, namely the Vestrogoths they are to temper'd by Nature, that when they grow old they will fmell of Spices, and tatte most pleasantly. Marriners feed on these also, when tempels hinder them from boyling other meats at the fire,

CHAP. IX.

Of Weavers.

The Northern Women do buse themselves in Weaving Linnan and Woollen, and they are very ingenious in it; except the Women of Lapland, who (as Italdelsewhere) make their webs of the nerves of living Creatures, and

Salt: not but beforraign he com-

s that is s of Sale, the 5th epert plathey dug

nes that

want of then teld up i might w Mag-

h, and ne most e An of se they en they

legrees, ich Pa-Burter; taufe of m one e grois ster is

l alike h Bayf it to when other

nemy,

fit garments of the skins of divers bealts; because in that outmost Country there grows no Flax; nor do sheep breed there, but where Flax is in the hotter Northern parts, they weave such Webs or it, and colour them, that you would think they were woven in Italy, they are to well made. I faw formerly amongst that people, a Piece of Linnen woven, that was of Sky-colour, most curiously wrought with divers threds: and just fech a one I found when I came to Rome, as if one hand had made and order'd them both : only with this difference, that as the Roman Women, or rather men, are more ingenious Weavers, fo they work more nearly with their hands : it may be, because they follow the Eximples of the most noted Painters, whereas the Northern Women take their patterns from flowers, as the Flower-de-luce, or shadows of leaves, cast upon the waters, when the Sun flaines. But in making embroidered networks, such as are feen in the houses of Princes at Rome, the Northern Women feem far to exceed all other Artificers of the World, fince Noble Persons to avoid idleneffe, do much use themselves to this exercise for the hereditary ornament of their houses; and they make them very fine: For they alwaies, as it is their cultome, adorn their dwelling-houses from the very top with that white Net-work, which they call Sprangning, except the Lords that hang their Palaces with filk clorhs: and this for Bride-Chambers and ornament of Illustrious Women, and for nupriall Feafis.

The End of the Thirteenth Book.

pherocelect to make Best and lay on the blankers to provide for Lambe, Calland and other times of sources, but my viewer Labour to take our few as a formal the growth of the Country branch butter (while allo women

dening which we will reduce the translation of the complete and the comple

were routed and not will deplete and a chighren with them a Allo when the cheek of the common will deplete they are the objects of the different fleet of a back or up the War. Abother because the flowers take molt pleature

ausion of the character of the commence of the complete of the complete of the complete of the character of

paris, they in whereas

Michigan

三年 日本

The Martiera Women de built should tering Line a and Week line, and week line, a find when the less and the less than a factor of deplaced web a language of the less of the less than a factor of the l

compain all the thom to all boyling an examents at the first

ok XIII

o Reme,

llow the

red ner-Women trions to

ary oceaies, as it at white eit Pala-



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UP SAL:

OF

The various Conditions of the Northern People.

The Epitome of the Fourteenth Book.

The Preface.

En may not wonder, that in the large Northern Countries, especially in the Peninsula Scandiana, (which Pluny because the largenesse of it was not found out, calls another world; and Jorrandes and Paulus Diaconus call the Sheath or shop of the Nations) men wear diversity of habits and clothing, and are of divers manners and customs, in their diet and living, brought in from forraign parts, I shall passe censure on them both, and show how sincerely and quietly they lived formerly, without discord, slicking to their old Lawes; whereas now discord increasing, very sew seem to be content with their own conditions wherein again it is not to be admired, since the subtile wickedness of man hab proceeded so far, that every man is grown ingenious to destroy himself, with his cloths stall tin pieces outwardly, and his mind corrupted inwardly: outwardly they seem to obey Laws, and in all places they sowe deceit, but the end of it is, that a man grows infamous by it, and dies hated of all men.

int te la

sairt th

integra

things, 1

announce:

may that

Kingdon

apon his

ried Go

Server of

DOOR STA

of good the Ho

fixoy ful flote wh

ttes.he

person b

is mean fairs cal

migalw

to him i

through

Govern

trumph from th

this was

the prop

and fare

the help

and our of and them the them the Men, on Throne:

Borier

CHAP. I.

Of the diversity of Habits.

The Cloathing of the Northern people was formerly far otherwife made than it is now a days, especially for the outward and inward Cloathing of Women. Hay the ontward, because of old time the famous women used Coats bound very straight to their Breasts and Arms, but they were monttrous wide in the Skirt, that one Maid was scarce sufficient to carry thele Trains; and she also in this abuse was something like to her Mistris; but on their Heads they wore fine Linnen Kerchiis, brought in from lar Countries, by Sea, by Merchant's for their profit; but under their Coverings they wear Golden Crowns interworen with pretious Stones, according as they were in quality and Riches : but as far as their Navelsthey used Gold Ribband for a Girdle, a Place of Gold or Silver being woven cast or beaten forth long, and two fingers broad. The other Women had very large sleeves, but these were Wedge-fathion in the middle, and they were that together with Silver or Guilt Buttons. Moreover the Ornament for their Heads was made of red Cloth that was narrow and Wedge-fashion on the top, and it had Silver Buttons to shut or open it; and the'e also had guilded Roles under Linnen Coifs that were very fine. And as their Gowns, especially of the Noble and Pealant Women, were very Breight and fbort, (except onely the price of the Cloth) fo the Cirizens wore very long Gowns, having square gilded Plates on the fore-part, from their necks to their feet, hanging down on both fides above the skirt. But the Maids nied a Garment over their thoulders, which figuified the prefervation of their Chaffity.

CHAP. II.

Of the chaste adorning of Virgins and rigour of Chastity.

The Ornament of Maids confifted in pretious large Gold or guilt Crowns, worn upon their Heads; and to preferve their Chaftity, there hung down from their Necks both before and behind, a white filk or Linnen Mantle: which the Religious now call a Scapular, or Patience; with this Habit or Cloak they guided all the parts of their body as with a bridle, as they walked or converted with any one, with an admirable modefly and grace, (never feeing or talking with men unless their Parents gave them License) and they were so modefly that they would scarce be intreated to look upon a man in publick, until they were marryed and but seldome then: so modefly did they carry their Eyes in all places, with-holding them from things lawful. Also the Northern women have a wonderful and constant defire to preserve their Chassity, that when they are honefily marryed, at certain times they will refrain their Husbands Embracements, and with that constancy, that they will lay a drawn sword between them in the bed to keep them as under; as Saxo speaks of one Thira. Daughter to a King of England; and moreover concerning the singular Chassity of many Virgins of that Age.

CHAP. III.

Of the Benediction of the Catholick Kings.

He that must reign over a faithful people, after a Catholick manner, is wont to be blessed with many and great Benedictions, that he may be more accepted by God, more profitable for the p. ople, and more fecure for himfe.f. But first he swears treely by the facted Evangel of God: and in the presence of God and his Angel, he promifeth that he will keep the Laws, Julice, and Peace of the Church of God, and for the People subject to him, with the Observation of all the Rights and Priviledges, and all things for their good: and hereupon he requires the Benediction of the Church, and it is given him, that he may multiply in the Gifts of Graces, and may every where be compafied about, and protected by the right hand of God: that being adorned with Abraham's Faith, Moyfes's Meeknels, David's Humility, Solomon's Wildome, he may please God in all things, walk uprightly, fight faithfully and victoriously over the Enemies of the Crois of Christ, and keep Peace, which is to be defired in all things. Then he is annointed with visible Oyl, which is confectated in most facted words, that he may receive invisible Gifts, and when he hath justly discharged his Temporall Kingdome he may eternally reign with God the King of Kings. Moreover the Church prays, that by the efficacy of that holy Unction the Government may fit upon his shoulders, and that he may be a just, valiant, faithful, provident, unwearied Governour of the Kingdome and People, a Conquerour of Infidels, a Preferver of Justice, a Defender of the Holy Church and Christian Faith, to the honour and praise of the glorious Name of God, Lastly that he may use the Sword given him by virtue from God, to take Vengeance on wicked men, for the praise of good men, that he may do Justice with it, destroy Iniquity, defend and protect the Holy Church of God, and the faithful people belonging to it, that he may defiroy false Christians, and in mercy help and defend Widows and Orphans, reflore what is made desolate, and so preserve them, that in this tryumph of Virtues, he may deferve to reign without end, with the Saviour of the World, whole person he represents. Moreover there is a Crown set upon his head: thereby is meant Glory and Honour, and valorous Actions: that he shall in all Adverfities take part and defend the Ministers of the Church of Christ; and that he may always appear a faithful Executor, and good King, in the Kingdome given to him from God, and by the Papal Benediction, in place of the Aposiles, who through Faith subdued Kingdoms, and of all the Saints, to the people under his Government. That being adorned with the Jewels of Virtues, amongst the glorious Champions, and crown'd with the reward of Eternal Felicity, he may triumph with Christ for ever. Then taking the Scepter in his hand, he underflands that he is bound to cherish the good, to fright the bad, to reduce those that wander our of the way, to lend his hand to them that flip, to beat down the proud and to relieve the humble. After this, when the King is enthroned, and fits on his Throne the Arch-Bishop laich to him, (who brought him in with the help of the rest of the Bishops) Stand, and hold from henceforth the place, God hath made thee, his Vicegerent, by the Authority of the Almighty God, and our delivery of ir, namely of all the Bishops, and other servants of God : and the nearer you see the Clergy attend at the sacred Altar, remember to give them the greater honour in convenient places, that the Mediator of God and Men, may confirm thee a Mediator between the Clergy, and the people in this Throne of the Kingdome, and that Jefus Christ may canfethee to reign with him. Last of all the Metropolitan, amongst other Ceremonies, makes a Prayer to God for the King: Be thou a Coat of Mail for him, against the Armies of his Enemies, a Helmet in Advertity, Wildome in Prosperity, and an everlasting Buckler to defend him; and caute the people to be faithful to him; the Nobles

gins of

ife made

and Clos-

le famous

tems but

cientito

Militia

optaties,

Year Gol-

in quili-

Guille, z

o hingers

Vedge-fa-

Bottons.

Was nar-

or open

ery inc.

ere very

IN WOR

t necks

suled a

Dallity.

rowns,

gdown

:which

ik they mered

talking

eff-than

were

all pla-

baves

are ho-

emonth

ninche

Kingot

1111

me poe

Mich 20

to lead

pointed

WICTIL

Priest Co

advenier

Sed Cett

on tho

that by ti

Q:Ring

I grad

Ici-Osza

TADES AND

Autue

are allo.

Dibach

Come

Alfo;

foot time

the he is

may live peaceably, and love Charity, may fly from Covetoufness, and speak Jutlice, may keep Truth, that they may always triumph and continue Conquerours in peace. Also changing what must be changed, he prays for the Queen, in what concerns the semale Sex, and wisheth many such wishes to her, in a reverent manner from God, &c.

CHAP. IV.

Of Kn ghts and their Oath.

TAving now dispatcht the Coronation, according to the premised Ceremo-Inies towards God and Men, which are to be commended in all Ages; the King himself, according to the antient Laws of his Kingdoms, freely grants new pri iledges to divers conditions of men, fo far as it is fit, and to whom it concerns, or elle he confirms tome that were formerly granted by his Ancestours, and augments them. Lafily, he creates Knights abundantly, bestowing on them Fee-Farms, giving them a Cirdle, a Sword, and a Buckler: yet such an Oath is first taken, which is administred by some Bishop, who affists at the Coronation; I, N. pray God fo to help me, and the bleffed Virgin Mary, and St Ericus, as I will to the utmost of my power with my life and estate, defend the Catholick Faith, and the Holy Evangel, and defend the Church, and the Ministers of it, in their Liberties, and will stand against all Injustice, and will maintain Peace and Inflice defend young Children Orphans, Virgins, Widows, and poor people, and will be true to my King and to the Kingdome, and my Countrey; and juttly use and exercise my Military condition to the honour of God, to the utmost of my power: So God affilt me, and all his Saints, Amen. And they were wont fo faithfully and frictly to observe this Oath, that when they heard War proclaimed against the Enemies of the Fairh-especially the schismatical Moscovites, in the Eastern part, or the Kingdome of Sweden, and Finland; and when the Pope proclaimed a Cruciat against the Turks, they presently at their own cost would come well armed, chearfully to fight the Lords Battails, or travel to the Holy Land, receiving at the Sepulchre of Christa Warlick Girdle, and they would of their own accord joyn with the Armies of the Christians, to fight for their Religion against the Turks: and by this means it oft fell out, that they returned glorious Conquerors into their own Countrey, and at last into their Heavenly and everlasting Countrey, to receive a Crown there.

CHAP. V.

Of the Marriages of the Commons.

It is a Custome of the common people amongst the Gsths, and Swedes, and such as desire to be marryed, to use many Ceremonies, repeated at divers times, in divers manners and orders, and before divers Witnesses, especially for this reason, that they may with more constancy live together, that there may be no need of a Divorce, though the Law allow it. For the Parents of the Maid that is to be desired in Marriage, do diligently enquire of what Stock, Honour, Fame, or Insamy Honessy, or Dishonessy, Manners, and Industry, the Suiter is: also whether he be no Bastard, and understanding the man to be virtuous, two Witnesses being present of the Father and Mothers Kindred, the Father presents his Daughter in these words unto her Suiter that stands by;

or a texestore conductores and despite

Ceremo-

ger; the

TADES BOW

om it con-

nechaers.

ig on them

an Outh is

donition -

NW, III

Catholick

113 OC 11- ID

Peace and copie, and

and jultly

ormost of

Nar pro-

plantines, the Pope

if would

be Holy

could of eir Reli-

medgio-

enly and

day, and at divers specially sere may as of the cls, Hone Suiter Give thee this my Daughter, for an honourable Wife, to have half the Bed, and to possess the Dores and Keyes, and every third penny in thy Goods moveable and unmoveable, and to all Rights that Upper Swede bath from St. Eticus, and St. Eticus gave to them. In the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, Amen.

And thus the Marriage Agreement takes force, and making haft: when things are tipe, other better Ceremonies being added, they make an end of it, especially with fuch that the Kindred, Acquaintance, and Friends, with some prindent Man to lead on the Men, and some grave Matron to lead on the Women, at a day appointed they may ride in pomp to their Parish Church in greater honour : where burning Torches, made after a wonderful manner, are lighted, and the Bride with a Crown on her head, is brought forth to receive the Benediction of the Priest and the standing before the High Altar by her Bridegrooms side, both of their Confents being folemnly asked, for their living together in prosperity and adverficy, by putting on of a Ring and by a Nuprial Benediction, all the premifed Ceremonies are ratified. Nor shall I pass over it, that when the Ring is put on, those that stand by, hold their Fisis one against the other behind her back, that by this means they may confirm this Act, as it is wont to be observed in creating of a Knight, that he may remember. They that are prefent at fuch Marr ges, as Friends, Kindred, Acquaintance, freely give them many gifts, as Horles, Oxen, sheep, Beds, Woollen-Cloth, and Corn; that by thole happy beginnings, they may live the more chearfully together. But a Horse, an Oxe, and an Axe are delivered to them with special Ceremonies, that they may know they come to the same labour, and to partake of the same danger that they must, will, and nill the same things, until they be divorced by the Law, or by Death. There are also many Ceremonies used when they go to bed, that the Priest of the Parith or the Clerk, must sing a Carol, or Pfalm.

Come Holy Ghost, with an Invocation of Divine Assistance, that he would from above bestow all happiness on this Marryed Couple.

Also it is the Custome, that some of the choicest Dishes shall be presented to the marryed Pair, sitting on the bed, that they may eat with the standers by for a short time; and then their Friends taking their leaves of them, they are lest in peace: but the next day the new Bride, with her hair wrapt close in, comes very assably, and brings Silver Cups filled with some choice Liquour; and for a sign that she is now Mother of the Family, she drinks freely to them.

3

CHAP, VL

prejents

OWS:RDO

Igitt /

CHAP. VI.

Of Adulterers, and their punishments.

A woman committing Adultery, if the be proved to by the Testimony of fix men, loseth her Dowry, and whattoever she brought along with her, when she came to her husband, who is to have all. For he hath power of both her lives, and is Heir to her in them, by virtue of the municipal Laws of the Countrey of the Goths and Sweds: But if he will be content with the forfeit, he hath that determined by the Laws of the Land: yet I pass that over willingly, though there is a set part due, severally to the King, the Bishop, and to the Chamber of that City. If an Adulterer cannot pay a pecuniary mult, then must two stones be laid upon the Womans shoulders; and she binding a Cord about his privities, must draw him through the City in the sight of all the people. And lastly, he must forswear the City, that he will never come there again. If one of the two commit the like fault, the party offending onely is punished, and the other is declared innocent. But there is a special gite or reward set for the City-Officer, who serves upon such occasions.

The end of the Fourteenth Book.

Olaus

principal to princ

certaine a con fee cert action my, made in

Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

The divers Exercises of Men.

An Epitome of the Fifteenth Book.

t Herelore both Edea Busine forcibly to get the Victory, that his more for

CHAP. I. Of the Exercise of Children.

Har the Children of the Goths and the young men might not be fulfered to wax dull in idleneile, or employ the first years of their youth in wicked Arts, it hath been alwaies a custom, that their tender age should be exercised in divers recreations; but chiefly in military actions, in shooting, and according to every ones capacity to employ themselves with diligence : after this manner, that they will not give their Children any bread unlesse they first hit the mark with an arrow, that is placed of purpose for them by their Governours. Wherefore there are some boyes scarce above 12 years old, that are to cunning in shooting, that being commanded to hit the head, breaff, or feet of the imallest birds that are very far from them, they will do it infallibly with a shaft : and so will old men that have their fight. Saxo the Danish Historian brings a monstrous example of this, concerning a certain old man, whole croffe-bow had such a huge nut, that he could fer ten arrowes to the string: and these being shot vigorously against the Enemy, made so many wounds in his body. T left when all Merdows, Fields, and Woods grow graen stadflowells, and woods grow graen stadflowells, and who being in Career, that is, in the vigil of the Jalwiche Baptitt (a luch and the first the first feel of the commenced and the first feel of the feel of the first feel of th

ony offix

er, when her lives, lintrey of

ichat dethere is hat City. and upon

fortwest imit the red inno-

ves upon

CHAP. II.

Of their custome of driving away the Winter, and receiving of 999999 Summer.

He Southern Swedes and Goths that are very far from the Pole, have another cu'tome, that on the first day of May, when the Sun is in Taurm, there should be two horse Troops appointed of young and luity men; as if they were to fight some hard conflict. The one of these is led on by the Captain who is chosen by Lot, who hath the name and habit of Winter, and is clothed with divers skins, and armed with fire-forks, calling about Snow-balls and pieces of Ice, that he may prolong the cold; and thus he rides up and down in triumph, and he shews and makes himself the harder, the more the ice-sic es teem to hang from their floves: On the other fide, the Captain of the other Troop is for Summer, and is called Captain Florio, and is clothed with green boughs and leaves, (for there are fearle any flowers then) and Summer garments that are not very throng; and both their ride forth of the field into the City, Winter and Summer, but from divers places, and one after another, and with their fire-Spears they fight, and make a publike shew, that Summer hath conquer'd Winter.

CHAP, III.

South Allow Of the Jame, O Strong at all

"Herefore both fides firiving forcibly to get the Victory, that fide more for-Libbs (haranesse of the Winter yet breathes from the Ayr, temperate or sharp. If the sharpnesse of the Winter yet breathes frost, they lay ande their Spears, and riding up and down; and call ashes ming ed with live-sparks of fire taken forth from the graves, or from the altar, upon the spectarors. Also they who in the same dressing and habit are auxiliary Troops, cast tire-balls from their hories upon those that come to see them. But that the Person of Summer with his band of Horse may not be deprived of his defired honour, for want of green boughs and flowers, he shews openly his boughs of Birch or Tiel-Tree, that are made green long before by art, as by the heat of their Stoves, and watting them, and thefe are privately brought in as if they newly came from the Wood. But upon this occasion, because Nature is defrauded, those that fight for Winter, presse on the more, that the victory may not be got by fraud, or may confin in a pleasing Triumph; yet the sentence is given for Summer by the favourable judgment of the people, who are unwilling to endure the tharp rigour of Winter any longer; and to Summer gets the victory with the general applause of them all, and he makes a gallant Fealt for his Company, and confirms it by drinking cups, that he could fcarce win with

-dea wide to Miners and ad CHAP. IV. it distall on each

and sit finisgs theore to Of the May-Feafts : gairte dross sworts and the

coming a certain old mans.

to many wounds in his body T last when all Meadows, Fields, and Woods grow green and flourish, the Sun being in Cancer, that is, in the vigilof St. John the Baptist, (which day our Auncestors held solemn with great festivity, and taught and commanded

Tin wool that con them at CONTROL mortons uicd to b creenly o

WIODGE

SEE PART ## H DATE SEL

midde bohaho

that We

Sty who Pipes, ou

COSTS AND

出处地

many and

in Talera

ing and go

ing tree

vill, fir

pizia dol.

contiant !

COTOLOGS

10g 20d 1

men may

commen

the Exam

Q10FCIO sechey a them, and thin Itali digita top COTATE AND that turn or her, th

thirthe

MOCCH AS

ook XV

tare an-

Taurus,

nen; 13

by the

it, and is

OW-DUS

away bat

re-lices

the other

th given

mer gar-

into the

her, and

per hum

oce for-

e force

reaches

wag ed

pon the

on that

enly his to as by ught in

ne Na-

rictory

gets the Feathfor

ID WICH

their posterity to observe it with great solemnity) all the people of both Sexes and all Ages, meet by Troops in the publick fireets of their Cities, or in the plain fields, making every where huge fires to dance and skip up and down with, and there they ling as they dance the noble actions of famous Men of old times both at home and abroad performed over the World; and what the most illufirious Women did to win to themselves eternal praise in preserving their chastiry, which they loved. Also they sing in their Country Rimes, Harps, and Pipes, ounding by turns what the degenerous and ignoble Nobility, cruel Tyrants, and bale women, not regarding honesty, have committed. the Maids, as their Mothers have first taught them, disclose in finging how many and great faults their husbands are guilty of, in playing at Dice, brawling in Taverns, luxury in Cloths, keeping of bale company, and continually drinking and glutting themselves. Again, the more ingenious Youth know how to fing together, how most irklome, deceitful, unruly, brawling, prating, theewith, flattering and unfaithful Women are, that the men alone may not be complain'd of. Then they fing what the perfidious Citizens, cratty Artificers, unconstant Merchants, snoring Sea-men, false Peasants, and the most cruel and coverous Governours of the Earth do; and this is fet forth with variety of finging and munical Instruments: especially moved for that rea on, that young men may learn how magnificent and glorious vertue is, and worthy of eternal commendation, to follow the fleps of good men, and to take heed and fly from the Examples of the wicked.

CHAP. V.

Of their Dice-playing, and playing at Tables or Chefs.

It is a Custome amongst the most illustrious Goths and Swedes, when they would honestly marry their daughters, to prove the disposition of the Suitors that come to them, and to know their passions especially, by playing with them at Tables or Chess. For at these Games, their anger, love, previsionesse, coverousnesse, dulinesse, idenesse, and many more mad pranks, passions, and motions of their minds, and the forces and properties of their fortunes are used to be seen: as whether the Wooer be rudely disposed, that he will indiscreetly rejoyce, and suddenly triumph when he wins; or, whether when he is wronged, he can patiently endure it, and wisely put it off.

CHAP. VI

Of their dancing in Arms.

Moreover, the Northern Goths and Swedes have another Sport to exercife Youth withall, that they will dance and skip amongst naked swords and dangerous weapons: and this they do after the manner of Masters of defence, as they are taught from their Youth by skillful Teachers that dance before them, and sing to it. And this play is shew'd especially about Shrovetide, called in Italian, Maschararum. For before Carnivals all the youth dance for 8. dayes together, holding their swords up: but within the scabbards for 3. times turning about, and then they do it with their naked swords listed up: after this, turning more moderately, taking the points and pummels one of the other, they change ranks, and place themselves in an hexagonal figure; and this they call Rosam: and presently they dissolve it, by drawing back their swords and listing them up, that upon every ones head there may be made a fourte

flourith, (which manded cheia

國際

放性的

分田地

part h

東京は 中の

出版四

their date.

fane; m inhimp neland r

noiences o

offence as

fquare Rofa, and then by a most nimble whisking their swords about collaterally, they quickly leap back and end the sport; which they guide with pipes or songs, or both together, first by a more heavy, then by a more vehement, and lastly, by a most vehement dancing. But this speculation is scarce to be understood but by those that look on, how comely and decent it is; when at one word, or one commanding the whole armed multitude is directed to fall to sight; and Clergy-men may exercise themselves, and mingle themselves amongst others at this sport; because it is all guided by most wise reation.

CHAP. VII.

Of their Dancing in Rings.

There is also another Exercise for young men, that they may by a certain rule lead on and back again a Dance round about with other Instruments; but by the same are that was used by the Dancers with swords. For firth being included in circles, or rings, they fing modelfly the Deeds of famous men, and with Pipes or Drums playing they go round, and turn back again, by the word onely of him that is the Leader, whom they call the King. Then fooling their round rings, they make a little more speed, and by a mutual inclination (as they did before with their swords) they make a Rofa, that they may appear in a lexangular figure. And that this may be done more folemnly, and with greater noise, they bind little braile bells to tinckle at their knees, like Morris-dancers. There is also another kind of Dance or Play, where, upon a woodden Engine men are carried in the Ayr by the motion of Wheels: or elfe they port otherwife, being very nimble of body: as with Spears, about which they will turn themselves; also with Ropes that they will walk on by curs; and with hoops, and they will flide through thefe like fish; also with Planks, whereby they will hang by one hand in the Ayr, and this is called tumbling, because the youth dance more lightly. Also they cast the Sledge, the Barr, and tre many more recreations, according to the leafon of the year; as Running, Leaping, Wreftling, and walking on their hands with their heels upward. They we also to dance in their harness that rattles as in the Wars, and thefe are governed by the Minitrel that playes flower or tofter, that they may leap fo with their Swords and Bucklers,

CHAP. VIII.

Of their Dancing about the Fire.

It is the custome to make great fires in cold weather before the Pallaces of Northern Kings and Princes, with Firr-Trees chiefly, whereof there is great plenty there: for by the burning of them there is made such a noise, that those that see it not, but hear it afar off, suppose that the beams and Houses tall down. And that that natural noise may not appear to be in vain, by the tound of the Drum the most valiant men are called, and they dance round these fires; and they dance so violently, and hold so fast, that the last man must needs fall in the fire, as if he should break a strong chain; and then leaping forth again by the applause of the rest that dance, he is set in the his heit Seat, that he may presently for spoiling the Kings fire, drink up one or two great Cups of the strongest Ale. For by that most sound drink, yet drank off very toberly, he may regain his forces, and so he quickly returns to his fel-

OC XV

atera -

Pages or

ent, and

e under-

n at one

क है। क

tem chies

Wife 1814

r Initro-For finis f famous

k again, Then kual innat they olemnly, r knees,

where, vheels: , about t on by fo with ad cumge, the eat; as ir beels lars, and ney may low-dancers that ran round the fire; who likewise topled by motion, fire and thirst, are willingly drawn presently to the punishment appointed; except those who by custome were so rowzed by the fire when they dance, and are so strong and nimble, that they can scarce ever be thrust into the fire any more. For holding very tast, they learn by experience, to be more cautions at this sport. And therefore these are honoured to drink greater cups, though they are no delinquents against the Kings fire. But the rest also continuing their dancing by course merrily till midnight, they fall almost by turns into the stame; and by this means, sresh-water Souldiers, and by many exercises, gain such strength of body commonly, that they will endure firmly in fire, dancing and hard rubs, that when Wars come indeed, they can the better sustain all violences of it. Also they cast Dice who shall leap through the fire in his clothes. But if any man by malitious presumption shall in jeast commit an offence at the Kings Gate, he will scarce escape from being burnt in the fire.

The End of the Fifteenth Book.

The Epicomosé mossissemb Back

Olaus

aces of there is a noise, my and a veim dance the last yet then in the core or drank

his fel-



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

OF

Ecclefiafficall Fashions.

The Epitome of the Sixteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Of the Custome of praying in Churches.

He Northern people being to come from most remote Villages to their Parochiall Churches for Baptilme, bring no other weapons with them befides a croffe-bow, a Sword, and an Ax. Croffe-bows, Ifay, by reason of cruel beasts, namely, huge Bears, and devouring Wolves, who in three moneths, January, February, and March, are more fierce than at any other time of the year, which are then killed, with a vow first made to God, and they keep it faithfully, That the skins of the wild beatis flain by them, shall be offered as a facrifice for the Priests to tread on when they lay Masse at the Altar: and hence is the original of it, that when the weather is extrea n cold, the Priests stand upon Bears skins; but if a Wolf, or Lynx, or Fox or any other kind of beaft were catched in their nets, they fell that faithfully to buy wax Candles for the Churches. I speak also of Swords, that if need be, they may keep off villains from them. Then they carry Axes, by reason of Trees cast down in the waies by cruel Tempests, that they may passe freely, and remove them, or may quickly make up Bridges that are beaten down by sudden inundations. Also they carry long Spears for staves to leap over great ditches : yet they have also staves with Calenders upon them to carry in their hands, as I taid in the first Book: wherewith they teach, dispute, and demand questions, and agree upon the conjunctions and oppositions of the Moon, and her course;

and

I not a great in great in the contract in the

Ringa, the That the the that pe Gh.S. Jean alive with

The p Tood Pos, and isse when tony and beforess pid, and hopers to winte and help. In Kanadia,

the Street

illages to

ons with

vs, I(2y,

Wolves, than at made to by them,

Marke at extream on or any yeo buy ye, they of Trees and rey judden enchas: nds, as I judienne,

cours:

and upon their fixed and moveable Feafis, also the figns of the daies by infallible experience, as if they read it out of a book; are expounded and interpreted thereby.

CHAP. II.

Of the Funerals and Burials of Princes.

I T was a custome amongst the Antients to hang up the bodies of Princes in green Trees, especially Okes, as in sacred places consecrated to the gods, or to burn them with stames of Juniper-wood, or to bury them in the ground with a sword and a club, in certain Mountains, and to set a sence about them of great stones in a round or square sashion; as Saxo speaks of Harald, (lib.8.) King of the Danes, who was conquer'd and slain; for the King of Sweden, Ringo, that conquer'd him, made him a stately Funeral. For this is their piety, That the Conquerons will sollow the conquer'd with Funeral solemnities; and he that performs these Rites for his enemy that his dead, (as the same Saxo slith, lib.3.) gains the good will of him that succeeded: and he conquers him that is alive with his good turn, who shows humanity to the dead.

CHAP. III.

Of the variety of the fick, and of their Diseases and Medicaments.

"He peculiar diseases of the Northern people are these: The Cough, Stone. Tooth-ach, pains in their Eyes, Collicks, Agues, Flegme, Scabs, the French Pox, and mall Pox; the Plague alio, but that comes but feldom: and therefore when it comes, it more cruelly destroyes those that are over-given to gluttony and excesse. There is also another disease in the Camp, that vexes the befiegers and the befieged, and it is fuch a one, that their fleshy parts grow stupid, and melt like wax, with corruption under the skin, and will pit with your fingers touching them; and the teeth are ready to fall out; their skins grow white and wan, and they grow fluggish, and nauseat meats, defiring to have help. In the vulgar tongue of the Nation it is called Schoerburh; in Greek, Kazegia, it may be, by reason of that soft corruption under their skins; and it feems to breed from eating falt meats, that are not digefied, and to be foftered by a cold exhalation from the walls. But it is not fo forcible where the walls are covered with boards on the in-fide. But if this mischief grow spreading overmuch, they firive to cure it by drinking Wormwood Beer, as they use to cure the Stone perfectly by drinking old Ale and Butter boyl'd: and thus they totally help, or much ease the pain of the Stone in the Kidneys.

The End of the Sixteenth Book.

Horns;

at the fi

and Stee

ny place Cowshi

the field

€100c0

putted:

ted for

teed on

they are Worms

burning

Cometic

White:

pilonsi

they bee

theie W

and the

ath the

mi,andi

Etth to

Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UP SAL:

OF

Tame and Domestique Creatures.

The Epitome of the Seventeenth Book.

The Preface.

S there are many and divers forts of Creatures, all the world over, disposed of as proper to their places and natures, as Elephants, Camels, Leopards, Lions, Oftridges, Tigers, Apes, and fuch like, that multiply innumerably in bot Countries, and are without any thick hair ; fo alfo in cold Countries very many beafts are found, but they are very bairy because of the sharp Winters; as are white Bears, black bulls, high Elks, tall ranged Deer, herce wolves, devouring Gules, quick lighted Lynxes, falfe Otters, medicinal Beavers, fearful Does, crafty Foxes, both white and black, and other bealts that are of unknown names and natures elfewhere, which I Shall write of Severally underneath in their particular Chapters in order; especially for that eause, that the Pions Reader may see how admirable is the love and affection of the most high Creatour toward all his Creatures, in preferving them all the world over, Subject to his disposing, especially in the most cold Northern Climate, having given them a natural fagacity; namely, that when they are shut in on all sides with Snow and Ice, and no food to be found on the ground, they will not onely live, but bring forth young ones and feed them, and amidft the Ibarpeft Elements take no harm.

CHAP, I.

d over,

M, Ca

ike-That

or thick

ie very

b Elks,

es, falle

black

bich 1

grater;

15 160

IT ME-

the majo

its that

found not feed

HAP. I.

CHAP. I.

Of Rams and Lams.

Here is an Island in the Gothick Sea, which is subject to the Kingdome of the Goths, or Sweden, called Gothland, that is, good Land,, by all that frequent it; because amongst the Northern Islands, it ought deserved by to be reputed and magnified for a happy and plentiful Land, by reason of the many Natural Gitts bestowed upon it. This Land produceth larger and stronger Rams or Weathers, than any other place doth, and they have 4.00 s. Horns; and they are so fierce, by reason of their Horns, that at Rutting time, unless their Horns be first filed or saw'd offs, they will hurt other Creatures, and run at the shepheard himself. They have soft long Wooll, which sormerly at Rome, being wrought into a small Garment; the Artificers that make Birreat highly commended. Also all the North Countrey shath great multitudes of great Rams and Sheep, and the Females of them have crooked Horns. There are also many places toward the North Pole, where neither Rams nor sheep, Buils nor Cows have any Horns.

CHAP. II.

Of Oxen and Cows.

"HE Northern Kingdoms, especially Vermelandia, and Dalia, by reason of their gallant Pastures, breed most stately Oxen: Also the Provinces of the Vefiregoths do the same : And these Oxen yearly are multiplyed, not so much in the growth of their Bodies, as in Multitudes. Norway, Swedland, and Finland, hath the like, that are fit for their Summer or Winter Carts, or elie to be used in the fields; and they use there as they do Horses to draw the Plough: but Cows are never set to draw Waggons, or to go to Plough: nor do they do any work, beeause of the hope of their Calves: yet these when they are very young, being parted from their Dams, when cold weather doth rage, are kept in Stoves prepared for it, and fed there: and when the Winter is sharp and long, their Cattel feed on Oken Bark, instead of Hay or Straw. But in Summer, and clear Nights, they are kept in Pastures by Shepheards, for fear of hurtful Worms, and Grasse-Worms; which their Keepers in all places, with making a smoak with Pitch, and burning Pine-Trees, either burn or drive away. But not all, for when Autumn comes, the Grafs-Worms will go into the skins of the Lean Oxen, and there keep winter; and in the Springs they will eat their skins, and vex their Holt, as Caterpillars that feed on leaves of Trees; and these sticking in the small leaves where they breed, pass over the Winter more freely: but Oxen who are troubled with these Worms, are parted from the rest, as much as they can, to be fatted and slain, and then their skin on their backs appears like a fieve with many holes, and lofeth the price for anothers fault. But in those places they are kept more healthful, and sooner grow fat, where they are neither tortured and wearied with the stingings of Flyes, nor bitings of these Ox-Flyes, and do not want their fill of green grafs.

pop th

The last

with Sa load's.

Will tre

Nine

Non

Laplan

cause is other is their W

chai, 6

do:bu

branche on all fi

thewso

Superfi

thick, ye

for its n

dingan

ked for

2 Mane

Witter

如:自

fire bon

they the

thateter

CHAP. III.

Of the Northern Horfes.

The Norway Horses are small of stature, but wonderful strong and swift to pais over Mountains, and stony ways; but those of Sweden and Gothland will travel incessantly, and very swiftly with more meat, over Lakes and high Hills, and deep Thickets. But those of Oeland, because they are small, are more for fight than service, though amongst them there are sound of a different kind that are notable for labour. Also the Finland Horses are of good qualities.

CHAP. IV.

Of their War-Horfes.

But the greatest Horses that the North produces, especially in the Kingdome of the Vestrogoths, are not onely by a publick Edict sorbidden to be used by Carriers, but there is a very strict command to breed them up, & teach them for service in the Wars, and desence of the Countrey. For such Horses used to Wars in Winter, that are sought in the Northern Kingdoms, being accustomed to the Cold from their Birth, can well endure the Winter, and will carry the Armed Rider with much courage and strength whither soever they are directed by him, and never stumble when they go or run; and for this cause they may be compared with all the best Horses, that Spain, or Naples, or France, or Germany breeds. If not prefer'd before them. Yet they are not so twist as the African, Numidian or Turkish Horses; but they satisfie for their want of swiftness by their great boldness and strength, that they are found to be fit for the greatest wars, considering the nature of the people, the place and quality of the Season.

CHAP. V.

Of their Cats.

Cially they are white, that are found in the Northern Climates; and their will not onely clear the houses, and mens Habitations, Barns, and Granaries; but also Fields near to Houses, of Rats and Mice, and Dormice, by a wonderful fagacity: But Wild Cats lye in wait for Birds, and small Creatures, to feed on; and these Cats skins, if Garments be lined with them, are wonderful profitable against the Winter Cold.

CHAP. VI.

Of He and She-Goats.

There is greater flore of He and She Goats in the Northern parts, than in any other parts of Europe because of the Mountain feeding, and the Goat-Keepers most diligent care: Wherfore She-Goats there have great bodies, thick legs, short full necks, long Ears hanging down, little Heads, long naked thick necks below the Cervix, with tall broad Horns, they are flout, warlick, and strong, to that they fear not to fight with small Wolves, when the Dogs help them. They are almost all white, and so are the She-Goats: In the Winter they feed on the Rinds of Pine-Trees, and Moss, and Poplar Boughs. Their skins are carried forth in

great

great thips for to make gain of in Germany, and they are made up by Tens: and from thence they are dispersed again into the World : so are their cheeses, because they nourish much, and are medicinal, where the Flesh is gross, or twels, The Inhabitants feed more greedily on their Flesh dryed in the Sun, Wind and with Salt, than when they are new killed; and that in Summer, and time of Hul-

CHAP. VII.

What Gifts are given to the new Married.

THe Northern people have a Custome, that when the Maid new marryed is in a mean condition, to begin and to increase their flock, and housholdstuff, they will freely give them a Hog, a Sheep, a Cow; and to the man young Colts, a Dog, a Car, and a Goofe,

CHAP. VIII.

IN the North parts of both the Bothnians, (for fo are the urmost parts of the North Countrey called, as if it were from the bottome of a Vessel) and great Lapland, there is a Beast with three Horns, that is of the kind of Stags, but is far ratter, ftronger, and twifter; and it is called Rangifer, for two reasons; one is, because it carryeth high horns on the head, like the Boughs of an Oke-Tree: The other is, because the Instruments that are put upon the horns and breast to draw their Waggons withall in Winter, are called in that Language Rancha, and Lochai, of these horns it hath two bigger than the rest, growing as the Stags horns do : but they are with more branches, and farther out, for they augment to fifteen branches. Another stands in the middle of their head, with little small branches shorter than the other standing round about it. These arm the head on all fides against the beasts that are Enemies unto it, especially Wolves; and it shews comely, and to be admired amongst other strange things. The meat this beast eareth is Mountain Mois, that is white, chiefly in Winter, that lyes on the Superficies of the ground covered with Snow. And though these Snows be thick, yet by an Inftinct of Nature, will it dig in them like a wilde horse to seek for its meat. In Summer it feeds on Leaves and Boughs of Trees, better flanding and going, than stooping down the head, (because the horns are too crooked forward) and that inclining the head obliquely, and on one fide. It hath a Mane like a Horle, and the Hoofs are divided in two, being almost round by Nature, because it runs or goes over the high snow, carrying a man on its back, where the inow is hardned in Valleys, Mountains, or Fields.

ed and haved ad the mineral CHAP. IX.

Tours and John Mis Of the Profit of this Creature, die mande profit of

These Creatures made tame as Sheep, afford great profit to their Mafters; in their Milk, Skins, Sinews, Bones, Hoofs, Horns, Hair, and dainty Flesh to feed on : fome of the Inhabitants them fifteen, thirty, feventy, one hundred, or five hundred; and their Keepers drive them to Pasture, and home again, and they shur them up in Stalls, by reason of whole Troops of Mountain Wolves, that are most herce, that prey up and down; If-

d fwifito Name will

high Hills, te los Epis that are

Kingdome be wed by h them for to Wats

red to the ie Armed by him, e compa-Germany

African, bytheir Cit Wats,

d Grana-V# WOO-

n in any Keepers es.fport

s below hasthey ealmolt Rindsot . forth in great

はない

加坡田田田

chatgrow

diagai)

bot. I

Boas, II

Saddlets Fleib oft

Windir

DON TO D

If they be carried into other Countries, especially beyond Seas, they will not live long either by reason of the Climate changed, of unusual food they seed on, unless their ordinary Keeper feeds them: as I remember that formerly the most illustrious Prince of Sweden, StenoSture, the younger, sent six of these Rangi ers to Fred rick, Duke of Holfatia, and he tent two Keepers with them, the Man and Wise that were Laplanders; these being carryed out of their Native Countrey, and being under the Government of others, because they wanted their rest, and manner of living, neither they nor the Beasts wanting a particular care for them, did live long. Likewise in the year of our Lord, 1533. Gustavus King of Sweden sent ten pair of these Beasts to some Noble men in Prassia, both for right, and for propagation, and they were all let free into the Woods. But there came nothing of it, and changing the place did not profit for their increase.

CHAP X.

Of the Chariots for men drawn by ranged Deer.

VVE E must know that there are two forts of these Rangisers, Wilde and Tame; that being brought under, will faithfully serve mens use. But the rest that are Wilde and live in the Desarts, are given onely to increase, and serve to be hunted. The tame ones are fitted for mens Chariots, and these will excellently well draw the most loaded Waggons through Countries and Fields, and they are laued usually with pretions Skins, Cloths, Fish of divers kinds; because for the most part the Laplanders feed on Fish, living upon catching of Fish in Waters that cannot be emptied of them; as I shall make it appear underneath, when I speak of their divers Exercises. Their Journey therefore is through plain Valleys, and tends most to Normay, whither they commonly go, as a place nearest for their Trassique, and a people most saithful to hold Friendship with. Those that are the Waggon-Matters, are commonly called Quenum, and if they please, or it need require, they will travail every day one hundred and fifty miles, that is thirty Gothick miles, or German miles; and these Creatures will run as fast as Horses,

CHAP. XI.

Of the Winter Chariots for these Rangifers.

The foresaid Laplanders get great commodity by their Winter-Chariots, especially because by the glibbinesse of these Carts made conformable to the Snow, they will make long journeys to places appointed for Merchandice, as Isaid before in the 11th. Book, speaking of the sashion of them; and of the proclamation, that they shall not be lent to strangers, because of the great swistnesse of them. But here I shall shew, that that swistnesse is caused by the skins of the ranged Deer outwardly made sast under their Winter-Chariots, and the art chiefly is this; That the former part of the skin shall be sowed sast before under the Chariot: whence it comes that the hair being turned outward, not onely makes it glib to go on, but strong to resss. that the Carter cannot sall back: otherwise in high Mountains they could never proceed or end their voyage they defire. And by this short way will the Travellers kill wild ranged Deer as they go, with their Bows and Arrows.

five hypotred; and their Keepels devenhence Pollute, and hours again, and they that them up to Settle, by, region of whole Troops of Mountain Works

wwob has on you gads some CHAP. XIL

k XVII

N WILLIAM y to don,

the most ingrento

Man and ountry,

tell, and forthem,

got Spr.

light and апісво-

a and

ilde and

. Bot the and farie mill ex-Fields,

ids; hee of Fish pear onciore is inly go, Friend-Querur, undred

CHAP. XII.

Of the Commodity of the Parts of this Creature.

Their Milk ferves for daily Food, and the Whey of it for convenient Drink. Their Skins ferve for Mans Covering, both of his Body, and of his Beds. Alto they ferve for Saddles for Horfemen, for Sacks, and Bellows for divers Artificers : for it is very tenacious, firong, and durable. The Sinews ferve inflead of Flax, that grows not in that cold Country, and they make Thred of them for Cloathing, as I faid before, Lib. 4. concerning binding thips together, where they want Iron. Their Bones and Horns are used by Artificers to make Bows, and Crois-Bows, and they feek after them much to make profit by them. Their Hoofs are good against the Cramp. Their Hair serves to token and stuff Horsemens Saddles, and Cushions, for to honour Ghests with, and to keep off the Cold. The Flesh of this Creature is excellent and very wholesome, dryed with Salt in the Wind, it will last many years; yet the Custome of the people is, when they carch new to put it to the old.

The end of the Seventeenth Book.

Olaus

mward, cannot their

barious,

able to andice, of the c (wifte skins is, and full be-

p. XIII.



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

OF

Wild Creatures.

The Epitome of the Eighteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Of the Elks or wild Asses, and the manner of taking them.

He Elks go in herds in the vast desarts, as Deer do; and by the Industry of the Hunters they are often shot with bows, or else by great dogs they are forced into caves in Rocks, and they seldome come forth alive; also when the greatest Elks lie on the ground, or stand up, a little Weazel sometimes will leap and catch them by the throats, that they will bleed to death; this small beast is so unsatiable in sucking of bloods, that there is scarce the like for its bignesse amongst all the Creatures. And some put this creature in a hollow Cave, and direct it with a string, and so they rob Swallows, Pigeons and Hens ness, and pull forth their young, and he will prey after them exceedingly, onely for this end, to suck their blood, as if he had a belly bigger than an Elephant.

CHAP. II.

Of the Battel of the Elks or wild Affes, against the Wolves.

But it doth not suffice, that this commodious creature is hunted by men with sharp and broad arrows, and a thousand traps that are laid for them in the vaste wildernesse, and by the foresaid Weazels that are contemptible in comparison

Thom pure firance (man's for cliented but Nobil tality, at ters, (with them, be have a pin

Hinds (a

de a so

THEBIS

nd the We then : and low the con

ny Wolse

dens mu

In the National Street are full Act, No them down the next the national street are full act and the full street are full act and the full street are full act and the full street are full str

なる中

STORE OF THE PERSON

comparison of its height; but there are most herce Mountain Wolves also, that lie in wait to dellroy them: and the way is this; When the Winters be flarp, and the Snows deep, the Wolves being hunger-starved, run in huge Troops ail the Defarts over to leek for their prey; and when the Lakes are irozen, they fearch for Elks, but they will run at them with their horns and hoofs, and kill them or drive them away. For a blow with the hoof is to forcible, that it will kill or wound the Wolt:and the Hunters find this to be very often true in their ftrongest dogs; and when a dog falls upon a Tree it will break like a Mushrom. The Elks by inflinet of Nature know the most fit places for to fight in, namely, upon the flippery Ice, for there they are thronger with their fhurp-pointed hoofs, and the Wolves keep their claws, as it were, wrapt up, and have no force with them : and whilest they fight, the Hunters commonly are not far off who follow the conquer'd party that leaves off first, untill they have killed him; and they get the greatest poils by others dangers. The fight is very flerce; for many Wolves, and some Elks, will lie dead on the ground: and these the Hunters take for the worth of their skins; and the rest of the Elks retire to fale places. Doubtleffe the Wolves would get the victory, being nimble on the tops of the frozen Mountains of Snow, when the Elks being heavy-loaden with their burdens, must needs fink in and become a prey to the Wolves. So provident Nature seems to have appointed to every creature a fit place to detend it self in.

CHAP. III.

Of Harts and Does.

Hough the most severe cold seems more to predominate in the Northern parts than in any other place, yet there is found an innumerable number of strange Creatures, as I have said in part, and shall tay more: amongst these for man's food, there Eiks spoken of, and Harts and Does, and Goats are molt effeemed; and therefore none were allowed by the ancient Law to hunt them but Noble men and their Officers, and priviledged persons, and men of hospitality, and chief rulers of Churches. And that by the covetouinesse of hunters, (whereof there is great number there) the Delatts may not be empried of them, but that they may propagate: yet such as find their horns in the woods, have a pledge of their future prey; and it is as hard to find there, as to fee the Hinds calve, or to see an Elk that is at liberty lowing, near the Sea-side.

CHAP. IV.

Of Castors.

In the Northern waters there is great abundance of these Creatures, because they are more still than the Rhine or Danow: where there is a perpetuall noile and roaring of Marriners. In the North the Rivers are infinite, and the Trees are most fit to build their houses with, and they build them with wonderfull Art, Nature teaching them. They go in troops to cut wood, and they hew them down with their teeth, and when they have eaten them off, they carry them to their caves by a wonderful way. For they cast one upon his back upon the earth, that is of their company, and not fit for labour, or one that is idle, or old, but chiefly one that is a run-away fro n some other company, and he terves for their Carr, they lay the wood between his hips and thighs, and they draw him home to their houses and unload him; and then they go forth again and return till their houses be made, that have two or three Chambers

197

he Indaby great e come or fland ts, that bloods, And

d for they he will if he had

them in cible in one above another, that their body may be above the water, and their tail hang down, which, as his hinder feet, are a but for the fish. For the tail is fealy like a fish, hard and thick as leather, and is distinguished strangely with many secret knots, and it is most delicate meat and medicine for those that are hurt in their guts. And skillfull Cooks know how to dreffe it for meat or Physick. The Castor hath such sharp teeth, that he will move down Trees by the Rivers as with a Scythe of Iron; and when he catcheth hold of a man's limbs, he never lets go his hold untill he break the bones.

CHAP. V.

Of the Gulos.

Mongil all Creatures that are thought to be infatiable in the Northern A parts of Sweden, the Gulo hath his name to be the principall; and in the vulgar tongue they call him Jersf, but in the German Language Vielfras, in the Sclavonish speech Rossamaka, from his much eating; and the made Latin name is Gulo; for he is to called from his gluttony. He is as great as a great dog and his ears and face are like a Cats: his feet and nails are very flurp: his body is hairy with long brown hair, his tail is like the Foxes, but fomewhat shorter, but his hair is thicker, and of this they make brave Winter Caps. Wherefore this Creature is the most voracious: For when he finds a carcasse, he devours fo much, that his body by over-much meat is stretched like a Drum, and finding a streight passage between Trees, he presseth between them, that he may discharge his body by violence; and being thus empried, he returns to the carcasse, and fills himself top sull: and then he presset again through the same narrow paffage, and goes back to the carkaile, till he hath devoured it all; and then he hunts eagerly for another. It is supposed that he was created by nature to make men bluth, who ear and drink till they spew, and then feed again eating night and day, as Mechovita thinks in his Sarmatia, The flesh of this Creature is altogether nieleffe for man's food: but his skin is very commodious and precious. For it is of a white brown black colour, like a damask cloth wrought with many figures; and it shows the more beautiful, as by the Industry of the Artifts it is joyn'd with other garments in the likenesse or colour. Princes and great men u'e this habit in Winter made like Coats; becanie it quickly breeds heat, and holds it long; and that not onely in Sweibland, and Gothland, but in Germany, where the rainty of these skins makes them to be more esteemed, when it is prifed in Ships among other Merchandile.

CHAP. VI.

Of honouring strangers with the coverings of these Skins.

The Inhabitants are not content to let these skins be transported into other Countries, because in Winter they use to entertain their more noble guests in these skins; which is a sufficient Argument, that they think nothing more comely and glorious, than to magnifie at all times, and in all orders their good guests, and that in the most vehement cold, when amongst other good turns they cover their beds with these skins.

And I do not think fit to overpasse, That when men sleep under these skins, they have dreams that agree with the nature of that Creature, and have an infatiable stomach, and lay snares for other Creatures and prevent them themfelves. It may be it is as they that eat hot Spices, Ginger or Pepper seems to

deep for falls up Trees, kills his

eliche

100 00

W2150

COGDS

THE

(stax)

rich.

trate to

Bean defin their Co formal are no la pres who Whereio when the

Barkens out, and fleep un there is a hospit, a hospit, a namely

Secondary and will in the feether and will in

be

ti til bane

Caly Plat a

ושתנים) לתבות

mit in their

Riters as

s, he rever

Northern

and in the ar, in the

arim name por rop m

as body is

e shorter,

Vherefore

devoors

and find-

t he may

to the

the fame

dia and

OF BRIDE

nin cui Crez-

eas and **ATODEN**

y of the

ners and A possogs

but in

licemed,

be inflamed; and they that eat Sugar feem to be choked in water. There feems to be another fecret of Nature in it, that those who are clothed in those Skins, feem never to be fatisfied.

The gors of this Creature are made into strings for Musicians, and give a harsh sound, which the Natives take pleasure in : but these temper'd with fweet founding strings, will make very good Munck. Their hoofs made like Circles and fet upon heads subject to the Vertigo, and ringing ears, foon cure them. The Hunters drink the blood of this beaft mingled with hot water: also tensoned with the best Honey it is drunk at Marriages. The fat or tallow of it, smeered on putrid Ulcers for an ointment, is a sudden cure. Charmers nie the teeth of it. The hoofs newly taken off will drive away Cats and dogs, if they do but fee it, as birds fly away if they fpy but the Vultur or the Buffard.

CHAP. VII.

Of the way of bunting of Gulo's.

By the Hunter's various Art this Creature is taken onely in regard of his pretious skin: and the way is this, They carry into the wood a fresh Carkaffe; where these beatts are wont to be most commonly; especially in the deep (nows (for in Summer their skins are nothing worth) when he imels this he falls upon it, and eats till he is forced to crush his belly close between narrow Trees, which is not without pain; the Hunter in the mean time shoots and kills him with an arrow.

There is another way to eatch this beaft, for they fer Trees bound afunder with fmall cords, and there fly up when they eat the carkaffe, and ftrangle them; or else he is taken, falling into pits dug upon one side, if the carkasse be cast in, and he is compelled by hunger to feed upon it. And there is hardly any other way to catch him with dogs, fince his claws are fo sharp, that dogs dare not encounter with him, that fear not to fet upon the most fierce Wolves,

CHAP. VIII.

Of Hares,

BEcause in cold Northern Countries there is a great multitude of Hares, I was delirous to fer forth the Nature of them, chiefly in the thrange changing of their Colours: For it is most certain, that all Northern Hares, after the Autumnal Equinoctial, especially fo foon as the Snow first falls, become white, and are no longer grey. I have feen Mice alto, who by always eating white Sugar, grew white, and loft the fame again, when the Sugar was taken from them. Wherefore what concerns the Food of the Northern Hare, it is most certain, that when the Earth is bound up with Snow and Cold, they feed on the Pine-Tree Bark, and of the Oke, and Aip and Poplar, and such like, that they naturally finde out, and not upon Snow, as Pliny thought, lib. 7. in the Winter-time. And they fleep under the thick boughs of Firr-Tree, that the Snow lyes thick about, but there is a Form left for them. For this Tree bath lefs Cold became of the thick boughs, and hath more fecret places to hide Creatures in, than any other Tree. In Summer the Hare thoofeth a fafe Harbour in Rocks, and Clifes, because the is naturally fearful, and knows that the is made a prey to all Creatures; and where the can escape, the hopes to do it by swift running : Yet not when the plays with a Weefil: for this though it feem to play, yet fastneth to close about the neck of ir, that the will prefently fetch blood at the Hares throat, run the never to fait, and will feed upon her; and thus is the overcome by craft, not by firength: also, by the Hawk flying swiftly, against which she can hardly ever save her selt, as she

100 Other le greets stom s

pood it d turns 2 55 100

an inia. t chemens to

100

Aa 2

STATE OF

DIACOS AND

Dences.

ture, the

even ima

called T

nimbly

hot his

SUMA

Cream

clothin

Sweden

them t

bignet

done er

beaffs in

enlarge

are lold

difficult

Cool and

Sorine

to be fi

which a

can by turning from a Dog. Hares are very common meat in the North, especially sod with black broth, as the manner of the Countrey is, it is very wholesome; also they roll the fiesh of them: yet some great believed Women find one
inconvenience by it, that when they feed on Hares, or a Hare is trod upon by
them, they bring forth Children with Hare Lips, their Lips being always parted
between their Nostrils and Mouth: unless they presently sew on a piece of the
breast of a very young Chicken, newly killed and bloody. They that have the Gout
bathe their seet in boyl'd Hare broth, when it is warm. Also the loyns of an old
Hare, bound to the seet, ease the Gout: Against Kibes in cold Weather, they apply the burnt hair of a Hare. The Factors of Moscovia make great account of
Hares Skins, especially such as are white, who sell many thousand Garments to
the Tartars, or exchange with them, that they may live peaceably.

CHAP, IX,

Of the Lynxes, and their Skins.

IN the Northern Woods the Lynxes are not so commonly bred, as Wolves; though they are as greedy as these. The Nature of the Lynx is never to look back, but he always runs and leaps forward. The meat he commonly or chiefly eats is Wild Cats; and as he most willingly feeds on them, so he always lyes in wait about their holes to catch them. The Skin of them, as they are framed with light Down, and rare Spots, are sold very dear, especially such as are taken in the most sharp Winter, for then their colour and virtue is best, but in Summer they are far worse.

CHAP. X.

Of Wolves and their fierceness:

S Africa and Egypt produce weak small Wolves, fo the cold North brings A shem up that are fierce and cruel; and that they are so indeed is seen by their fiercenels, especially when they lime the Bitches, and when it is excream cold; for then Travellers must go in Arms, to keep themselves and their Cattel fafe, especially great bellyed Women, whom the Wolves most hunr after, when they scent them. Therefore no Woman is suffered to travel alone, but she must have a Souldier to guard her. For it falls often out, especially in January, that men travelling in Winter Chariots, if they will fave their lives from Wolves, that flock abundantly about them, they must drive them off with Bows and Guns; Wherefore Travellers when they go upon their private occasions, or come to their Parish Churches, are always provided with such Instruments, as if they were to go to battail; and fometimes they fall on so fiercely, when Hunger, and Rage, and Cold, drive them on, or Natural Copulation, that they will come into mens houses, and eat up their Cattel, or carry them into the Woods with them when they have torn them: yet they do not do this unpunished, for the Countrey-men have Remedies in these distresses, that they lay Iron Gins with a Carcass tyed to them in the Snow, and when the Wolves come to eat the prey, these Iron Sickles cut off their feet, or else they kill them suddenly with their arrows, or elfe they fall into holes under the Earth, being greedy of the prey, and lo die of Hunger,

Whole-

find one

ys puned

ce of the

theGout

of an old

they ar-

to annough

ments to

Woller.

sto look

or chieffy

ys lyes in ned with on in the

der they

k brings

icen by

MITCHIN.

Cattel

r. when

the must

or, that

Wolres

pers and

100 Stock

cs, 25 if

lunger,

Il come

forthe

us with a

the prefs

5% 202

P. XI

CHAP. XI.

Of the many forts of Wolves.

There are in the Mountains called Dosfrine, that part the Dominions of Swethland and Norway, white Wolves that go in flocks, like sheep, wandring in the Valleys and Mountains. They feed on weak Creatures, as Mice and Moles, &c. The wild common Wolves are those that lye watching extreamly a ter the Heards of the Inhabitants, as after their Cows, Calves, Sheep, and Gosts, &c., against these that make the people poor, they have a general hunting day at the places and hour appointed that they may kill them with Nets, Dogs, and other Devices. But they take not so much care to deitroy the old Wolves, as to defleo, their Whelps, that they may not increase. Also some of these Cubs taken home though they seem to be tame, yet will they never forget their sierce Nature, though they be kept in chains, for they will prey on any other Creatures, even small Birds. But a Mongrel bred of a Welf, and a House-Dog, grows a great Enemy to all Wolves that prey on the flock. There is also a kind of Wolf called Those, that is taller than all the rest, but his legs are shorter, he will leap nimbly, and lives by Hunting; he will not hurt a man, and he changes his Coat nor his Colour; for in Winter he is hairy, and naked in Summer.

CHAP. XII.

Of Otters, and their diversity and falseness of their Skins.

THE Otters have a square mouth, and bite as Beavers, they are like them in their Skins; but they are a third part longer: and they are found in the Northern Waters, especially of the Upper Sweden, Helfingia, Medelpadia, Angermannia, Jempthia, and both Bothnia's: whole skins, as of Beavers and other Creatures, are carried forth in great abundance toward the Moscovites, and thence to the Tartars, because in those colder places they are procured for mens clothing very greedily, and that by bartering rather than for money. But in Sweden with some great men they are made to tame, that when the cock gives them the fign, they will leap into the fish-pond, and bring forth a Fish of that bignesse he commands them; and then another, and a third, untill he hath done enough as he was bid. The flesh of them is good onely to bait and catch beafts in hunting. And their skins are greatly uled by the Northern people, to enlarge the borders of their garments, because their skin will hold fait. They are fold by tens, as Beavers and Foxes, and Martins skins are: and they are falfified with smoke of a stone-tree upon coles, that they may appear to be of a thining black; but if you rub them presently with a white cloth, the colour is gone, and the tophistication is discovered. So Wolves skins powdred with Coal and Chalk, rubbed with a Linnen cloth, are proved to be fallified. So Squirrels skins, called in Italian, Doff a. ftrewed over with chalk, are discovered to be false by a black cloth. We mult learch out which colour is natural, and which artificiall; and to prize them.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Squerrils:

There is an infinite of these small creatures in the Northern Woods, and they differ in the thicknesse and colour of their hair; by one infallible rule, that the farther North these creatures are taken, the more costly are their skins, the

the cold being the cause of their colour. For under the elevation of the pole at 77 degrees, beginning at the very height of the pole: in all this space the Hunters are more tired than fatiated, there is such an infinite number of these creatures in the Trees; as there be fish in the waters, and they have this commodity, that the Trees are not call where the e Creatures (port themselves. But turning about to the South parts, the more we return South, the worle and darker their skins are. The flesh of them rolled is liveet meat for the Hunters. Their teeth are nied by Wizards to discover future things.

CHAP, XIV,

More of this Creature to foreshew things to come.

This little Creature will fwim over the Rivers upon a piece of Wood, and hold up his cail for a fail: for Nature hath granted him no other way to fwim, because of his small body, thick fur, and huge tail covered with hair. Nor are his feet fit for this use. Otherwise he is most cunning in time of heat, that he will lay up his provision for great part of the Winter, where he makes his nelt to fleep and reit in; and there he opens and fluts as they find the weather cold. Their meat is Hazel Nuts, and Beech Nuts, or Pine-Tree leaves. There is another fort of them which feed on fleep for mear. They are wonderful nimble to leap from one Tree to another: and with their Tails they ballance their motion, and by the nimbleness of their sharp claws, they will skip upon the boughs; and they will play on the trozen Ice very finely, that men are much pleased to see ir. Their Skins are carryed by Tens, many Thoulands of them into all Europe in Fastors thips, and they increase the price by the length of the way, and the love men do bear them. It is good for old men, but it is not fit for fouldiers, and lufty mentfor them a Fox or Gulo's Skin is better.

CHAP. XV.

Of Martin, and Sabels, and their Skins.

Artins, and Sabels, are Creatures of cold Countries; all know them by their Mnames, but few by their virtues, unless by the quality of their Skins a man may know what Creatures they are. This is known of them, that they run and leap firongly and very fwiftly; for like the Squirrels almost they mie their Tails for their Helm, and leap from Tree to Tree, catching hold of the boughs with their claws. They will bire terribly for their bignels: For they have Teeth naturally, as sharp as Razours, and exceeding small and sharp Nails, But as their flesh is said to be nothing worth, so their Skins are of huge prices, especially amonght Forrainers, that use them more for their pleasure, than commodity. The difference between them is this, that the Martins are of a groffer Fur from the crown of their head to their tail, but not if you rub them the contrary way : but the Sabels are not to; for if you throak them with your hand from their tail to their crown, hey are equally smooth; because they are furry, and their hair is thicker: and therefore they are fooner eaten by the Worms, than other skins are, unless they are constantly used or Wormwood leaves are put between them to preferve them. And if Sabel Skins are laid in the Sun to dry, they will confume more in one day than if they were worn a whole year, when the Beaft is alive, he always lyes in some shady Grove, and gets his living by lying in wait for small Birds. It is a most lascivious Creature, and very foul in his Natural Copulation as I shall shew underneath, concerning the Pontick, Mice or Ermins: yet both the'e kinds of Skins are of folter hair, and ferve for vain Luxury; because they are foon eaten with Worms, and that pleasure that was bought at so dear a rate from

white pletet minter, w beniss them by 1519.

TOTAL

they won th. it tee Wood E tememb SERCIALD blance w the man 17 three

very long not one! Kinthe Lemma Ayrin 1 come w

eliether 25 they f Thee, they bire Off no ne ready to

tagion of the people Bestsal 100 their SELECTION & and ut Cu pas the

et of their

his comclues, Bot

oric and Hunters

ood, and

南四 10

with hair.

e of hear,

t makes

the wes-

de leaves.

ronderful

ballance

dip upon

ate much

them in-

or fit for

by their

os a man

run and air Tails

ghs with

e Teeth

astheir

jally 2-

. The

om the
ty: but
tail to
it hair is
kinsure,
them to

dive, he

or finall

voulati-

er both ie they travate from from others, doth decay continually. The Sabel is found in the utmost Woods of Moscovia, and is carryed far by Sea and Land unto other Countries.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Ermins, which (according to Pliny) I take to be Pomick-

Phiny, 1.8 ch. 37 faith, that Pomick-Mice lye hid in Winter, and they are onely white; how may this be understood, for let every man judge of it, as he please: fo he do no injury to Natural Philosophy. It they be shut up all the Winter, and in most bitter Cold, the Skin of this Creature would never appear whiter, with appears reddish in Summers in the end of May he is not white, when he minds propagation, at what time green gravis come up, as I confes I have feen them by accident, as I rode along in Helfingia, a Northern Countrey, Anno Dom. 1518. to that in their coupling, by reason of their overclose tricking together, they would flick fast, when they ran along most wirtly, and they would crush th ir reeth together, leaving such a stink behind them, in great part of the wood, upon divers Trees (for there were many that coupled at once) that I never remember that I fmelt a worle. The fame Pliny 1. 10,0,65, affirms, that Mice are generated by licking; but this feems not in thefe Creatures to have any refemblance with Truth; for these couple as other Beasts do: yet I voluntarily conceal the manner of their copulation. But their small Beasts, for the most part, every three years for the Merchants exceeding great gain, grow to have their Skins very long, because they eat so much: which after the same manner happens out not onely in Norway, but in the foresaid Helfingia, and Provinces that are near to it in the Diocels of Upfal, namely that small Bealls with four feet, that they call Lemmar, or Lemmus, as big as a Rat, with a Skin diverse coloured, fall out of the Ayr in Tempelts, and sudden showrs; but no man knows from whence they come, whether from the remoter Islands, and are brought hither by the Windsor elfe they breed of feculent matter in the Clouds : yet this is proved, that fo foon as they fall down, there is found green grais in their bellies not yet digefted. Thefe, like Locusts, falling in great (warms, deliroy all green things, and all dyes they bite on, by the venome of them. This Swarm lives to long as they feed on no new grais: Also they come together in Troops like Swallows that are ready to fly away; but at the set-time they either dye in heaps, with a Contagion of the Earth (by the corruption of them, the Air grows pestilentiall,) and the people are troubled with vertigo's of the Jaundice, or they are devoured by Beafts, called commonly Lekas, or Hermelin, and thefe Ermins grow far thereby. and their Skins grow longer. And thele Skinsalio are fold by Tens, especially fourty in a bundle, as Sabel or Martins, Fox, Beaver, Squirrel, or Hares Skins are, and are carryed forth by Shipping into far distant Countries;

right of white a right spirit and the spirit and th

to the and less elections are the forces of whem they fit work out to the district the same of the sam

as was a series of the sale but some of the CHAP; XVII:

There#

NO SE

AND LOUIS

Per and S

things bet

ned belo

Sea : 180

and litte

andtheir

These wh

tars, or C

dine, me

Church a

COOR, Who

burn the

Nilli

name

Treesin

ding on

broad An

bickward

til morbe

the lines transferior

the Sher-I

CHAP. XVII.

Of the hunting of Ermins.

But how the Ermiss, (to use the Italian, and Gothick word also) are taken by the Hunters, and for what use they serve, it is show'd in brief: and chiefly by ferring flicks a crofs, and tying them with a thingland when three or four, or eight Ermins go in together, this being moved, prefently fluts them in : and fuch Engines of Wood, by reason of the exceeding multitude of these Creatures, are fer every where. Also there are long Pits or Ditches made, and there are thin boards placed over them, and frow laid upon them : these Creatures falling in great numbers into these Trenches, are taken by him the ground belongs unto, or by his fervant, and kinld. There are also Dogs so swift and cunning, that they will catch and I ill them, and bring them to their Master, laying heaps of them at his feet: to there are young men luch cunning Archers, that they will never fail to hit them with an Arrow. The flesh of this Creature is nothing worth to eat, onely their Skins are good, which by reason of their pure white colour, are highly effected in the Courts of Kings and Queens. Though the Beaft it felt is most luxurious, as I said before; yet in one thing it is to be admired, that about the end of May it propagates for certain days, and so is content with the Laws of Nature. Noble persons of both Sexes use these Skins that are all white, with black Tails fet between, which are very rare, especially for the large borders of their garment kept from their Ancestors.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Nature of Badgers,

B Adgers, because they dwell in holes and Caves under ground they frame their houses after a wonderful manner, so that they appoynt one Badger to carry forth the earth they dig up with their feet; he lyeth on his back with his feet up right, and all the Earth dug forth, is layd upon his belly; others taking him by the feet carry him out, and they do this so oft, till the house be large enough for them to dwell in. But this hou e they have made with so much labour they can hardly keep afterwards. For the Fox he lyes in wait for them who never makes his house, but trusting to his shifts that are usual and bad enough, he enters the Cave of the Badgers, and so defiles it with his stinking dung, that they are forced to leave their safe Habitation, by reason of the stink. But that this crafty Fox may not scape unpunished, the Hunters with good Dogs catch him, and pull off his Skin.

CHAP. XIX.

More of the same.

Badger therefore is a wild Creature, as great as a Fox, though he be lower of that use, because he hath crooked legs, and more white hairs than he hath black, especially on his back & sides. His hairs are siff, and his Skin is thick and strong; his Teeth are sharp, and he will bite siercely: Wherefore when Dogs or other Beasts molest him, he lays himself on his back, and sights with his mouth and seet, especially against the Foxes, by whom they are not driven out of their Caves with any other Weapons, than by their stinking dung.

There are two forts of them; one that is tame, and very wanton; another wildes that harb fliffer brittles. It is also called the Dog-Badger, because his foot is divided like to the Dogs: another is called the Hog-Badger, because his hoof is divided into two. There are some also greater than Foxes, that have a hairy briffly Skin, and the briffles are fliff, and the Skin tough; and with thefe they cover all their Quivers for War or Hunting to keep their Arrows from the Wet and Snow. Also mens cloaths are made of them, as they are of Welves Skins, or this Skin, to endure the Cold and all Snow that falls. He bires firongly, deadly, and venemous; because he ears such abundance of Worms, creeping things Beerles and Mice.

CHAP, XX, to bus soul to angood bid?

enter a mill one lab and and Of the Fishing Bears, I mag a mouth a glosbout and

THE Bears are huge, white, and flrong, and they will break the Ice with their Paws: they make many Dens, and they are found in Island, often mentioned before: and through these Caves of Ice, they plunge themselves into the Sea; and earthing Fish under the Ice, they draw them our, bring them on shore; and live upon them: and do this as oft as they have need, to feed themselves, and their Whelps; and by a natural inflinct, they teach them also how to fish. These white Bears Skins are wont to be offered by the Hunters, for the high Altars, or Cathedrals of Parochial Churches, that the Priest celebrating Mais standing, may not take cold of his feet when the Weather is extream cold. In the Church at Nidrofum, which is the Metropolis of the Kingdom of Norway, every year such white Skins are founds that are faithfully offered by the Hunters Devotion, when loever they take them, and Wolves-Skins to buy Wax-Light, and to burn them in honour of the Saints.

Females four more that I takey AIX PICHAP deben of boogheses a forula

Of the cunning in killing Bears.

IN killing black and cruel Bears in the Northern Kingdoms, they use this way, namely that when in Autumn the Bear seeds on certain red ripe. Fruit, or Trees, that grow in Clufters like Grapes, either going up into the Trees, or flandieg on the ground, and pulling down the Trees, the cunning Hunter, with broad Arrows from a Croffe-bow shoots at him, and thele pierce deep; and he is fuddenly so moved with this tright and wound received that he presently voids backward all the Fruit he ate, as Hail-Rones; and prefently runs upon an Image of a man made of wood, that is fet purpolely before him & rends and tears, that till another Arrow hit him, that gives him his deaths wound, fhot by the Hunter that hides himself behind some Stone or Tree. For when he hath a wound, he runs furiously at the fight of his blood against all things in his way and especially the Shee-Bear, when the fuckleth her Whelps. the the highest highest the countries there is not only out to come it. The withshis mean, he cannot prevail against the Beas the piffers

Nor can the Bear eacthe Heage, it og it is men miterable poor and pricitly mear. Wherefore extraining against on cave he freeps and grows for fixing by luc-

or himse open him, to cevery; the wrong he did her in violating her Lodeing.

CHAP, XXII

taken by

titelly by

tone, ne

and fisch

res are

atethin

ling in gianto, ·

is that nerps of

ky will

hite co-

outh the

e admione de la contra dela contra de la contra dela contra de la contra del la contra de la contra del la contra de

that are

he large

frame 01 11

ah his taking

e large oth li-

m who

ugh, he

II shell

atthis

hines,

OWES

hath thick when

igh his en out

ELDDE

no pico

heme t

Bullen

Colesta

DEED II

derpu

Beats ba

Shipe

COREAIR

foby N

gems at

modes

withshi

points

Otherwi

figulate

the Mai

COLC TO

E Sarry

Minnis.

bezif ber

villing o

tew Hair

Viltag of

Can Count

Marketop Marketop

DE MCIE of

Den, and

CHAP. XXII. of glass will be in CHAP. XXII.

Of the crafty hunting of Bears.

THE Bears watch diligently for the passing of Deer; and chiefly, the Shee-Bear, when she hath brought forth her Whelps; who not so much for Hunger as for fearing of losing her Whelps, is wont to fall cruelly upon all the meets. For the being provoked by any violence, far exceeds the force of the He-Bear, and Craft, that the may revenge the lois of her Young. For the lyes hid amongst the thick boughs of Trees, and young Shoots; and if a Deer trutting to the glory of his horns, or quick smell, or swift running, come too near that place unawares, the fuddenly talls out upon him to kill him; and if he first detend him elf with his horns, yet he is so tired with the knots and weight of them, being dri en by the rage of the Bear, that he is beaten to the ground, that long force and life, he falls down as a prey to be devoured. Then the will fet upon the Bull with his horns, using the same subtilty, and easts her self upon his back; and when the Bull ftrives with his horns, to cast off the Bear, and to defend himself, she fast neth on his horns and shoulders with her paws, till weary of the weight, he falls down dead. Then laying the Bull on his back, like a Wallet, the goes on two feet into the fecret places of the Woods, to feed upon him. But when in Winter she is hunted the is betrayed by Dogs, or by the prints of her feet in the Snow, and can hardly escape from the Hunters that run about her from all fides. After 30 days that flie hath conceived, for the most part she useth to bring forth five Whelps not much greater than Mice, without any shape: their flesh is white, but they have not eyes, nor hair; yet the Nails appear : the Dams, by degrees, lick these Whelps into form. A man can see no stranger thing, than to see a Bear bring forth: Wherefore, the Males hide themselves fourty days, and the Females four moneths. If they want densithey build them of boughs and forubs heaped together, they lay fost leaves and moss upon them, and make them impenetrable for the Rain. They fleep deeply for feven days, and can fcarce be raifed with Wounds, and then they grow wonderful fat; shiefly by fucking their right foot. When their young ones are cold, they foster them in their breatts, lying upon them, as Birds do hatch their Eggs.

CHAP, XXIII.

Of the Battail between the Hedge-Hog, and the Bear.

Hough the Urchin have sharp pointed prickles, whereby he gathers Apples to seed on, and these he hides in hollow Trees, molesting the Bear in his Den: yet is he oppressed by the cunning and weight of the Bear: namely when the Urchin roles himself up round as a ball, that there is nothing but his prickles to come at: yet with this means, he cannot prevail again't the Bear, that pisseth on him to open him, to revenge the wrong he did her in violating her Lodging. Nor can the Bear eat the Hedge-Hog, it is such miterable poor and prickly mear. Wherefore returning again into his Cave, he sleeps and grows fat, living by sucking his Paw.

In case the Hedge-Hog should be taken, and his stellar ofted, contrary to the manner of all other stellar, it will grow black; though there be no sign of any moisture to be found in his belly, nor yet about his heart, but some sew drops, and no blood elle in any part of his body. In Spring-time the Males come forth very fat but the reason of it is not easie, for they are not satted with sleep above 13 days. The Bears also sight against the Bores, but seldome get the Victory, because they can better defend themselves with their Tusks, than the Deer or Bull can by their horns, or running swiftly. The strong Hories keep off the Bears with their biting and kicking, from the Mares, that are great with Foals. Young Colts save themselves by running, but they will always hold this sear, and so become unprofitable for the Wars, Wherefore they use this stratagem, some Souldier puts on a Bears Skin, and meet them, by reason that they are horses that the Bears have hunted.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of killing Bears with an Iron Club.

Since that in the Northern Countries, especially Podolia, Russia, and places Sadjacent, because of the great multitudes of Bees, the Hives at home will not contain them, the Inhabitants willingly let them fly unto hollow Trees, made so by Nature or by Art, that they may increase there. Wherefore mortal stratagems are thus prepared for Bears, that use to steal honey, (for they having a most weak head, as a Lion hath the strongest, for sometimes they will be killed with a blow under their ear): namely a Woodden Club set round with Iron points, is hung over the hole the Bees come forth of, from some high bough, or otherwise; and this being cast upon the head of the greedy Bear that is going to steal the honey, kills him striving against it, so he loseth his life, sless, and skin to the Muster, for a little honey. Their sless is salted up like Hogs sless, Stags sless, Elks or Ranged Deers sless, to eat in Camps, and the Tallow of them is good to cure any wounds.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the ravishing of a Maid, and the begetting of Ulso, a most cunning and valiant man.

IF Saxo, the Danish Writer, and others after him, had not related this ravishing of a Maid with io many circumstances, I should have little occasion to make mention of this History. But because something, very like it, is sound in other Writers, it will be better to wonder at such a Work of Nature, than tashly to upbrain her the least in things that are secret. What therefore concerns the ravivishing of the Maid, I shall shew it more at large, as it follows taken forth of the new History of my most dear Brother and Predecessour, Joannes Magnus, Arch-Bishop of Upsal, Lib, 18, from the Relation of Saxo. For he saith, that a certain Countrey-mans Daughter in Sweden that was very fair, going forth with her, Maids to play a large Bear drove away her Companions, and ravished her; and taking her in his paws, carryed her gently into his known Cave in the Wood, and he went about her tender Limbs, not with a desire to eat them, but to embrace them, and the prey he got to devour, he useth for his Lust.

Bb 2

For

[i

when

rockes

rifeth

meat.

by luc-

te Shee-

he meets.

Beir, and

ogifthe.

glory of

awates,

ch with

with his when the

ills down

inter the

ow, and

After 30

outh five

white,

degrees,

to lee a

and the

distribs.

ampe-

be tal-

breatt,

For he flill courted her, and fatisfied his Hunger by lying with her; and to feed her the betret, he would rove abroad, and fet upon a Heard of Cattel that was not far from thence, and he used her to feed on raw flesh, who was wont to feed on more dainty meat. For the Captive Maid did to bridle his fierceness, that whom the feared as one that would devour her, he was onely in love with her, and the had meat from him, who feared that he would devour her. At last, the Bear was hunted with Dogs and Nets, and was killed with Javelins: That therefore Nature, that is a bountiful Artificer of a double matter, might colour the deformity of the Marriage, with the fitness of the Off-pring, the was brought a bed of the Montter after an ordinary fashion; and he was like to a Wild-man, and has his Fathers name given him of necessity, who when he came to know the truth how he was begotten-revenged himfelf cruelly of those who slew his Father. His Son Trugillus, Sprachaleg, nothing inferiour to his Father for virtue, begat Ulfor trom whom descended King Sweno, and others of the Line of the Kings of Denmark, & they derive themselves from this Original, by a long order of succession, as Saxo testifies, But how such like Births should be judged ot, August, de Civ. Dei, speaks much; and, to which Sex there ought to be most accribed.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Swineheards that are taken away wish their Pipes.

Tis well enough known, that Bears, Dolphins, Stags, Sheep, Calves, and Lambs, are much delighted with Musick: and again they are to driven from their Heards by some harsh sounding Pipes of Horns, that when they hear the sound they will be gone into the Woods a great way off. Now the Shepheards of the Cattel know this well enough, they will play upon their two-horned Pipes continually, which sometimes are taken away by Bears, until such time as the Bear is forced by Hunger to go away to get his food. Wherefore they take a Goats Horn, and sometimes a Cows Horn, and make such a horrid noise, that they seare the Wild Beast, and so return sate to their dispersed Flocks. This two-horned Pipe, which in their Tongue they call Seec-pipe, they carry to the fields with them, for they have learned by use, that their Flocks and Heards will feed the better, and closer together.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the dancing of the Bears in Lithuania.

THE Ruffians, and Lithuanians, are more near to the Swedes and Goths, on the Eastern parts: and these hold it a singular delights to have always the most cruel Beafts bred up tame with them, and made obedient to their commands in all things. Wherefore to do this the fooner, they keep them in Caves, or tyed with Chains, chiefly Bears newly taken in the Woods, and half flarve them: and they appoint one or two Masters, cloathed one like the other, to carry Victuals to them, that they may be accustomed to play with them, and handle them when they are loofe. Also, they play on Pipes sweetly, and with this they are much taken: and thus they we them to sport and dance, and then when the Pipes found differently, they are taught to lift up their legs, as by a more sharp fign, to end the Dance with, that they may go on their hinder feet, with a Cap in their fore-feer, held out to the Women and Maids, and others that faw them dance, and ask a reward for their dancing; and if they give not freely, they will murmure, as they are directed by their Master, and will nod their heads, as desiring them to give more money: So the Maffer of these Bears, that cannot speak the Language of other Countries, will get a good gain by his dumb Beaft. Nos doth

There is that it is him; to defend it Ber the : the Wan

that you

and the

दश्वतं द्वा

Calvest

that the

weath

Citiz

SE SEED

ox Bran

their con

Hillioth

Princes

iper Team

grint th

Butte B poor wells; alone thi

inchen [

COST I but

gicu me

they will

to feed

WAS DOD

lection.

whem

and the

ne Na-

neming d of the hav his

h how

Ulfo:

cellinn.

10 Den

ambs,

: lound

of the

5 COB-

bear is

Goats r leare rned

betti,

othe

Augls

noch

their

heing lette doch this seem to be done onery, because that these should live by this small gain: for the Bearberds that lead these Bears, are at least ten or twelve lusty men; and in their company, sometimes, there go Noble-mens Sons, that they may learn the fashions, manners, and dintances of places, the Military Arts, and Concord of Princes, by these merry Pastimes. But since they were sound in Germany, to spoil Travellers, and to call them to their Bears to eat, most strick Laws are made against them, that they may never come there again.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Agility of Bears.

There is another Sport, when Bears taken are put into a ship, and shew merry passimes going up and down the Ropes, and sometimes are profitable for some unexpected accident. For Histories of the Provincials, mention, that it happed, that one was thus freed from a Pirate that was like to let upon him; for the Pirat coming on, was trighted at it, when he saw afar off, men as he supposed going up and down the Ropes, from the Top-Mass, as the manner is to defend the ship. Whereas they were but young Bears, playing on the Ropes. But the most pleasant sight of all is, that when the Bears look out of the ship into the Waters, a great multitude of Sea-Calves will come and gaze upon them, that you would think an innumerable Company of Hogs Iwam about the ship, and they are caught by the Sea-men with long Spears, with Hooks, and a Cord tyed to them; and so are also the other Bealts, that come to help the Sea-Calves taken, and crying like to Hogs. Also the Bears are let down to swim, that they may catch these wandring Sea-Calves, or else when it thunders, and the weather is tempessnow, they be taken above Water.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Bears turning Wheels.

But that tame Bears may not onely be kept unprofitably to feed and make port, they are fet to the Wheels in the Courts of great men, that with one or two, or more company to help them, they may draw up Water out of deep Wells; and that in huge Veffels made for this purpose, and they do not help alone this way, but they are set to draw great Waggons, for they are very strong in their Legs, Claws, and Loins; nor is it unsit to make them go upright, and carry burdens of Wood, and such like, to the place appointed, or they stand at great mens doors, to keep out other hurtful Creatures. When they are young, they will play wonderfully with Boys, and do them no hurt.

the clare which he preferrity executes one consistent in side the fair of the configuration of an double four by preferring arguing strength to be a dog, but once fairly when the best by a blood

sib ai and adversed and such a side nadwagan and CHAP, XXX.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Foxes and the'r fleights.

Here are in the Northern-Woods, Foxes, white, black, red, croffe bearers on the back, and others of a blew colour, spotted, but they all partake of the same malice and fraud; the black skins are dearest, because the Emperours of Moscovie we these often; next are the crosse-bearing skins, that is, such as are marked on the back with a black crosse by nature, because they are more adorn'd, and the skins are greatest: for the Foxes have not this crosse till they grow of a full age. And these skins as well as the black are fold by a great Commerce held between the Muscovites, Russians, and Tartars : yet the black skins are surpected that they are made black with the smoke of links. The white skins are leffe effeemed, and such as are blew or sky-colour, because of the abundance, and falling of the hair; for they last not long, that will not flick to their skins : yet such as are curious, or love their profir, will mingle divers skins together, and make them cloaths to keep off the cold when they fleep; because they will soon grow very hot and hold it, and are light and fit for old people. The red Fox skins are the most frequent of all, and are found everywhere, and they are easily taken by swift dogs and cunning Hunters, by the prints of their feet left in the Snow, as are Hares, Bears, Stags, Wolves, Lynxes, for their own feet betray them to the Hunters; but in Summer by the fcent of the dogs.

CHAP, XXXI,

Of the crafty wit of Foxes.

7 Hen the Fox is pressed with hunger, cold and Snow, and he comes near mens houles, he will bark like a dog, that house-creatures may come nearer to him with more confidence. Also she will faign her felf dead, and lie on her back, drawing in her breath, and lolling out her tongue. Then birds coming down unawares to feed on the carkaffe, are mapt up by him, with open mouth. Moreover, when he is hungry and finds nothing to eat, he rolls himfelf in red earth, that he may appear bloody: and casting himself on the earth, he holds his breath, and when the birds fee that he breaths not, and that his rongue hangs forth of his mouth, they think he is dead; but to foon as they defeend he draws them to him and devours them. Again, when he fees that he cannot conquer the Urchin for his prickles, he lays him on his back, and forends the loft part of his body. Sometimes fearing the multitude of walps, he counterfeits and hides himfelf, his tail hanging out : and when he fees that they are all bufie and entangled in his thick tail, he comes forth and rubs them against a thone or Tree, and kills them and eats them. The same trick almost he weeth, when he lyes in wait for crabs and small fish, running about the bank, and he lets down his tail into the water, they admire at it, and run to it, and are taken in his fur and pull'd out. Moreover, when he hath fleas, he makes a little bundle of foit hay wrapt in hair, and holds it in his mouth, then he goes by degrees into the water, beginning with his tail, that the fleas fearing the water, will run up all his body till they come at his head: then he dies in his head that they may leap into the hay; when this is done, he leaves the hay in the water and livings forth. But when he is hungry, he will counterfeit to play with the Hate, which he presently catcheth and devoureth, unlesse the Hare escape by flight as he often doth. Sometimes also he escapes from the dogs by bart 1 ing, faigning himself to be a dog, but more surely when he hangs by a bough,

minimized to the second to the

interest in each of the part, on the each in each of the each of t

No 1trial multi LETTER mankin ef that rall W Wood wherel Theyg and the and io the place toesthi piace : : fully per It by ex wall le lands of IDE; he braten and the same of Thetes by one many HOOTE

IN, OF S

took op

pertera

make of

percent

toch 23

E more

a great

e black

- The

cause of

log flick

divers

Sleep;

tor old

Eltzy-

by the

to me

s meat

ome

birds

open

him-

earth,

直越

Tide-

t he

ends

oun-

ora v

inft a

rieth,

d be

ilen

rtie

by

the

with

and makes the dogs hunt in vain to find his footing. He is also wont to deceive the Hunter and his dogs, when he runs amongst a herd of goits, and your for one of them, leaping upon the Goats back, that he may tooner chape by the running of the Gost, by reason of the hitefull Rider on his back. The other Goats follow, which the Hunter fearing to molett, calls off his dogs that many be not killed: If he be taken in a firing, he will fometime bite off his own foor, and fo get away. But if there be no way open, he will faign himfelf dead. that being taken out of the mare, he may run away. Moreover, when a dog runs after him, and overtakes him, and would bite him, he draws his brittly tail through the dogs mouth, and to he deludes the dog till he can get into the lurking places of the Woods. I faw also in the Rocks of Norway a Fox with a huge tail, who brought many crabs out of the water, and then he are them. And that is no rare fight, when as no fifth like crabs will flick to a briffly thing let down into the water, and to dry fish laid in the waters to dry. They that are troubled with the Gowt, are cured by laying the warm skin of this beaft about the part, and binding it on. The fat also of the same creature, laid smeered upon the ears or lims of a gowty person, heals him: his fat is good for all torments of the guts, and for all pains, his brain often given to a child will preferve it ever from the Falling-ficknesse. These and such like simple medicaments the North Country people observe.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Fiercenesse of men who by Charms are turned into Wolves.

IN the Feast of Christs Nativity, in the night, at a certain place, that they are resolved upon amongst themselves, there is gathered together such a huge multitude of Wolves changed from men that dwell in divers places, which afterwards the same night doth to rage with wonderfull fiercenesse, both against mankind and other creatures, that are not fierce by nature, that the Inhabitants of that Country fuffer more hurt from them, than ever they do from true naturall Wolves. For as it is proved, they fet upon the houses of men that are in the Woods with wonderfull fiercenesse, and labour to break down the doors, whereby they may destroy both men and other creatures that remain there. They go into Beer-Cellars, and there they drink out some Tuns of Beer or Mede, and they heap all the empty vessels one upon another in the midst of the Cellar, and so leave them: wherein they differ from natural and true Wolves, Buc the place where by chance they flayd that night, the Inhabitants of those Countries think to be prophetical: Because if any ill successe befall a Man in that place; as if his Cart overturn, and he be thrown down in the Snow, they are fully perswaded that man must die that year, as they have for many years proved it by experience. Between Lituania, Santogetia, and Curonia, there is a certain wall left, of a Castle that was thrown down; to this at a set time some thoufands of them come together, that each of them may try his nimblenesse in leaping; he that cannot leap over this wall, as commonly the fat ones cannot, are beaten with whips by their Captains. And it is constantly affirmed, that amongst that multitude there are the great men & chiefest Nobility of the Land. The reason of this metamorphosis, that is exceeding contrary to nature, is given by one skilled in this witchcraft, by drinking to one in a cup of Ale, and by mumbling certain words at the fame time, to that he who is to be admitted into that unlawful Society, do accept it. Then when he pleafeth he may change his humane form, into the form of a Wolf entirely, going into some private Cellar, or fecret Wood. Again, he can after some time put off the same shape he rook upon him, and refume the form he had before at his pleasure.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Examples of those menthat were turned into Wolves, and comvarily.

Bilt for to come to examples: When a ceatain Noble man took a long jour-ney through the Woods, and had many to vile Country-fellows in his company, that were acquainted with this Witchcraft, (as there are many such found in those parts) the day was almost spent : wherefore he must lie in the Woods, for there was no Inne near that place: and withall they were fore pinched with hunger and want. Last of all, one of the company propounded a seasonable proposall, that the rest must be quiet, and if they saw any thing they must make no tumult; that he law afar off a flock of fleep feeding; he would take care that without much labour they should have one of them to rost for Supper. Prefently he goes into a thick Wood that no man might fee him, and there he changed his humane shape like to a Wolf. After this he fell upon the flock of sheep with all his might, and he took one of them that was running back to the Wood, and then he came to the Chariot in the form of a Wolf, and brought the theep to them. His Companions being confcious how he flole it, receive it with grareful mind, and hide it close in the Charior : but he that had changed himself into a Wolf went into the Wood again, and became a man. Also in Livonia not many years fince it fell out, that there was a dispute between a Noblemans Wife and his tervant, (of which they have more plenty in that Country, than in any Christian Land) that men could not be turned into Wolves : whereupon he brake forth into this speech, that he would presently shew her an example of that bufinefle, so he might do it with her permission: he goes alone into the Cellar, and prefently after he camelforth in the form of a Wolfithe dogs ran after him through the fields to the wood & they bit out one of his eys, though he defended himself stoutly enough. The next day he came with one eye to his Lady. Laftly, it is yet fresh in memory, how the Duke of Pruffia giving small credit to such a Wirchetalt, compelled one who was cunning in this Sorcery, whom he held in chains, to change himself into a Wolf; and he did so. Yet that he might not go unpunished for this Idolatry, he afterwards caused him to be burnt. For such hainous offences are severely punished both by Divine and Humane Laws. The street pro-mayers a words brust as the problems of

The End of the Eighteenth Book:

The reason of this ateramorphic it that it accome correspond follows, is sixen

or overel Wand. Again, he chael or committee pur off the time using be

cook upon him, and religious the form be highly one at his pleasure. . .

by one skilled first is whicher six by disaking to omesing on of Ale, and by a long of Ale, a long of Ale,

fity the that car

Boot, on the bring: Other] STOW I luft at

is com-

Woods, ed with longble fi make

methar here he flock of k to she

gia the ceise it charged Alio in

ouncry, where-

alone though

c to his

Yet nim to

ne and



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

OF

Birds.

The Epitome of the Nineteenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Of the Hawk; and the divers kinds thereof.

N the Northern parts the nature of this Bird is more generous and fironger, than it is thought to be in other parts of the World; especially because of the coldnesse of the Climate, and the abundance of birds to feed on, that agree with the nature of it for folid nutriment. For the feeds more eagerly on their blood, heart, and breffs, and grows very bold and greedy after the prey: and by her natural pride and Tyranny oft-times rather than for necesfity she is provoked to fall upon the prey, and delights in it. Some there are that eat nothing but the heart which they pull forth at a hole they make in the fide. Sometimes also they defire the brain nor touching any other part of the Body. They that love Hawking, give their Hawks Crabs to eat, and they feed on them exceedingly, and will fly more greedily after Birds, that they may bring a reward for their dainty meat: and this they eafily do, flying to swift above other Birds; and having tharp feathers which they moult every year, and they grow up new again. And the nature of him is this; That the Bird he catcheth last at night, he holds in his Talons under his breast to keep him warm, and in the morning he treely lets him go, and will not earth him again.

CHAP. II.

More of the Nature of Hawks.

The tame Hawk will bring his prey to the Faulconer, and he hath the Heart and Entrails for his pains. And these are most delighted with the warmer Cc places

255519

Their

OTEL B

the Tile

week!

have a

Hutt,

andbu

exch a

andbt

may co

the Fat

when a

Rish bund-

honge # STATE

> Will Will

cibe

CEUIC

then

Feith

they

Hotel

Them.

thema

entch f

Ducks

theirfal

COOKING

Ittian

allyin

by the]

Accordi

CUL.

places, and are fooner farted with Oxe or Hogs-flesh; as they grow lean, by eating young Pullets, but temperate of body by feeding on old Hens. Before Hawking time, they are best kept in places not over dark, and to be brought torth evesy other day. But above all, heed must be had, that they kill not young Cinidren. For no Creature, of all rame Creatures, io much prey's upon Infants, as Apes and great Hawks, who fly to the Cradles, and falten to firongly with their Talons, on the Eyes and Noies of them, that they will pull them out, and can scarce fly away. These have great bodies, various shining Eyes, a pleasant countenance, groffe Feet, long Talons, they feed daintily, and feize upon all Birds : for they fear no Birds but the Peacock. Also they fly at Hares, Coneys, Foxes, Hogs, Geefe, Cranes, Ducks, Woodcocks; especially when they are forced by Hunger and Cold, then they fly to mens houses; where, striking small Threds, with their Pinions, they are thut in and taken. Laftly, by long fafting, they are made tame as Falcons are. There is also another kind of Hawk in the Northern Countreys, that preys on tame Fowl, as Geefe, Ducks, and Poultry; and in Winter, knowing its time, lies close in Nests, being bold in small matters, and fearful in great, A Musket, and a Cock will drive him away : and last of all, he dies for hunger. The greedy Musker that preys on its own kind, befides the nature of all other fierce Creatures, even as man doth, is found there in great plenty. He flyes commonly alone, that he may have no partner in the prey. Sparrows, and other small Birds, to avoid his snare, fly presently to prickly bushes.

with min salus and CHAP. III. was well and heloog he

于自2000年发现的65年的担任第2000年2000年中

Of the Nature of Eagles, and their differences.

Take it for granted, that the noble and rapacious Bird the Eagle, called fo from his sharp light is known to all men: yet because in the North, there is huge multitudes of them, by reason of the abundance of Wild-Beasts, I shall interpole fomething concerning their Nature, with premiting a diffinction. There are fix kinds of Eagles: The first is Herodius, called also a Gir-Faulcon, the most noble Bird of all, of a blew colour, tending to white, except the Breatl and Wings, where it more evidently reprefents a celeftial colour: The is fo firong, that the will carry away an Eagle, and to full of animosity, that if she be let sly in the Ayr after four or five Cranes, the will never fortake the prey, till the firike them all down to the ground one after another, and a Dog bred for the sport, takes them away. Nor will this Gir-Faulcon come down for indignation, till he takes away what is fallen. She never breeds more than one young one.

The second noble kind after this, is that, which when the hath young ones, flyes at Geele-Swans-Coneys, and Hares chiefly. This is leffe then the Gir-Falcon, of divers colours, her Feathers are white, and ash-colour, mingled, and she hath white Feathers in her short Tail.

The third, which fits on the bodies of Trees, whole tops are cut off, whence it hath its name; and it is of an ash-colour: the flyes at Geele and Ducks, and is less in body and courage, than the former two.

The fourth, which catcheth Fifnes, is of divers colours under the belly, white and black on the back, and upon the bunch it hath black ipots: it hath one foot like a Duck, to fwim with; another like the Hawk, to catch the prey: The fits on Trees over Rivers, lying in wait for Fish; and there are great multirudes of them in the Northern Waters.

The fifth kind is small, and various in colour, but notable cunning; for the will carry bones into the Ayr, and let them fall down upon a stone, that she may break them, and to come at the Marrow. The St XIX

in, byen.

dente Hawdente Hawdente Gallmaters, as with their

and can

an com-

5 Foxes,

Threds,

they are

the Not-

uy; and

mers, and

of all, be

esthens-

in great

ey. Spar-

ines.

i lo kom e is huge

encepoie

are fix

aldout it

Wings,

that the

the Aye

s them

Elits #

goods,

ELICOT,

chath

rencell

ander

Suns

3000

tits on

them

for the

The .

The fixth kind is white, and lives by flying at Hares, Coneys, Hogs, Whelps, Foxes, and fuch like: yet the Eagle loves her Young, that the will put her felf like a Buckler, between her young ones, and the Arrow thor.

CHAP. IV.

Of the property of Eagles, and their fitting.

But all the kinds of them have this property, that they wrap their eggs in Fox or Hare Skins to be hatched, which they find by chance, or elie flea them themselves, and these they leave in their Ness to come to maturity by heat of the Sun. For they cannot always fit, and flay in their Neils, because their Talons would grow to crooked, that they would not be fit to catch their prey: yet they have a huge care to bring up their young ones, bringing to them Fish, Birds, and Hares, to feed on. Cunning Fawkners, who know this, climb up into their Nefts, and bind the young ones Fundament with a string, that they may be hindred to eat. The eareful old Eagles, that thrive to free their Young from this mifery, earch all kind of wild Creatures that are to be found in the Ayr, Earth, and Sea, and bring to their Ness, that by such diversity, they may find one or other that may cure them. They heap up great plenty of Food for this purpole, which the Fawkners take away, and either eat it, or fell it. Nor is it a small profic, when as iometimes they find Hares, Woodcocks, Geele, Ducks, Pikes, and great Fish that are fould for many Franks; and these they ear, or else sell at good rates. It is supposed, that a Fawkner will gain more by two young Eagles, than a Hulband-man can get by two Farms: yet that these young ones may not dye for hunger, they untie the Arse-gut, and let them seed again, and then tye them up again, to long as Nature can infer it. For the Eagle is to noble minded, that the will never leave her young Ones, till they know how to feed themselves. Nor will the bring them rotten meat, but fresh killed. The Eagle, by the noblenesse of her nature, will fuffer no bird to feed with her; and when the wants food, will cease upon them all : whence it is, that Eagles Feathers, joyn'd with other Feathers in Quivers, Arrows, and other things, will devour them, especially Geele-Feathers. Also when other birds see an Eagle, they are so frighted that day, that they will scarce fly abroad to stay their hunger.

CHAP. V.

Of the Duck and its kinds.

THE Duck is so called from its continual swimming, all men know her, both the wild and tame Duck; and as she is divided by any other way or kind: Here it is to be observed, that in the Northern Waters there are such plenty of them, that they seem almost to cover all the Waters. Fowlers seldome trouble them, because Ducks slesh is cold and gross nourishment; but rather, because they catch far more wholesome slesh in the Woods, than in the Waters. And though Ducks be of divers kinds, yet they all agree in the sashion of their broad bill, and their sashion of their skinny seet to swim withall, onely they differ in colour, according to the Climate. All the tame ones are almost white; but the wild ones remain no where, but in warm waters, whose Veins under the Earth do continually send up a hot sulphureous Vapour. But that these Waters may never freez by the Ice, they swim by the instinct of Nature round and overthwart, and so keep the Waters open; and they quack so loud, that you shall hear them cry afar off.

Cc 2

Buc

the Sta

and allo

and are

100 pto

Black an there at

25] [1]

the fact

cament

ThisE

fire Ci

Hearin

and Fa

the bit

Good

terthe ter So

longt

DEH

and

beta

II WI

open

TEACS

Mono

theyle thron

和; 6 that the Trees, They is

Poten **June**

Makes

White

a Backler, between the

But when the vehement Cold compels them, they rife high, and fly to the main Seabeing their onely safeguard to maintain themselves.

CHAP. VI.

Of the admirable Generation of the Ducks of Scotland.

Oreover near Glegorn, as a later Scottifh Writer testifies, two leagues off Mis the Rock Baffenfis, wherein there is an impregnable Fort, about which there is a strange multitude of great Ducks, which they call Sollenda, which live on Fish : and their are not the same with wild or tame Ducks, in the Species Specialissima; but because they are like them in colour and form, they are also called Ducks: but for difference fake Sollend Ducks: These Ducks come yearly by flocks in the Spring, from the South, to the Rock Bassense, and they sly about this Rock two or three days: they that live in the Rock, make no noile all that time. Then they begin to build, and flay all the Summer, living on fish; and the Inhabitants of the Rock are fed with fish, which they catch. For they go up to their Nefts (as Isaid before of the Eagles young ones) and take what nih they please. This Bird is wonderful in her industry to take fish. She sees with sharp Eyes the fish at the bottome of the Sea; and she casts her felf head-long upon; it, as the Hawk doth upon the Hern: and with her mouth and claws, the brings it forth; and that be far, from some other Rock, and she chance to espy some better fish, she will let the first fall, that she may catch the latter, and so the Inhabitants have tresh fish all the Summer. The young Ducks, or small Geese, they sell in the Land near adjoyning. If a man eat of them twice or thrice, they will tast most sweetly: for these Birds are extream far. They use art to draw out their far, because it is good in many Medicaments, and they sell the lean parts. At the end of Autumn, they fly three days about the Rock, and then they fly by Troops to the South parts, to live all the winter, that they may return in Sumer : because when it is Winter with us, it is Summer time to those that live in the South. These Birds live very long, which the Inhabitants have found our by fome tokens. The profit of these Birds maintains 30 or 40 fouldiers on the Rock, and some Tribute is paid to the Lord of the place. Moreover, another Scorch Historian, who diligently fers down the secret of things, faith that in the Orcades, Ducks breed of a certain Fruit falling into the Sea; and these shortly atter get Wings, and fly to the tame or wild Ducks.

THE PACE OF A PACE OF denicolos de lla su y strate se cuito de ten se les confraços est ple su en l Bas istadis en les str Un grécolos de la como con montre la color se alla bilità i achair, ac least white you the production of the last on the parties and the parties of the part dollar significant and the second state of the second seco

vadagai Roin alite estile on main man a para i seci i cari i cari promete di cari di c

to the fell with a true to the nation of the Manager and the William of the last of the la Newspeorlands over over your quick to loud that you half hear them ery after

Emil Alidi abita dell'asso di inaceste al emigratio y dell'asso di inaceste al emiliare dell'asso di inaceste al emiliare dell'asso di inaceste al emiliare dell'asso sitripologic cardiganous; Votoner Bursharino Weigner Briefilaut

物的证

it which

titi Spt.

o called

carly by

y about

all that and the

ड्रा प्पार

till they

ith harp

uponju,

armags it

the ber-

Inhabi-

c, they

bey will

u their

At

ty by

Sumer:

e in the

out by

on the

nother tinthe

(horrly

CHAP. VII.

Creating or prepared to the source

Of Geefe.

There is a wonderful multitude of wilde and tame Geefe in the Northern Countries; and chiefly at fitting-time, when the wilde Geefe return from the Southern parts; that is, about the beginning of April, And these are black and ash-coloured, with red feet and bills; as all the tame ones, almost, are white and large. The wild ones are of divers forts in their magnitude, colour, flight, and production: some are greater than others, and ash-coloured: some are black and ash-coloured, and fly high: some are white, having very black Feathers at the ends of their Wings, and there fly highest: some breed from Trees, as I said of Scotland Ducks in the former Chapter. The Northern people use the fat of tame Geefe to drefs their meat with inflead of butter : also in Medicaments to fineer on parts, against Convulsions, and sudden and secret pains. This Fat, with Butter mingled with it, flops blood; and with it, St. Ambonie's fire, Carbuncles, Ulcers of the Tongue and Lips, and Skin of the Face, and hard Hearing are cured. The Northern people use Goose-greate for chaps of the Lips and Face, that arise from Cold; and that Fat joyned with Honey, and applyed to the biting of a Mad-Dog, will foon cure it. The Northern Inhabitants eat Goole-flesh seasoned with Salt, and dryed in the Wind, both boyled and raw, after the Summer Solflice, as they do of all other Creatures. But before the Winter Solflice, they collect the greatest fign from the Breast-bone of the Goose, how long the Winter shall last; and they do it thus: If the bone be clear from flesh, they judge of a cold Winter: If it be thick and dark, there will be much fnow, and a mild Winter that follows. The Goofe, when the Night is long, cryes before day in cold Weather, more than ordinary, as being weary of it, because she is wasted with Cold and Hunger; so that her very bill and seet grow white: the onely remedy the harh, is to fit upon fraw: the will cry as much when any Enemies lay fiege, or any fire happens in a place.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Sea-Crows or Cormorants.

There is a kind of Water-Crows, or called Eel-Rooks. These Birds are extream black except their breasts and bellies: for they are all ash-coloured, and they will eat exceedingly. They hunt for fishes, they sly slowly, and they stay long under Water when they dive, their bills are made tooth-ways, as Mowers fickles, and with those they hold fast slippery sish, chiefly Eels; which they so greedily hunt after and devour, that they will scour them out again through their guts alive as through a Channel. These Birds are also most ingrateful; because with their dung, they spoil the Trees and Boughs where they live, that they will wither presently. So doth the Hern also, which builds upon high Trees, as well as they near Fish-Ponds, as almost all kind of Water-Fowl do. They lay Eggs in the Spring. There is also another kind of Crows, that at beginning of Winter makes her Nest in seven days, and in seven days hatcheth her young ones. The beginning of Winter is, when the fourth part of the Heaven makes Winter, namely when the Sun enters into the Tropick of Capricorn in Winter, till he come to Aries.

DOUBL

forth, b

among

間はのな time.tt set the

DOW OF Young IS CALLY

folied,

Wetch

It haps

Neits

fall, the

from t ter bei

ET DIN

Manne

The Ma

400 (423

SDOW CO

time po

(wallen direct i Compan ENTHATT Person COC OUT

50 650 नेत्र क्षेत्र the Dogs TOUR DELL Decause w OD DAW े जेरा देशक

There is another Water-Fowl to be joyn'd with this Crow, (an ungrateful Bird) called Morfex, and is cole-black, and preys upon him, having a Bill like a Saw, and strong Talons : and she diving into the Water, catcheth great Fish, and feeds on them. They build by Troops, in Trees, neer the Waters, feeding their young with Fish. She leaves her Nest, if she perceives her self over-charged, and vomits up her meat the last eat, or else she dies. When she is full, she firetcheth out her Wings, and dryeth them in the Sunne, and the flaps her Tail a long time in the Water, before the will rife up to fly: Wherefore the hath another name, which is Humufculus, or Humidusculus. Both Winter and Summer, this Bird is found on all the Northern Coafts.

CHAP. IX. Of that Bird which is an Enemy to these Crows.

"Here is a Bird called a Shevelar that is in the Northern Waters, that is a cenel Enemy to Birds, that dive in the Sea to catch Fish: Wherefore she lyes in wait for them thus: She flyes upon them, and bites their heads, and rends them till fhe hath got the prey for her felf; and they, thus tormented, foon let it go. She sometimes filling her self with Shell-fish, when the finds her stomach charged with the shells, she having half concocted them with the heat of her stomach casts them up again, and so eats largely the Oyster and Fish that is within. Moreover, amongst broad prickly Sea-Filh, there is one called a Ray; that defends a man from Sea-Dogs, that take him, when he fwims, to devour him; and he will never leave him, till he see him safe from danger. This Fish often sets upon the Corporant, when he dives under water, and eats him, that he may meet one in the Water who shall revenge his gluttony.

CHAP. X.

Of Faulcons, and their diffinction.

THE Northern Mountains breed Faulcons very fierce, but generous, and white ones; that are never shot at with Bows by the Inhabitants; but are held as facred, unless they do roo much hurt and rapine : but if they do mischief, how white and noble foever they be, they shall not escape their Arrows. They live in almost unaccessible Rocks, and feed on fish; which are so many, that innumerable men cannot diminish, unlesse ravenous Beasts should help them. So Nature sports in her wisely-tempring things with superfluity and defect. Hawks and Kites are there in abundance, also Crows; because Water-Fowls are flow, and fly heavily: and because they are over-fatted with the fruitfulnesse of the

CHAP, XL

of minimum based burnished to applie

CHAP, XI.

Of Swallows drawn forsh of the maters

Though many Writers of Natural Histories have written, that Swallows change their stations; that is, when cold Winter begins to come, they sly to hotter Climats; yet oft-times, in the Northern Countries, Swallows are drawn forth, by chance, by Fishermen, like a lump cleaving together, where they went amongst the Reeds, after the beginning of Autumn, and there fasten themselves bill to bill, wing to wing, feet to feet. For it is observed, that they, about that time, ending their most sweet note, do so descend, and they sly out peaceably after the beginning of the Spring, and come to their old Nells, or elle they build new ones by their natural care. Now that lump being drawn forth by ignorant young men (for the old Fisher-men that are acquainted with it, put it in again) is carryed and laid in the Sea-shore, and by the heat of the Sun, the Lump is disfolved, and the Swallows begin to fly, but they last bur a short time; because they were not let at liberty, by being taken to toon, but they were made captive by ir. It hapneth also in the Spring , when they return freely, and come to their old Nests, or make new ones, it a very cold Winter come upon them, and much snow fall, they will all dye; that all that Summer you fhall fee none of them upon the Houses, or Banks, or Rivers; but a very sew that came later out of the Waters, or from other Parts, which by Nature come flying thither, to repair their Ifine, Winter being fully ended in May; For Husband-men, from their Nelts, built higher or lower, take their Prognostication, whether they shall lowe in Valleys, or Mountains, or Hills, according as the Rain shall increase or diminish. Also the Inhabitants hold it an ill fign, if the Swallows refuse to build upon their houses : for they fear those House-tops are ready to fall.

CHAP. XII.

Of Birds (hut up under the Snow.

T'Here are in the Northern Countries Wood-Cocks, like to Pheafants for bigness, but their Tails are much thorter, and they are cole-black all over their bodies, with some white Feathers at the ends of their Tails and Wings. The Males have a red Comb standing upright; the Females have one that is low and large, and the colour is grey. These Birds are of an admirable Nature to endure huge Cold in the Woods, as the Ducks in the Waters. But when the Snow covers the Superficies of the Earth, like to Hills, all over, and for a long time presse down the boughs of the Trees with their weight, they eat certain Fruits of the Birch-Tree, called, in Italian, (Gatalo) like to a long Pear, and they swallow them whole, and that in so great quantity, and so greedily, that their throat is fuffed, and feems greater than all their body. Then they part their Companies, and thrust themselves all over into the snow, especially in January, February, and March, when Snow and Whirlwinds, Storms, and grievous Tempells, deicend from the Clouds. And when they are covered all over, that not one of them can be feen, lying all in heaps, for certain weeks they live, with mean collected in their throats, and cast forth, and refumed. The Hunters Dogs cannot find them; yet by the Cunning of the crafty Hunters, it oft falls out, that when the Dogs err in their fcent, they, by figns, will catch a number of living Birds, and will draw them forth to their great profit. But they must do that quickly : because when they hear the Dogs bark, they presently rise like Bees, and take upon the Wing, and fly aloft. But it they perceive, that the Snow will be greater, they devour the forelaid Fruit again, and take a new dwelling, and there they flay

t defends dhe will as upon nect one

is a central

ne lyerin

nd rends

con let it

Romach

berfto-

eat Fib,

feeding

er-that-

ll, the

hat Till

the bath nd Sum-

nd white re held as ef, how ry live in numera-Nature

wks and ow, and of the

XI.

till the end of March: or, if the now melt fooner, when the Sun goes out of Aries : for then the Inow melting, by an inflinet of Nature (as many other Birds) they rife out of their holes to lay Eggs, and produce young ones; and this in Mountains where bryats are, and thick Trees. Males and Females fit on the Eggs by turns and both of them keep the Young, and chiefly the Male, that the Eagle nor Fox may catch them.

CHAP. XIII.

Of hunting them out of the Snow.

These Birds fly in great sholes together, and they remain in high Trees, chiesly Birch-Trees; and they come not down, but for propagation, becau'e they have food enough on the top of their Trees. And when Hunters or Countreymen to whom those fields belong, see them fly all abroad, over the fields full of inow, they pitch up staves obliquely from the Earth above the snow eight or ten toot high t and at the top of them, there hangs a mare, that moves with the least touch, and to they catch their Birds; because they, when they couple, leap strangely, as Partridges do, and so they fall into thele inares, and hang there. And when one feems to be caught in the Gin, the others fly to free her, and are caught in the like inare. There is also another way to catch them, namely with arrows and flalking-hortes, that they may not suspect it. At the time of propagation, they fing continually, one firiving to exceed the other, especially the Males, that men may hear them far and near all the Woods over, and they oft berray themselves. There is also another kind of Birds called Bonofa, whole fleth is outwardly black, inwardly white; they are as delicate good meat as Partridge, yet as great as Phealants. At the time of propagation, the Male runs with open mouth till he foam: then the Female runs, and receives this fome; and from thence she seems to conceive, and bring forth eggs, and to produce her Young. The flesh of the foresaid Birds; namely Wild-Cocks, are very delicate and fweet temperate meat, as Capons are; and therefore they are caught with Art; in Winter, with Snares; in Summer, with Arrows.

CHAP. XIV.

SA PARTIE AND TO SEE SEE SEE

Of Snow-Birds.

Lio some Northern Birds are of a firange Nature; for they will so remain A in Woods and Defarts, and breed there, that they will never, or very feldoine, come near to mens habitations. In Summer they are as great, and of the colour of Stares; but in Winter, when the fnow is multiplyed, they are as white as Swans. Their feet are red as of black Storks: but they have a comely yellow bill, very short and sharp. Their meat is, as of other Birds, the little Worms that lye hid under barks of Trees, that are chapt, or the dry Fruit of the Pine, Eirr, or Hazel-Nut Tree; which in the most cold Winter, lote not their nutrimental force. But they are hardly taken with Snares Nets, Bows, or Slings, because of the deepness of the Snows for they have a fairer colour than they have a taffe. But when these Birds can find any secret holes in the Snow, they will creep in, and bask themselves in it, as a Cock doth in the Duft, or a Stare in the Sand. Then they fly to the tops of Trees full of Snow, as a place that is more natural and pleasant to them; and it is necessary for them to to do, that they may the betrer prevent the importunate Spares of the Hawks : for when they fee the Hawk, they thrult themselves into the snow, as a Sparrow hides himself in a bush, against a Kite; and in Spring-time, when the snows are gone, they hide themselves amongst thick Trees : when they passe from white to an ash-colour,

SING

O. NAI WILD D midell to the b (11,111) mania INC ACC 11:100 anothe thire a

they D

as they

totesti

COES C thall to Snow Trees when yet it

Ford themy and in bute fi \$11 this thema Foods 00000 Fen-D tintal Distant. le faile

tonie

d this in

that the

to chey

onning-

dsfull of

it often

the least

gle, lem

and hang

tree her,

s name-

tome of

specially

and they

Whole

I BE PAI-

INC WITH

to a and

toce her ry deli-

caught

temain ery fel-

of the

s white

vellow

Woms

ne Pint,

i nun-

bave a

EV WELL

einthe

s more

hey ec left in a cy hide colour as they naturally vary, they live pleafantly, having no Bird almost to prey upon them, but the small Hawk, which is their greatest Enemy.

CHAP, XV.

Of the weighty Snows and Winter-Gnats.

Nd this great weight of Snow lasts constantly, until the Sun mounts, and the A South-wind blowing confumes it. Then after to long and great Contest of Nature the Sap alcending, makes the Trees trait again that were bowed down with fnow, and lets them at liberty; and they file the higher, as the Earth is made fruitful, when the Snow is melted, that makes it fo: and this is great profit to the Husbandinen. For the melting of the Snows makes the fields the more far, and they fooner yield graffe, than any other grounds prepared b, any art of man: also the Palture-grounds grow so plentiful with all manner of Herbs, th at we are forced to drive away the Cattel, left they burit them elves, or be hurt by it; and also we use to move the Meadows, and cut away the grass. There is also another frange thing in Nature toward the North, as in many places where there are not hollow passages, Gnats breed; and when the South-Wind blows, they rife a little from the ground, and they fly in huge heaps over the Snow; and as they trouble no man, to are they all killed with one Northern blatt, as Creatures that live but one day. But when the South-wind blows again, it raileth new ones out of the same holes, or the like, that for the most part of the Winter, you shall see Gnats singing in the Ayr. And though the Trees slag with the thick Snow, and the tender Boughs bend like Bows by the huge weight, and many Trees lycall along on the ground : yet under them, as under shadowy places, where the cold wind cannot come, many Beatts dwell in great fecurity. Also I shall rell you, that Travellers passe under these crooked Trees, as under Arches; yet fometimes they have fome light knocks by the fall of the Snow.

CHAP, XVI.

Of the Eggs of divers Birds in Iflands.

Ecause it is not safe for Water-Fowl to lay their Eggs on firm Land, or to Doroduce their young ones far from the Waters, for fear of hurtful Beafts, as Foxes and Weefils : therefore by the Initing of Nature, many thousands of them, of divers kinds, live in Islands, (as there are infinite of them in the North) and upon maked tops of Rocks: and some of them make their Nells upon the bare flint some upon dry Braw, or graffe, and lay innumerable Eggs there: and all that fail thither take them treely, that they will gather great Veffels full of them, and bring them to Market to fell, or the y will take off their shels, and with Salt, they will keep them for to eat at home for a long time, as they are very good meat; though the Fowls be wild: Yet the Duck brings forth her young ones on Land near the Waters or Islands. Among those Birds, there is the Fen-Duck, or More-Hen of a black colour, of the kind of Dy-pappers, and is leffe than a Duck : she dwels in the Sea, and about Lakes, wan ring not, but remaining where the was bred. She lives on the Carkaffes of Fish, that devouring Birds let fall: and besides, she hunts crastily for others amongst the Rocks; and she again freely parts with what the carcheth, to other Birds : She rejoyceth in Tempelts, for then the dives and plays in the Waters. When the cryes in the morning, the fore-thews a Tempelt.

下出的

1 ditte

Alle, then

Likelisch

Sell-Wat

and Royal

Docks, Sa ring Birth

Gercia

ingress them to

Note N

WAYEGE

they are

thuthe

had ful

Sucials

the Rive

Docks

the Fo

that is h

tuoire ci

SUDIE OF

and toke

COES, M

In Wish

No. Proce

one sin

pockers,

of Guerra

Upon both

In he

that some

CHAP. XVII.

More of the Eggs of certain Birds.

On the shores of Norway also, there are multitudes of Islands, till you come under the Pole: in which as there are many Birds found, that are to be found no where else; so they produce abundance of Eggs, that any man may take: yet there is one more strange than the rest; that a Hen is bred of a Ducks Eggs and she produceth her own young ones, and sits upon her own Eggs: the other is, that dives to find its meat, and doth not know the Dam, when she calls:

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Peacocks.

In Ostrogothia, and Vestrogothia, and Sweden, many Peacocks breed, and they are bred up very carefully: to that at first they are ted with pellets, made of Barley meal: After that with New-Milk-Cheese pressed from the milk (for the Whey hutts them:) then when 35 days are past they are sed with whole Barley; and next in the open fields, where, by instinct of Nature, they can seed themselves more freely, especially where Poxes cannot come at them. The reason why they are softered more than other Birds is, the profit they make, and their fine Feathers, which Painters and Weavers imitate in the North, to make distinction of colours, because the Pictures of great Artists are seldome brought hither from far Countries, because the way is to long.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Birds, whose name is not known in the white Lake.

"He white Lake is between the Scriefinni, Biarmians, and Muscovites, toward I the North-Pole; and these are the Bounds of it: It is long and broad, and so full of Fish, that all Fisher-men may freely fish there, and never do any hurt, especially in Summer : Wherefore many Nations come thicker to make their Houshold provision for the whole year. In that Lake, and near to it, dwell infinite forts of Birds, that make a continual noise for almost fix months, night and day in a most clear Light; that men are almost tired with them. Some of them have no known names, but very foft feathers, that the Inhabitants that catch them, gain huge profit by them. For in these cold Countries, we have need of very folt beds of feathers to drive away the cold, especially for strangers that are not used to hard Lodgings, and such tharp Weather. You shall see here diversity of mens fashions. In thips of the Moscovites, Finlanders, and Serick Finlander's they are called Serndzar and Hanpar, and to long as peace is in these Countries, they all fish peaceably that there is nothing taken from any man, (which is very firange) for his gain he makes by taking of Fish : unlesse he steal from orbers, or exchange, which is feldome done, because there is continual day. The Musco. vites are very crafty, like the Greeks, and falishe their words. There are also Birds called Bittours, that have a fack under their throats, that an unfatiable Bird may be known, whereof I spake something in its proper place, as of the Crow and others. Also in this Lake are found innumerable Swans, Geese, and Ducks.

on come

oe to be

nin den

a Docks

the

ice the

and they

made of

lotthe

Barley; dthem-

can why

heir fine

indion

mon r

barwos

ed, and ry hort,

ie their

ell in-

be and

theat

each

tod of

25 250

emity

anders

MITTER

Hitch

herr,

50-

Buds

may

XX. ·

CHAP, XX. .

CHAP. XX.

Of Birds called Alle, Alle,

T'Here is also in this Lake a kind of Bird very frequent; and in other Coasts of the Bothnick and Swedish Sea, that cries incessantly all the Summer, Alle Alle, therefore they are called all over by the Inhabitants, Alle Alle. For in that Lake such a multitude of great birds is found, (as I faid before) by reaton of the fresh Waters that spring from hot Springs, that they feem to cover all the shores and Rivers e pecially Sea-Crows, or Cormorants, Coots, More-Hens, two lotts of Ducks, Swans, and infinite smaller Water-Birds. These Crows, and other devouring Birds, the Hunters can eafily take, because they fly slowly, and not above two or four Cubics above the Water : thus they do it on the narrow Rocks, as in the Gates of Islands, on the Banks of them they hang black Nets, or dyed of a Watry colour upon Spears: and thefe, with Pulleys, will quickly flip up and down, that in great Sholes they catch the Birds that fly thither by letting the Nets fall upon them : and this is necessary because those Birds say to flowly, and right forward : so that few elcape. Also, ometimes Ducks, and other Birds are taken in these Nets. Wherefore the eblack or flow Birds, whether they wint or fly, are always crying Alle Alle, which in Latine fignifies All, All, and they do to when they are caught in the Nets : and this voyce the conning Fowler interprets thus, that he hath not as yet all of them in his Nets; nor ever shall have, though e had fix hundred Nets. These Birds are also in great numbers on the Rocks of Swedeland, and upper Gothland though not fo many, as in the forefail Lake, and the Rivers near to that. Also Water Fowl are taken in Vessels, made or Trees, that grow by the shore, and the boughs are made like to nests and into these Ducks chiefly creep, to lay their Eggs, and to hatch their young ones, because of the Foxes that trouble them on the Land; and small ones, especially, are taken with Bird-lime.

CHAP. XXI.

Las bond bar good Of the Whonps, or Lapwings. Las sold another

Apwings, when at a fet-time they come to the Northern Countries from other parts, they fore shew the nearnesse of the Spring coming on. It is a Bird that is full of crying and lamenting, to preserve her Eggs, or young. By importunate crying, the shews that Foxes lye hid in the grasse; and o she cries out in all places to crive away Dogs and other Beasts. They fight with Swallows, Pies, and Jackdaws. On Hillocks in Lakes, she lays her Eggs, and hatcheth her young ones. Made tame, she will cleante a house of Flyes and catch Mice. She foresh ws Rain when she cries: which also Field-Scorpions do, called Mares, Cockows, who by slying overthwast, and crying loudly, tore-shew Rain at hand: also the greater Scorpions, with huge long snouts fore signific Rain: so do Woodpeckers. There is also a Bird called Rayn as big as a Partridge that hath Feathers of divers colours, of a yellow, white and black colour: This is supposed to live upon nothing but Ayr though she be fat, nothing is found in her belty. The Fowlers hum her with long poles, which they cast high into the Ayr, to fright her, that so they may catch the Bird slying down.

SARABARA CHAP. XXII.

Of the Cuckow, and diver s forts of Wood-Peckers.

Here is also in the Northern Woods a Bird that brings good luck, which all men know, called a Cuckow, who about the beginning of May, falls to crying aloud, and so continues till the end almost of July: But this is done in valt Woods, by reason of all the other Birds that hate her naturally, and hinder her, because she (called, in Greek, Coccyx) lays snares for others. For she makes no nelt of her own, but lays her eggs in the Turtle, Lark, or Wood-Sparrows Nefts, to be fate upon, and harcheth her young ones by anothers labour : when they come forth of the shell, they are so comely, that the Nurse is provoked to feed them; and she is so delighted with this fat bird, that she suffers her own Young to starve, that she may foster this; and when this Bastard-brood is able to fly, it kills the Nurse; and at last, the Cnckow is killed by the Hawk that is of the same kind. Moreover, there are many kinds of Wood-Peckers in the North, as great as Jackdaws, that in the most sharp Winter, seek their food in the barks of Trees : some are cole-black, with a red Crest; some grey, some green; others of divers colours; and thefe, by crying, fore-shew the sharper Winter coming. t prome of the factorethed onke and

The End of the Nineteenth Book.

the control of the co

Vergees are an analysis of the control of the contr

the said pleasant the said was an increase the distribution of the said was tributed to the said the s

99999

del.

Ola

-

it fuffic tich in from Es froff et i and Gu them in flowing are mo very de fing har Weet

All the some and shad liber Season telling

the Sea

ne in ruk neer her.

2WOILE

when soked to her own ad is able that is of

North, the backs cothers



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

OF

FISH.

The Epitome of the Twentieth Book.

CHAP. I.

Of the three-fold Bothnia in the North, and the abundance of Fishing there.

Othnia, that terminates the Gothick or Swedish Coast toward the North, is a very large Countrey, divided into three great Provinces, West, North and East. They that live in the North Province, live most by Fishing: becanse they have such abundance of excellent Fish, that it sufficeth abundantly to barter for all necessary Commodities. They sare very rich in all things : for they get from Spain and Portugal the best Wine , and Salt; from England, and Flanders, pretious Cloth; from Germany much Housholdfluff of divers forts; befides their Ornaments they have at home : from Swedland and Gothland, Wheat, Rye, Barley, and all kinds of Pulse necessary, brought to them in ships. Every Shore, Island, Creek, River, Stream, there, yields an overflowing plenty of Fish all the year, especially in Summer, when all things there are most pleasant. There are many Islands near the Sea-shores, and they are very delightsome, by reason of their grass. In the Trees, Birds of divers kinds fing harmonionly: there is great variety of Fish, that sport themselves above Water : there is great profit for Fishers every where : there is no hurtful beast ni the Sea there, nor any pernicious formidable creeping Creature near the Land: All the Summer there is no darkness, no great heat of the Sun; the Ayr is wholefome and temperate; all things are there pleafant, quiet, and peaceable. But which is most wonderfull, in to great pleasantnesse of divers places and times, and liberty, yet is no lascivious act committed amongst them: they live, both Sexes, chaftly and modeftly; they neither commit Incest, Fornication, nor Adultery; nor lo much as name them. For the pure Law of God is fo much obserA Lake of right, Wa

CHA

Fee Lux

Thosh

qui nin

STATE OF

(benthi

beam of a

md Real

ste dollar

(CICIL)

inci ot

ot 30%

meland

tet.wh

which!

DUT OD

yels H

dista

them.

andti

hatha fron of Water

brin s

or no.5

then to

by des

Calve

DOCTE

Sea fee

Their S.

Winter

Thunds

Sing

CLUE

ved by those simple people, that many most learned in the Divine Law, may seem to yield to them for Chassity. There runs out of the Mountains of this Northern Bothnia, (that is of the bottome of the Sea) a huge deep River; which runs into the Sea at two mouths, with a short space between them; whereon is built the Town called Thorna, that is, the Towning Island, the Elevation whereof for Latitude is 82 degrees, the Longitude 42. This Town is structe in a most pleasant and commodious place: and there is no more frequent Mart in all the Countrey near the Pole, than is this Thorna, For the white Russes come to it so do the Laplanders, Biarmians, Bothnians, Finlanders, Swedes, the Tavasti Helsingers, and many more, from the parts of Norway, over the most high Mountains, and vast Delarts, and the Countrey of Jempihia: and all these use partly long ships, sitted for the swift courses of Rivers, or else Chariots drawn by Ranged Deer, and partly crooked poles, wherewith they can soon pass over the Clists of Mountains covered with snow, and slide down suddenly, as I explained it at the beginning of this Book.

and pros balla broid of CHAP. 11.

oral yadabas Of the Multitude of Fish at this Mart.

Is the of divers forts that are caught in fundry places, are brought together to this Mart and are fould to Merchants of fortaign Provinces by exchange, and that in bundles bound together, that weigh five hundred heavy pounds; which weight is most usual there. Moreover in great Vessels there are Salt-fish or dryed Fish, what way soever, to make them taste the better. The Holmenses, Aboenses, Rangmenses, Eregrandenses, tayl most frequently every year to this Island, to win great gain; and they make their profit, not by taking money, (for that people regards not money) but by birtering for necessary Commodities, as I shewed in my fourth book. And this is done, because they are a simple and credulous people; and oft-times cheating Merchants will bring sale money to this Mart, especially the cunning-witted Moscovite, that comes there in great numbers about the Summer Solstice (as I saw it in the year 1519.) and they will sometimes carry their ships on their shoulders, over the spaces, between the Waters. But when they are caught in their Roguery, they presently take revenge of them.

CHAP, III

Of fishing for Salmons.

There is searce any place in all Europe, where there is more plentiful fishing for Salmons, than in the Bothnick Sea, oward the Laplanders; from whole Mountains and Lands, there run forth huge fresh Water-Rivers: against which it is a most gallant sight to see the Salmons swim in the heat of the day, like souldiers in bright Armour; and in such plenty, that the upper Waters of the Mountains are unashed. He is called a Salmon from his leaping; for he takes his tail in his mouth, and holds it salt, and bends it double, till he can sleap over a place that is broken off: and he swims to this against the stream, and he will never leave off leaping, till he cast himself into fresh Waters, which he eagerly hunts for; and afterwards leaping down again, he returns to his old habitation amongst the hollow Rocks; For he delights, by turns, to live in salt and sresh Waters. This Fish will grow to be fix or seven foot long, very strong and heavy: his stell is red; which though it be tweet and pleasant, yet they soon fill those that eat salt; and it is true, it one eat it greedily, when it is sresh: But when it is salted, it is held to be more pleasant, that they are bought at great rates and abundance,

200

が一

ereto is

Where.

House

to all the

toit %

Helin-

untains,

dy long

Ranged Clims of

it at the

gerher

hange,

counds:

Sait-fifth (menfes,

to this

i, (for unes, as uple and

oney to

een the

creage

thing

which

Moun-

lutio

\$12C

neset

hunts

nett.

at car

and a

and carried into Upper-Germany, first in thips then by Carts. Nor is there found any want of this Fifth, catch as many as they will, in the place where they breed. For I law about the Summer Solflice, on the utmost shores of Bothnia, about Thorna, such a great multitude of them taken, and drawn forth in such abundancesthar they brake the strongest Nets. For this Fish, when he finds himself entangled frives with all his force to free himfelt, putting his Tail in his mouth, to leap forth in a hoop: and though he be flow and fluggish, he will fuddenly shew that, by reason of his Far. His heart taken out, moves longer than the heart of any other Creature : Salmons are procured at a great rate in the Rh ne, and Weafil, and Danow, or Dzuma, near the Kings Court in Livonia; and thele are dryed in the smoak with Oken Wood, to make them taste the better, as they generally do by all the Northern Waters. Many of them are taken in the Countries of the Offrogoths, and Veftrogoths: For there are Rivers in many places 20 or 30 foot deep; especially amongst the Vestrogoths, in the Province called Wermelandia, which was formerly a Kingdome: where there is a Lake of fresh Water, which is one hundred miles long, and fourty miles broad, called Vexer; into which there run 24 great Rivers from the Mountains of Norway, and they have but onely one out-let toward the South, which is called Trolhette, that is, the Divels Hood: In those fresh Rivers, Salmons are taken in great abundance: and they lay huge eggs in their kind, bigger than Chiches or Peafon; and being all spotted on the outside very handsomely with black spots. Also great is the profit of these Fish where ever they be taken and where men have Art to take them, it increaseth daily.

CHAP. IV.

Of Fishing for Sea-Calves.

BEcause in the Bothnick and Finland Sea, there is a vast company of Sea-Calves: therefore I will fet down briefly the nature of them, and the way to catch them, which I have seen. The Sea-Calf, which also in Latine is called Heleus, hath its name from the likeness of a Land-Calf, and it hath a hard fleshy body; and therefore is hard to be killed, but by breaking the Temples of the head. In hath a voice like a Bull, four feet, but not his ears; because the manner and manfion of its life is in the Waters. Had it such ears, they would take in much Water, and hinder the swimming of it. It produceth a persect Creature, and brin, s forth at all times, as Women do, but chiefly with the first Goats. The Sea-Call is hairy, and sticks backward in copulation as a Dog doth, whether he will, or no. She bringeth forth her Young on the Land, as Cattel do, but never more then two at once though the Author of the Nature of things (ay three. She doth not bring her Young from the Land into the Sea, before it be 12 days old, and by degrees uleth it to it. They will low in their sleep, thence are they called Calves. They will learn, and with their voyce and countenance salute the company, with a confuled murmuring: called by their names, they will answer: no Creature fleeps more profoundly; The Fins that serve them for to swim in the Sea, serve for legs on Land, and they go hobling up and down as lame people do. Their Skins, though taken from their bodies, have always a fense of the Seas, and when the Sea go forth, they will stand up like brittles. The right Fin bath a soporiferous quality to make one fleep, if it be put under ones head. They that fear Thunder, think those Tabernacles best to live in, that are made of Sea-Calves Skins, because onely this Creature in the Sea, as an Eagle in the Ayr, is safe and secure from the stroke of Thunder. This Animal suckleth her Whelps at her

it is beid to be spore pleatant, that they are bought at girlar rains and abundance

on the l

CURT

crue il

bothid

or that-

ment, la

demon

the Sea

the W

Bhen

detd

of th

ryco

man

2:121

her

2hul

itom

Total

earth

DE E

13000

When

Space.

torm o

CHAP. V.

Of the way to fish for them, and their Physical use.

The Fisher lyes crooked upon the Ice with a counterfeit black Skin, and with a long Spear, and a crooked Iron at the end, and he lows, and calls the Sca-Calf; who comes pretently thinking to find a new Female, his own being flain: for he is of all beatts the most cruel murderer of his own Female, that he will take one Female after another, until he be killed by one of them in their own defence. But here he finds not a Confort, but a Dart; not Luxury, but a snare to destroy him: For the Dart shot through the Spear, sticks in his body, till the beast being weakned by the wound, is drawn forth by the Rope. He is also taken napping, with a Spear, because he sleeps most protoundly, as some other fishes do, of whom I shall speak underpeath concerning the Rosmarus.

As a man and a horse, so doth the Sea-Calt grow grey: and the Young ones always reverence the Elder. For where 30 or 40 lye in the Rocks asseep, as stocks of sheep, it hath been faithfully observed, that the young ones and the old ones sleep atunder: and when one of the elder goes down into the Waters, not one of them will stay behind on the Mountain, Rock, nor Plain, or any part of the Ice, unlesse it be to bring forth. If the S a be boysterous and rise, so doth the Sea-Calts hair: if the Sea be calm, the hair is smooth; and thus may you know the state of the Sea in a dead Skin. The Bothnick Marriners conjecture by their own cloaths, that are made of these Skins, whether the Sea shall be calm, and their Voyage prosperous, or they shall be in danger of shipwrack.

CHAP. VI.

More of the virtue of this Creature.

Hese Creatures are so bold, that when they hear it thunder, and they see it clash and lighten, they are glad, and ascend upon the plain Mountains, as Frogs rejoyce against Rain. When they of Bothnia, or Northern Sea, are to sail forth toward Germany in bitter Winter, they smeer the planks of their ships with the sat of this Creature, that they may not treeze and drown the ship. Also this sat is commonly called Seeltram, it is good to smeer divers forts of Skins, and Hides, which they call soft Leather: of which they make soft slockens, as one may see in Prussia how this soft Leather is prepared by Water-Wheels, and to vent it, it is carried into Flanders Italy, France and Germany. Also Ox-Hides, unlesse they be smeered with this Fat, or Whales Fat, are nothing worth to make boots for Travellers in Rain; because it drives away all mousture and preserves them very long; nor will Mice eat boots or shooes smeered with this Fat or Horse-head stalls tied to the Mangers, as they will those that are smeered with Ox or Sheeps Suet. Also this natural good is in this Leather, that it will never be Thunder-stricken, where ever it be tyed.

sand with

the Sa-

cing flain.

at he will town de-

are to de-

the beat

ken nip-

thes do, of

orang opes

ility , as

and the old

Mers, but

part of the

Sec mon

e by their raim, and

sey fee it

cains, as

ta, areto

beir fhips

in Alfo

Sins and

25 0000 and to

ides, un-

en make

neierres is Far or

red with

never be

CHAP. VII.

Of the perplexity of those that eat the flesh of Sea-Calves in the Lent.

Since this Creature hath fielh and lard like to Hogs about the House, many Strouble themselves with a great scruple, whether a man may securely seed on the inward fielh of these Creatures in Lent; because they are sat as Bacon outwardly, and when that is taken away, the fielh is next to it. Wherefore this cause is wont to be remitted to the Ecclesialical men to decide; and whilest on both sides, many Arguments from Natural Reason use to be given, to prove this or that, and it cannot be defined and agreed upon; the men of a more clear judgment, te jecting many Reasons, brought on both sides, do say and prove, that the demonstration must be setcht from the Sea-Call it self, namely thus; that when the Sea-Call brings forth on the shore, if the Beast driven by the Hunter run into the Woods, men must sorbear to eat of it in Lent, when sies forbidden: but if he run to the Waters, one may safely eat thereof. And so it is, that infinite multitudes of people use this Fat instead of Oyl. And therefore their siesh is powdred up in abundance, as Pork is, and Flitches of Bacon; but the more solid Fat of this Creature is carryed to Upper Germany.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Jacks, or Pikes.

There are Lakes of fresh Waters in the Mountainous parts of Lapland, that are four hundred Italian miles in length, and one hundred in breadth, and more, wherein there is such a multitude of Water-Woolves, or Pikes, (and other Fish besides) that they not onely suffice to seed men in four most ample Kingdoms of the North, but much farther, being dryed with Salt in the Sun, and carryed in ships, as great heaps of Wood, into large Germany, to be lold there. In like manner must we think of the Lakes of Finland. The Pike is a River-Fish, with a large mouth, and very sharp teeth, and devours smaller fish : yet the Perch, with her Scales, and most prickly Fins, stands against him, that he cannot devour her. Yet he will cunningly come upon her overthwart, and bite her in imall pieces, and twallow her down; fo that no fish, be he never so well armed, can be fate from his devouring cruelty. The Pike or Jack feeds on venemous Beafts, as Toads, Frogs, and fuch like: yet when men are fick, Physicians counsel them to ear the Pilie, as being wholesome meat. Caught in a Net, he will easily escape, if the Fisher-men draw the Net foftly: but if you draw the Net very failthe cannot avoid you. This is called the Water-Woolf, and if he have River-Water, and meat enough to keep him, in time he will grow eight foot long; and will devour a fifh almost as big as himlelf. For when he conquers his prey he first eats the head: when that is done, he eats the rest by degrees, till he eats up all. Also he will not spare his own kind, either by reason of his natural cruelty, or because he is greedy and rapacious. Moreover, he puriues his own feed to foon as they have the form of fifthes nor will be abitain from such as have sharp prickles: for his throat and flomach to joyn together, that fometimes he casts it forth, being greedy to Iwallow a fifth.

AP.VII.

CHAP, IX.

for notigin in the drippated the Filher come index then their their their factors of the

allowined that they taink o no danger util. Another are raised with bongite

64

Alin, nece no with No

常江江京記

per mon

LOCC M

即於

compa

mbie.

ifthey

havel

live k

the N

they

italo

their

lers the

and:

And

tyes,

Nett

back

that:

¢d,d

tudes

Men

CHAP. IX.

Of catching the Pike.

HE Female of this Fish, when the scatters her Eggs, the goes farre from the place where the is wont to stay, and there the lays her Eggs, that her Young may not hinder her in taking the prey: and the doth this, either by natural cruelty, or envious Rapine. He is taken many ways, either by a broad Hook, or Alchymy, or thining Brais, made for the purpole; and there is a fifth hanged at it, that is white. Allo with an Iron-toothed Fork, when they make a fire in the pirchy dark night; for while he gazeth greedily on the fire, he is stricken with the Iron Fork. Moreover, when she plays under the Ice in the end of March : for then she lays her Eggs, and makes such a noise in the Water, by strong motion of her head, that the discovers her self to the Fisher how to take her. Also she is taken in Weels made of thin boards, and placed in Reeds : and when the gers in, the falls upon all fishes there to devour them. Fine-mouth'd Gluttons, that keep these fifh in Fish-ponds, to entertain strangers, chiefly in Germany, spend more on this in one moneth, than they do on horses for the War. For fixty great Pikes in one moneth, will con ume more fish, which they call Carps, fetche from other places, longer than a mans foor, put into the Fish-ponds, than ten horses would do at grass. Some also have not onely for their pleasure, but for their Houshold maintenance, Fish-ponds made hard by the Banks of Waters, where fish play in sholes under a free captivity, delighting the eyes of the beholders, and procuring an appetite to the Guelts. They run greedily at mens hands, and they cover meat before they are to be earen themselves. Man feeds his own delights, and when he hath somewhat in his power that he may take, it often falls out, that when he is full, he is taken himself, and leaves all behind. Pikes pickled, will keep a long time in Camps for food. But dryed with the Sun, Wind and Salt they are far more commodious: for when they are raw, bruifed with a Club or Malletsthey will be very good meat. But lealoned with Salt, they fill hold their Native clammy hibitance. The Teeth of Pikes burn'd a little, and powdred, firewed on the ruptures of horses, under the Harness, and a Skin laid upon the place, is a certain Remedy.

CHAP. X.

Of fishing by Flames.

Because I mentioned before the Iron-toothed Fork, wherewith River-Pikes are easily catche; therefore I shall here shew the chief property of it, because wise Fishermen commonly use that instead of many hooks, to catch Pikes and Eels with, and they make great profit by the use of such easie Instruments: yet they use them the same way that they do in Boats made of one entire piece of Wood, or two pieces joyned together; on the fore-part they set Torches of Pitch, because it is dark, and make a great slame, and the Pikes and Eels are seen to come gazing at the light, and then they strike them with this atmed Iron, and draw them to them for their use. Sometimes also they sav heaps of great Wood upon pieces of Ice swimming up and down, and make a fire with them; and with the like Iron, as if they slood in a ship, they catch sishes, who are so associated they think of no danger near. Also they are taken with boughs set upright in the ship, and the Fishes come under their shadow to rest.

from the

2000 A 130

meta) cro-

or Alchy.

Lit, that

= pitchy

the Iron

t then the

KOD Of her

staken in

Deficially

seep thele

te on this

t Pikes in

om other es would

blodlaob

and pro-

end they

alls outs

trickled

ind and

ha Club

bloot Illi

owdred,

spon the

Pikes

Pikes

ments:

cines of

Z.(020

great them;

Allo

Also, oft-times it falls out, that when it thunders fiercely, the Eels, as if they were not tale in the Water, defirous to go out of the Waters, are taken either with Nets or Hooks, or Hoys, and Wooden-Iquare Buildings, bored through with many holes, and so they are catchein great numbers. And the Inhabitants get more profit when Thunder troubles the Waters, and rowzeth up the Eels from their Dens, that elle will hardly come forth. Likewile, hanging a huge stone at ir,th y keep a Wedg-fashion'd Vessel of Wood, bored full of holes, and filled with Peale-straw, and let it down to the bottome of the Water for fish to creepinto. Not is this in vain; for with Ropes bound to them, they are drawn forth, fill'd up to the very top. This is a new-tound way, and wonderful profitable. In Winter they lye hid in the deep Mud, where the Lakes treez nor ; but if they be all frozen over, they all dye, having no breathing from the Ayr, as I have feen it, and as I shall fay underneath concerning fishing. Alto, Eeis ufe to live long sometimes for fix days in the fields lowed with Peaton, especially when the North Wind blows; but they are to imeered with Grave or Ashes, that they cannot get forth again. They much delight to be under Corn-Mills, by reason of the tweet Meal that descends by little and little. There is found a huge multitude of Eels in the Northern parts, falted or dryed with smoak; and their they eat raw.

CHAP. XI.

Of Fishing in Summer, and Hawking.

PRovident Fisher-men observe two things chiefly, that in the morning before the Sun rife, and when the fight of Fishes is most deceived, and they come in Sholes to feed, they may fish filently. To do this, they choose dry Birch-Wood Sponges, as that Countrey brings forth very great ones; and these they cast upon the Foords, that the Birds that wander may be the more secure. The Fowler puts a great Sponge upon his head, to cover it like a Helmet, and goes into the Lake up to the chin, that he may enfnare them, he goes forward toward the birds that (wim, they feeing this Spongy Wood upon the Fowlers head, thinking that it is one of the other Sponges that Iwims, come near, and are catche by the Fowlers hand; and so one after another, many come, and are caught and killed. For the Fowler puts out his hand privately, and catcheth the filly bird by the legs, and draws him down, and puts him in his bag prepared for it. The other birds supposing that their sellow dived under water of himself, to seek for food, as they do thinking nothing, they all go the same way, and fall into the Fowlers hand. And as he fisherh with the other hand with a large Net, it is not lost labour; for the Water troubled with his feet, blinds the fish that otherwise have but weak eyes, and makes them not to beware, but that they run of themselves into the Nets. Moreover, he fishes to the purpose with a Hook that hangs behind his back, over his arm, with a Line. For so many fish are to be found every where, that with all fishing Instruments, upon every joynt, almost, they are easily carched, especially in Creeks of the Sea, and Rivers, where fish come in great multitudes, that they may be the more quiet, and secure from Tempests. But they are fafe no where, if mans Wit can catch them.

Ee 2

CHAP. XII.

the co

MODE

maic

ceilar

tenter

icci,2

that a

they

frood

thet

migh

4百年

Wiz

tt3

Lin

hall

thei

lone

hori

forth

linie

time:

by w

2 000

not de

giveth

Reme

tich p

RIMAN

first in

who con

by hole

tald to

this next one whole W CHAP, XII, on the world and

More of ingenious Fishing.

There is also another way of Fishing found out, with Snares, by making a noise, fince it is apparent, that most Fish can bear, and are taken with sweet Musick. The Nets are pitched long-ways in the Water, or else overthwart; and before the Nets, upon the Water, an Infrument like a Bowe, that it may flote above the Waters: at the upper end of this Bowe, is hanged a little Ringing-Bell; and the Fishes come in sholes to the noise of it, wondring at the same, and so they are caught with apparent snares: I shall relate one accident which I faw ; a Lutenist playing on his Lute, and finging to it called many Dolphins together; and after that for an hour's space they had heard this found on the very calm Sea (for not one blast of Wind stirred) they puffed, and with their Tails troubled the Waters, as it were in token of thankfulness when they departed : and prefently there followed fuch hideous Tempetts, that we could carce fave our lives from great danger. Some Fisher-men alto tye living small Fish to their Lines, and draw their Lines long-ways, and broad-ways, that they may circumvent the great ones that feek after their prey, with their Nets. Others make Ditches near the Sea-shores, that the Water may come in ano they cover them with boards, that the fish may lye and rest there; and then they catch them in fnares : and this falls ont more frequently in Autumn than in ummer, by reafon of the more cruel Tempests. Others fet long Wedg-fashion'd Hedges made with stones and wood like a Pyramis, as far as to the middle of the River : yet not to flop from their Neighbours the publick way for the fifth to pais, that runs in the middle of the River, and is called by the people there, The Kings Vein; and so in this Pyramidal Orifice, where the Weel is set open, they are raken.

Sironia to bor tour CHAP, XIII;

Of their Fishing on the Ice.

orward and all the burning

Here is shewed a different way how Fishes are taken under the Ice, called Borbochs, or Lake, in their Vulgar Tongue: which when the Fishers perceive under the thin Ice, they aftonish them with the stroke of a great Hammer, and endeavour to make them stop underneath, and to lye upon their backs, and to turn up their bellies, that breaking a hole in the Ice, they may take them one half alive. And this Custome is most used about the Winter Solstice. There is another way to fish under the Ice, that is the most common, and it is with Hooks: to which small fishes being tied, allure the great ones to prey upon them, especially Pikes, which are held to be more infattable, than other fishes. A small cord is let run out 60, or 100, paces, between two holes that sland far off and right one against the other, all the night, and lies under the Ice, baited with many Hooks; the Fisher-men draw this forth the next day, and find multitudes of fishes caught upon it; and these fish are of divers forts, and frequently very sat, by reason of their good seeding, and sate rest, that they have in cold places, especially such as remain in Lakes: The Males are fatter than the Females, except the Herring, as I shall shew at the end.

Lebe epochtic chin, the best

malinga

zh wett

ur; and

may Hote

which I phins tothe very seir Tails

cparted:

#(elale

to their

Chrum-

ers make er them

hem in

es made

PET DOC

CUDS IN

bus 18

ers per-

3, md

nn out

ooks:

DECI-

cord

brode

on of

(t) 15

CHAP, XIV.

Of fishing with Horses.

This way of fifthing upon the Ice, is observed in great Lakes, and fresh Waters, and Creeks of the Salt-Seas, every year from the moneth of November, to the end of March, and longer, as often as there is need, and as the fifthes are in multitude. For whether the Ice be thick, or covered with Snow, or clear, or flippery, or however it appears, as it is bound up with Cold, or however Nature makes itsthere never wants Wit nor Will to serve the Publick faithfully in neceffary things. So the Northern people endure Heat and Cold alike, with a contented mind. To walk upon the Ice, they have Wooden shooes fit for their feet, and these are tyed on; and they have three points of Iron sastned to them, that with their points downwards tread eaven upon the flippery Ice: and thus they tread fure upon the Ice, as upon firm ground. If they want their Irons, the Fisher-men will go firmly with naked soles, and never fear falling. But with shooes of Oyl'd Leather they cannot stand fast by reason of the Frost, for this Leather will presently grow hard and slippery as Ice; especially if thin Snow for one night, or but half a night, be scattered upon the Ice: for this makes them fall unawares inddenly. When it is deep or thick, the Foot-steps take more hold of it: Wherefore when they will fish under the Ice, they open two great holes, some 8 or 10 foot broad, and a 150 or 200 paces alunder one from the other in a right Line: and between these, they make 30 or 40 leffer holes, about one foot and half broad, and on both fides diftant between them 30 foot : Then they put their Cords into the Water, under the Ice, through them, and guide them with long Spears; and directing them to the other great hole, they give the'e that ride on horseback both ends of the e Ropes to draw by; and they charge to drive their horses on the faster, to make them draw, as the Nets seem to be almost drawn forth, left the fifth, when they perceive that they are entangled, as great Pikes, may Strive forcibly, and break the Nets, and escape. And so they are drawn forth ofttimes, and it is a very handlome fight, in such great multitudes, and divers kinds, that they do not divide them there with ballance, of which they have no use, but by whole Waggon-Loads of great Veffels that they measure them by.

and management as same gade CHAP. XV. am sittled a tripmos eakesorie

Of running on the Ice for Filb; and why they fish fo often.

T falls out oft-times, this when they take fuch multitudes of fifth, the youngmen that want money, and favour amongst the Fisher-men, that they may run a long courie upon the flippery Ice, and win fome fish by running: and they will not deny to pay them what they defer honeftly for their pains, or elfe they freely give them some. Commonly 20 or 30 fishes are set out for them to win, which ar Rome were worth to many Franks. There are many Reatons why they must take fuch pains, and fish under the Ice, namely the time of the fishes breeding, whereof many kinds give eggs in the most bitter cold Weather: and these have many fishes in their company, not that are by Nature friendly with them, but as such who come to devour their eggs. Also the publick profit and necessity preeth them, that there must be provision made for the people, of the abundance of fishes: and the nature of fish requires it; who if they had no breathing places by holes made in the Ice, all that are in the River, or Lake, would foon die. Long fishes are wonderfully made far by a North-Wind, as broad ones are by a South-Wind. And not onely in one Lake, but almost over all, is this Winter-fishing held upon the Ice, especially in the larger Lakes, as Meler, and Vener, and Vether,

別記録

001100

संबंध है।

bestebt

the Riv

etron

apol brogs

deep deep

mik

Notice Notice

fright in file some by being two, the months the stem the stem and lean and felves by felves by

that are fresh Lakes; and these shew the time, by their natural property, wherein a man cannot sish in them safely. But Vether, more than the rest, shews its nature to men that they may run no hazard. For at the time when the Ice begins to thaw, it begins to boyl with a mighty noise, and to come up from the bottom; and it breaks with mighty violence into small Cliss or Chaps, that commonly are made into the Ice; and in a little time it will widen them very much. And though the Ice be then more than fix or seven hands breadth thick; yet the wind above working with it, it all divides into many small pieces, that many both foot and horse, that are upon it, are usually drowned if they know not, or neglect the nature of it, and sly not suddenly to the shore to save their lives; or when they hear and see the horrible classing of the Ice, to stand sast on some great piece of Ice, that is soon driven to Land by the Wind.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the admirable event of the Icy Lake Vether.

A Certain Countrey-man who was on one fide this Lake, was to drive over a Wayn-Load of Hay to the other fide of this Lake, which is fixteen Italian miles broad, and fixty miles long. He heard the Crack, and the Ice breaking by degrees into small Chinks: Wherefore, understanding the nature of it, he suddenly in great fear that it would all break, to provide for his life, fell to running to the other fide of the Lake, as fast as his horses could drive, leaving his Wagon-Load of Hay behind him; there were four armed Horsemen that were behind him, and they ran after him as fast as they could, supposing he was some Thief, and had spyed them, and therefore ran away for tear of being taken, and they caught him on the shore, and when they understood that he sled not for any fault, but because the Ice crackt, and would speedily be dissolved, as he had learned by Experience, they rejoyced much that they had escaped drowning, besides their intention, and besides their industry. And then the Countrey-man shew-ed them his Waggon swimming, not upon the Ice, but in the most open Waters; and had not they hafted away, they had fallen into the fame danger. Over this Lake, however it be frozen men ule to travel from the Ostrogothi to the Vestrogothi, and back again; but it is never successeful for Troops of Horsemen, who intend to come in a hostile manner. Nor did they finde it successeful in the Neighbouring broad Wood, which is called Holveden by the people, namely when the rash Danes oft-times tryed to shew their strength there, and there they found their first graves, that they might have no need to proceed to farther Torments. Laftly, the Army of the Offrogoths nieth here to give the first Onice upon the Danish Souldiery, and pay them their first Wages with their Swords.

ereste a langua fue a grande de como de la c

CHAP. XWI

bauted store paintemental

: pottom:

mmonly

DEWIN

oth look

genthe

ien they

piece of

ITE OFFEE A

o Italian

aking by

he jud-

running Wagon-

behind

e Thirf,

ind they t for any

had lear-

n thew-

Waters:

ner this

estreso

n, who

in the

re they

Oalet

CHAP. XVII.

Of Fishes of the black River at the new Fort in Finland.

Here is a Fort in the utmost parts of Finland that is under the Pole, and it belongs to the Kingdom of Sweden, and it is called the New-Fort, because it was wonderfull cunningly built, and foreified by Nature and Art : for it is placed on a round Mountain, having but one entrance and out-let toward the Welt; and that by a thip that is tyed with great Iron Chains, which by firong labour and benefit of Wheels, by reason of the lorce of the Waters, is drawn to one part of the River by Night, by Keepers appointed by the King of Sweden, or fuch as farm it. A very vast River runs by this Castle, whose depth cannot be found; it arifeth from the White Lake, and falls down by degrees; at the bottome it is black, especially round about this Castle; where it breeds and holds none but black Fish, but of no ill raste, as are Salmons, Trouts, Perch, Pikes, and other soft Fish. It produceth also the Fish Trebias that is black in Summer, and white in Winter, who, as Albertus faith, lib, 24. grows lean in the Sea; but when he is a foot long, he is five fingers fat: This, leafoned with Salt, will draw out Gold out of the deepest Waters that is tallen in, and make it slote from the bottome. At last, it makes the black Lake paffing by Viburgum, as Nilm makes a black River where he dischargeth himsels.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the strange Harper of this River.

Hen the Image of a Harper, playing as it were on his Harp in the middie of the Waters above them appears, it figuifies some ill Omen, that the Covernour of the Fort, or Captain, shall suddenly be slain, or that the negligent and sleepy Watch-man, shall be thrown headlong from the high Walls, and die by Martial Law. Also this Water is never free from Chosts and Visions that appear at all times; And a man may hear Pipes sound, and Cymbals tinkle, to the shore.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Fish of diverskinds.

THE various and unlike Figures of them, shew that a wonderful multitude of Fish is sound every where on the North Coasts; the use whereof, names, natures, and proprieties, are neither to be resolved by Philosophers, nor by other Nations. As the form of a small Fish, that is not above a hand-breadth long, having a face like a Hare, and prickles on the back, that will terrifie and put to slight any great Fish, by but looking upon it. Then there is Fish with sharp backs like saws, which with those sharp prickles, and pointed Fins, will hart all the rest, by bringing their fins forward, as they do when they mean to do hurt. And these two, like Thieves of the Waters and of Fishes, when they are taken, are good for nothing, by reason of their prickles, and unlavoury slesh, and therefore they throw them away. There are fish also that wear a horn on their heads before, like the Stem of some great ship, and their mouths are upon their bellies; they are lean and unsavoury, by reason of their starved bodies, which they make themselves by pursuing after other sishes.

intell

more by

(TEXIE

II Sea

Hany

DC 15

theff

tude

fort

Hen

15 (D)

Fish

incon

Fifcal

Merci

bome

Dire

tutnis

TO LO Y

00個

one th

land an

Wards in Herrin

Ma but

Northe micre.

There are also round Fishes, with heads like to Oxen, and they are like a Horse-shooe: These are very frequent meat, when they are catcht amongst the choicest fish to be eaten. But the most choice as men esteem them, commonly are these. The Quavier, that hath Spears on his fore-legs, wherewith he strikes such as come near to him, hath also on his back tall prickles, that will do hurt likewise. The Amger hath good white slesh, and is long and round, and of a sweet pleasant taste. The sishes called Prasmi, are fat and broad, and are one or two foot long. The Borbosha are River-sishes, that live in Lakes, shorter then Eels, but they have huge bellies: they go to the bottome, unless it be in Winter, when they are catcht above the Ice (as I said before) and stunnied with a Mallet. Their slesh is sweet, their skin clammy, not thick; they have a great liver round and sweet. In 12 years it grows very great, and changeth the name, and is called Solaris.

CHAP, XX,

Of Salt-fish dryed and smoaked.

Shall now speak of the many forts of Fish that are salted, dryed, and hardned in the imoak, especially for that reason, because the most hard Northern hodies feed on dry Fish, as Pikes, Mullets, Praimi, Borbochi; and those they call Sijck in Gothland; all which, like piles of Wood, are commonly fold by Reedmeasure, or Cubits, or greater weight, as by hundreds, thousands, and those which in Vulgar Gothick Language are called Schippunt, rather than by weighing in a ballance. These fishes therefore to be prepared for mans eating, are steeped two days in ffrong Lie, and one day in fair water, to make them fold as they should be: then they are fod, and falt butter is poured on them, and are fet even upon Princes Tables, as a Food to be defired, and very pleafant. After this, Fifh of divers fores both fresh and dry, are set one with another in order, and are sed on at meals with great Feasiviry, especially at the Houses and merry Drinkings of fuch who place much felicity in eating and are luxurious. The rest of the Commons are always urged by the cold Climate to take care not to much to eat dainty meat as firong meat. Some knock the fifth with Mallets, made of firong Wood, before they boyl them : some also dryed in Salt and the Sun, are knocked and eaten raw : which in their common speech they call Siick; and they are of two forts, especially in the Bothnick Sea, into which run very great Rivers from the most high Mountains of Norway. Dried smoaked Fish are not least estecmed as Salmons, Praimi, Sijck, Herrings, Mullets, Lampreys, Boctes : yet Salmons exceed all the reft, because it supplies the place of all Food with its goodness, also because eaten before we drink, it gets an appetite, and it is a pleasant and welcome Food to Travellers: for, raw, they taffe excellent well: the lame must be thought of broyled Herring, which the Germans call Bucking : which are bought dear enough by the Romans, and are eaten very greedily by them; and cause no loathing, which is far from the nature of other fish. These are yearly carryed if Wars hinder not in Flanders Bottoms, into the Spanish Ports. There are also Bottes, and Orches, dryed Fish in the smoak, that are eaten by the Northern people. A rand ob or mean and another the good ta, has word and mind another to go two line Thierest of the Wales and of the southenties are taken, and tool for

nothing by realou of risely prickles, and enterprish light and there one play also we

the Marting. The cateful alforms was a burn on their heads belone, fine

serigard ivoury, by reason of their flarwed because which they make them.

namonly he Brikes

do hun

pennene

mer then

un Win-

od with a

great li-

anto and

hardned

there ha-

they call

by Reedore which

ingina

Aceped y thould en upon

Fish of

relied on

NUDES OF

ie Com-

eat quin-

group to

inocked cy are of

ers irom

all citee-

almors

ocincis,

e meli

ich are

There

P. 22

Some #

CHAP, XXI.

Of Salt Fish.

I Nfinite multitudes of people feed on Salt-fish : Almost all those fish that are dryed in the wind, or wasted in the smoak, are also seasoned with Salt, that their internal favour may endure the longer : and these are fold by just estimation, nor by the ballance (as I faid) but by Tale of Tens, and great quantities. The greatest and most necessary me of thele, is, in the belieging of Castles, and fights at Sea, such are Herrings, Eels, Braimi, and those we call in our Language Torfek, If any man fallifie there, and fell rotten fifth, or falts them up in flinking Veffels, he is highly amerced by the Fifcal, and compelled to reftore the money he fold them for : and such fish are cast into the Water, or else they are burned in the publick Marker. They are but feldome thrown into the Water, left other good found fish feeding on them for Hunger, might die. But found fish, in huge multitudes, are fold with the Magistrates Seal upon them, that they may be carryed into other parts in Vessels, made for the purpose. And that all things may be done juftly, and rightly, there are fworn Officers appointed; and as there are fome fer over the Corn, to there are over Fish, and Skins, to fearch them, and to fet a just value upon them.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Herring.

"HE Herring is taken oft-times in such multirudes, in the beginning of Autumn, near the Coasts of the Southern Gothland, about Schoningia, that of antient right belongs to the Kingdome, and is falted in infinite Veffels and transported; that it will suffice amongst Salt-fish to feed the greatest part of Europe. For there comes together upon long and large Banks, in their Houles, and Tents, for two moneths time, from all Countries. Merchants of divers forts, to buy thefe Herrings for money, or by exchange, and to carry them away in their thips. Sometimes it falls out that they may be had for a very small price, because there is such plenty, and they come in such huge sholes to the shores, that not onely the Fisher-mens Nets are broken, but in that great Troop, an Ax, or Spear, thrown into the Thrung of Fishes, will stay fast there, and this is a huge gain for the Kings Fiscal. For there is a strict Law, confirmed with great penalties laid upon the Merchants, that before all, they must pay the Kings Tribute; and returning home, they must have a safe Conduct or Testimonial from the Kings Governor : namely for two causes, both that they may have free leave to pass; and that returning to their places, they may plainly demonstrate, that they have done no man wrong in that place, nor used any violence or injury, where they traffiqued or fished. Herrings are also taken two or three miles from thence; but it is one that is far worle in taffe and eltimation, and is held nothing worth. There is also at the same time most plentiful fishing for Herrings on the Coasts of England and Scotland, which is used by the Flemings Fishers; and from thence afterwards it borrows the name, that that Fish carryed to Rome, is called the Flanders Herring: yet it is not so fat a kind of fish, though it be long and thick, because it is a barren ground, and the food is not much, and the concourle of waters, as the Northern Herring is; which, for its pleafant rafte, is effected more every where.

where the West goes away cheer will see its again in infinite malescale; by the

100 OND

titi

pop

6000

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Nature of the Herring.

Cince almost all kinds of Sea-fish have their Season, wherein it is good and Deleafant, this affords plenty from August, to the end of Ollober : and it is known to all that eat it, that it then taltes very pleasant. New taken, it feems the more delicate; but being falted, it will last longer for mansule, than other fish do except the Salmon. Of all Fish, almost, this onely lives by Water. But taken forth of the Water, he prefently dies, and there is no delay between his coming to the Ayr, and dying, as can be perceived, to foon as he is drawn forth of the water. His eyes shine like light in the Sea by night: and which is more, you shall perceive as it were Lightnings and Glitterings over the Sea, with the great motion of this fish, and turning of the vast sholes of them, causing a testexion; and this is commonly called Herring-Lightnings. Whereloever above the Waters he fees a Light at Seasthither he fwims by heaps; and by this Wile is he at fettimes drawn into the Ner, as being fit to be taken, that by Gods command (who gives meat to all, in time fit,)he may be taken for the fullenance of infinite numbers of men. In Winter, he hides himself in the depth of the Seas, until the seasonable time that he is to be taken. He comes also near the shore, to gaze on the many fires that are kindled before the Merchants Tents, as in Souldiers Camps. There is also a Herring a hands-breadth long in the Bothnick Sea, toward Thorma, that is as favoury, and pleafant as the former; and this is taken almost at all times, especially in Summer and Automn, and in Winter, under the Ice. Also it is taken in such multitudes, after the Autumnal Equinoctial, that they are forced to cut the Ropes of their Nets. This Fish hath no Gur but the Jejunum; and therefore nothing is found in his belly: yet because of this, he lives not onely by Water, as I laid before. Amongst these kinds of Fishes, the Females are commonly most esteemed, because their eyes sarisfie the stomach : when for a certain time we must abstain from Fish: as also do the eyes of other Fishes, as of Salmons, and such as the Goths call Sijek. Lastly, the Male and Female afford the same profit, being dryed with Salt, Sun and Wine, as being more ready to be caten prefently. Of the Herring of Schoningia, Celter speaks :

The World rich Scandia Herrings fonds ____ Merchanic, that before all, they wild proy the force Troute of and returning home they wild have a file Condo of Testimographic artise and the coverage.

Of Fish-Ponds, and the Spawn of Fishes.

A Lio in the North parts there are some that have Fish-ponds, made for some fingular gain they make by some Fish; and these sometimes they draw dry, by letting out the Waters, and take out the fish, leaving none, and they keep them fo empty, for to put some other kind of fish into them: when the Waters are brought again, and new Fishes are put into them, there will arise others also sit the Spawn of the former Fishes lying hid in the mud; and these are found to grow up more than the rest newly put in ; not unlike the Egyptian Fishes in Nilus, who after one year that they have spawn'd, and lest the Spawn in the mud, when the Water goes away, these will revive again in infinite multitudes by the returning of the Water to them.

andnis

compthe

ther fish

Witzken.

coming

the wa-

you hall

test moton; and Witers the st letad (who the num-

be feafore on the Camps, of Therooff at all Allo it of forced

te com-

on Sal-

ord the

edy,

5152

nd to

Some also keep the Fish-pawn they get by taking out the Fishes Guts, and they keep it all Winter in a most place, as at the time of propagation after the Vernal Equinoctial, they will not cast it into the Waters, because the hungry fishes, that cannot foon find provision, would presently devour it, as most of them are of such a malignant nature, that either for the reason alleaged, or hatred of increasing their own stock, or for their Luxury (as I said of Land-Creatures) they will devour their own Seed. But this kind that is so fruitful, unless it should afford infinite numbers of young ones from one fish, that are no bigger than Poppy, or Millet-seed, could never increase in the Waters to maintain the life of man. Nature supplies men excellently with these, but yet temperately; but where men are greater devourers, as in cold Countries (where the Cold soon scorches and consumes) she provides them with greater fish, and Sea-Monsters: but where slender people live, she ordains smaller fishes.

The End of the Twentieth Book.

chesters are the ferrough product of provide or this helper our onely by Wileyler I is the one of Indiana Propher of the Control of the contr

- be been an led only and a substantial on the rest of the parameter for parameter

and looks are not some of the control of the contro

Ff2

Olaus



demail born i lack as

(trot)

Wp

聪

Ditt

244

and

thip

tjin

When

Hana

dint.

Or Lind

Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UPSAL:

OF

Monstrous Fishes.

An Epitome of the Twenty one Book.

The Preface.

HE vast Ocean in its Gulph offers to all Nations an admirable spectacle, and shews divers forts of Fish; and these not onely wonderful for magnitude, as the Stars are compared one with the other, as they are terrible in shape ; so that there is nothing in the Ayr, nor Earth, nor Bowels of it, or in domestique Instruments that may seem to lye hid, that is not found in the depth of the Sea. For in the Ocean that is so broad, and by an easie and fruitful increase, receives the Seeds of Generation there are found many monstrous things in sublime Nature, that is always producing something; which being perplexed and rolled up and down one upon another by the ebbing and flowing of the Waters they seem to generate Forms from themselves, and from other principles; that what soever is bred in any part of nature, we are persuaded is in the Sea and manythings are to be found there, that are to be found no where elfe. And not onely may we understand by sight that there are Images of Animals in the Sea but a Pitcher, a Sword; Saws, and Horses heads apparent in small Shell-fish, Moreover-you skall find Sponges, Nettles, Stars, Fairies, Kites, Monkies Cows. Woolves, Ratchets, Wherees, Mice, Sparrows, Black-Birds, Crows Frogs Hogs, Oxen, Rams, Horses, Asses, Dogs, Locusts Calves, Trees, Wheels, Beesles, Lions, Eagles, Dragons, Swallows, and such like: Among st which, some huge Monsters go on Land and eat the roots of Trees, and Plants: Some grow fat with a South wind; some with a North wind blowing. There are also Monsters in the Sea, almost like to men, that fing mournfully as the Sea-Nymphs : Also Sea-men, that have a full likeness of body, and these in the night will seem to go up into the ships; and it is proved, that where they approach there is some danger coming; and if they stay long she ships are drowned. Also I shall add from the affertion of the faithful Eisters of Notway, that if they take such, and do not presently let them go, such a cruel Tempest will arise, and such a horridlamen ation of that fort of men cames with it, and of some other Monsters joyning with them

nienie, begge ;

pestle

DAR S-

it Ot

ted its

Ani-

7023

'cwi.

7255

Dit.

tha that

them, that you would think the Skie would fall; and the Fisher-men, with all their labour, can scarce save their own lives, much lesse can they catch fish. Wherefore in such a case, it is provided and observed by the Law of Fishing that when such monstrous fish are drawn up as their form is various, so they must be presently let go, entting away the Hooks and Lines.

CHAP. I.

Of the dangerous Fishing in the Norway Ocean.

HE Fishing is said to be dangerous in the Norway Ocean for many Reafons, because men fish in the open Sea very far from Land : When great Tempells arile, the Fisher-men are foon drown'd by the Waves: Where great Sholes of Ice flore, they are disperied: by the fighting of Whales, and other Monters, they are diffracted. Moreover, sometimes they are debilitated in in their hands by the horrible form, and attraction of some monstrous Fish our of the Sea; and if they do not prefently let them go, a Tempest rifeth and drowns them. If therefore tome rash Fisher-men, fighting with some Sea-Monster, pull him into the ship, that is like a Fryer with his Cowl, they are presently overwhelmed with howling and crying of these Monsters, that they can neither cast forth their Hooks to catch fifth nor row with their Oars, and they can scarce hoise up Sail to be gone, unless they let go the Monfler. These Monflers, though they often be raken in Nets, as well as choice Fish, (commonly called Stock-fish) yet are they call our as unprofitable, but the choile are kept in the ship, and are fold for great gain both in the place where they are taken, and in Neighbouring Kingdoms, and utmost Coasts of Germany. Many Thousands of Fisher-men dwell in the Villages in the utmost Borders of Normay, called Andones, Trondanes, Duvanes Gamblavick, Nyavick, and in other Lands that lye round about at Wardahus, that is, the Cattle, or House of Guard, for the whole Kingdome. In February and March, and also in January, the Inhabitants of this Country go in strong ships to fish from the shore into the Deep: as far as they can fail in two days, carrying with them necessaries for their Food for 20 or 30 days. But the place where they most frequently exercise their Fishing, is between Norway and Island: Nor do the Fisher-men when it is Tempestuous Weather, ride at Anchor, but they fish floting up and down till their ships be full. All their safety confifts in coming again to the shore, as they are directed by the Marriners compals; for by this, when the Winds rife, they know how to fleer their course. And it is observed, that when ever monfirous fish are drawn forth of the Sea, with men or Lions faces, and the like, that this always fore-shews Discords and War in the plant Subject to be a ferring to the real of the control of the federal product of the control o

The set spile for the first the contract of the first of

CHAP. II.

Stat

COURT MELE

high

01118 MID

BOOK

路山

fee

Eye

PCID.

Goo

forti

150

Proti

hite

CHAP. II.

Of the Danger of the Fisher-men, and the quality of the Fishes.

TOr is the danger small that hangs over the Fisher-men themselves, when they draw with hooks huge flrong fishes, that are about twelve foot long, as Turbets, Scates, and other finned Fishes; who when they are ready to be drawn forth of the waters, to oft pull the Fisher-men into the waters, unless they ience themselves well with Cords before-hand in the ship, or else help one the other as they labour. But such as with a prosperous Gale, having passed such great dangers at Sea, come fafe home with their Fisher-boats to Land, they pull forth their fish, and make them clean, and cut them in pieces, or elfe falt them whole with pickle, and lay them in the Sun, and most sharp Winds, to dry by the cold piercing Ayr; then they pile them up like great Piles of Wood, and put them again into ships, and they carry them forth to the most famous Mart-Town of all Norway, called Bergen, to be battred away by exchange, or fold for money. And hence it is, that this kind of fish is more properly called in their Language Berger-fifek, and not Stock-fifek from a flick or flaff, that being often beaten, it may be made the foster to boyl. Yet this Bergen-fifek is not all of one kind, but is effeemed or by the quantity or goodness. For there is another kind which is longer, called the Cod fish, whose bellies out into lengths like cords, and dryed in the Ayr, are fold, and cho'en by the Northern people, as being far the more delicate meat; they call this Roedscher. Also they keep the ends of the Tails of those Fishes, in great Vessels, for profit, or for dainty meat, which the Germans call Spore. Moreover, of the bellies of Byrts, they make Laps, a Cubit in length, or two Cubits; but broader than the others, very fat, which the Inhabitants call Raff; and these the people use for bread and meat. This Food agrees with strong men, not with those that are delicate. It talks as the Spawn of Fish dryed, almost; that, in Italian, is called Rottargi: but they are much fatter. The Inhabitants of Norway use the heads of these Fishes instead of wood to boil their meat with. Also there is taken on the Coasts of Norway, especially on the Rocks called Assenses, a certain Fish in great quantity, called a Makreel; well fealoned with Salt, it is the best fish; and, without Salt, the worst.

CHAP. III.

Of the Fishes of Mand.

T Here is also another diffinction and quality of Fish, which are taken in infinite multitudes in some places of Island, by the Inhabitants, and they differ from those I spake of before, by reason of their soft flesh, and length. Moreover, there are Cod, Turber, Sez-Calts, Merlufia, called, by the Goths, Torfek: amongst which are Whales, Sawers, and other Sea-Moniters: by whole uncamable cruelty firange troubles arise in the Waters. Also some dainty Fishes are there taken, called by the Italians, and Spaniards, Marlucz, and are carryed as far as Rome by the Spaniards, or Portingals. The time to take them, is in February, March, or April, and the Fishes taken, are dryed in cold Winds. And lastly, in open fields are they piled up like Piles of Wood, and are fold by Measures, or long Cuhits, or by Reed-meet, Italian measure, to many thousands, to German Merchants, or they are vented for Corn, Beer, Cloth, and the like, by way of exchange. If they must be fold by weight, that is wont to be done by estimation, by counting Hundreds and Thoulands. This weight, in their Language, is called Wangh: as also in Gothland, Swedland, and Germany, it is commonly called Schippunt: it weighs 300 great pounds, and is observed for weight. The greater and better profit . NAME OF STREET

et, when

(occlopy)

ready to be

mich they

p one the caffed fach

they pull

dry by the

and por

or folding

ed in their

cung often

all of one

her kind

0505,200

op tar the

disofthe

the Ger-

Cebic in

Inhabi-

ad agrees

n of Fish

rer. The

witheir

on the

; well

ninh-

corer,

ponell

ruelty

eaken,

King

ach,

g Co

unts,

they

ı İt

3 SH310

profit almost of this Nation consists in Fish; and for the ethere are fought very great Battails at Sea amongst the Merchants of divers Nations; because Merchants (ayling to this Island onely to win profit do provide themselves, as if they were to fight tome cruel Battail: And, as if men were not sufficient Enemies, huge Beasts, like Monsters, come in great multitudes, and endanger the Sea-men, if they look not well to themselves. But amongst other Remedies, the founding of the Trumper gives some help; for these Beasts hearing the sound of it, and not being able to bear it, they sly all away to the bottome of the Sea, as I shall shew underneath of the Whirl-pool.

CHAP. IV.

Of the wonderful abundance of Mand Butter,

Moreover, in the same Island, or Iceland, there is found such plenty of Salt-Butter, by reason of the multitudes of Cattel, and sat Pasture, that their Veffels or Tuns will not fuffice to hold it, but they make Chells or Coffers of most sweet Wood, 30 or 40 foot long, and 4 or 5 foot high, which they fill yearly with Butter in many places, and keep to (pend at home, or to exchange abroad. For they frequently feed on broyled Fishes, imeered with this Butter, in place of Bread; whence also they are called Fish-eaters. But Coffers of this Butter to abounding are found in the Abbot-ship of Helgafiel, as they call it in their Language, which is founded on Butter, and dryed Fifth as being the belt Treature; as are also two Cathedral Churches Schalheldenfis, and Hollenfis, with many Manfion-hou es of many Noble-men, that have the like increase. That Nation, for Beer wieth Ale from other places, that is brought from the cities of Germany near the Sea, in thips. Moreover, there are in those Nations, Fountains, that yield as Iweet Waters, as Beer, that inflice all their Necessities for Drink, and talle well and pleasant. These Islanders are found, merry, and free-people, they live long without any Physick above one hundred years. They are easily provoked to War and they fight cruelly enough. Also they have all things ready for an Expedition with foot or horse, upon all occasions. COM STREET, STREET, STREET, SOURCE STORES

-many or a language and CHAP. V. The way to walk when beneficit

Of the horrible Monsters of the Coast of Norway.

There are monstrous fish on the Coasts or Sea of Norway, of unusual Names, though they are reputed a kind of Whales, who shew their cruelty at first fight, and make men afraid to fee them; and if men look long on them, they will fright and amaze them. Their Forms are horrible, their Heads tquare, all fet with prickles, and they have tharp and long Horns round about, like a Tree rooted up by the Roots: They are ten or twelve Cubits long, very black, and with huge eyes : the compais whereof is above eight or ten cubits : the Apple of the Eye is of one Cubit, and is red and fiery coloured, which in the dark night appears to Fisher-men afar off under Waters, as a burning fire, having hairs like Goofe-Feathers, thick and long, like a Beard hanging down; the rest of the body, for the greathers of the head, which is ignare, is very imall, not being above 14 or 15 Cubits long; one of these Sea-Monsters will drown easily many great ships provided with many flrong Marriners. The long and famous Epille of Ericus Falchenderf Arch Bilhop of the Church of Nidrofus, which is the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom of Norway, and it was sent to Lee the Tenth, about the Year of Grace, 1520, and this confirms this Brange Novelty : and, to this Epiftle, was faned the head of another Monfter, leafoned with Sale, Alle Man Andrews

CHAP.6.

iot I

di

Rib

abo

but.

Hea

they

dia :

tobe

DECO

Nois

byit

wher

NC.

His .

CHAP. VI.

Of the Whirl-Pool, and his cruelty against the Marriners.

HE Whirlpool, or Prifler, is of the kind of Whales, two hundred Cubits long, and is very cruel. For to the danger of Sea-men, he will sometimes raife himfelf beyond the Sail-yards, and casts such floods of Waters above his head, which he had sucked in, that with a Cloud of them, he will often fink the ftrongest ships, or expose the Marriners to extream danger. This Beast hath also a long and large round mouth, like a Lamprey, whereby he fucks in his meat or water, and by his weight call upon the Fore or Hinder-Deck, he finks and drowns a ship. Sometimes, not content to do hurt by water onely, as I said, he will cruelly overthrow the thip like any small Veffel, triking it with his back, or tail. He hath a thick black Skin all his body over, long Fins like to broad feet, and a forked Tail, 15 of 20 foot broad, wherewith he forcibly binds any parts of the ship, he twifts it abour, a Trumpet of War is the fit remedy against him, by reason of the sharp noise, which he cannot endure: and by casting out huge great Vessels, that hinders this Monsters passage, or for him to play with all: or with strong Canon and Guns, with the found whereof he is more frighted, than with a Stone or Iron Bullet ; because this Ball loseth its force, being hindered by his Fat, or by the Water, or wounds but a little his most vast body, that hath a Rampart of mighty far to defend it. Also, I must add, that on the Coasts of Norway, most frequently both old and new Monsters are teen, chiefly by reason of the inferutable depth of the Waters. Moreover, in the deep Sea, there are many kinds of fishes, that seldome or never are seen by men.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Fight of the Whale against the Orca.

A whale is a very great fish about one hundred or three hundred foot long, and the body is of a vast magnitude; yet the Orea, which is smaller in quantity, but more nimble to affault, and cruel to come on, is his deadly Enemy. An Orea is like, a Hull turned inside outward; a Beast with sierce Teeth, with which, as with the Stern of a Ship, he rends the Whales Guts, and tears his Calves body, or he quickly runs and drives him up and down with his prickly back, that he makes him run to Fords, and Shores. But the Whale that cannot turn its huge body, not knowing how to resist the wily Orea, puts all its hopes in flight; yet that flight is weak, because this sluggish Beast, burdned with its own weight, wants one to guide her, to fly to the Foords to escape the dangers.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the many kinds of Whales.

The Acre is 240 foot long, and 120 broad: some are sinooth-skinned, and those are smaller, and are taken in the West and Northern Sea; some have their Jaws long and full of Teeth, namely 12 or 14 foot long, and the Teeth are 6 or 8, or 12 foot long. But their two Dog-Teeth, or Tushes, are longer than the rest, underneath like a Horn, like the Teeth of Bores, or Elephants. This kind of Whale hath a fir mouth to eat: and his eyes are so large, that 15 men may six in the room of each of them, and sometimes 20.01 more, as the Beast is in quantity.

His Horns are 6 or 7 foot long, and he hath 250 upon each eye, as hard as Horn, that he can flir sliff or gentle, either beiore, or behind. These grow together, to defend his eyes in tempestuous Weather, or when any other Beast that is his Enemy fees upon him; nor is it a wonder, that he hath so many Horn; though they be very troublesome to him; when as, between his eyes, the space of his Fore-head is 15 or 20 foot. But how great and long his Ribs are, or Bones, and for what use his Skin kept might serve, also his flesh and fat, I shall shew underneath.

CHAP. IX.

Of a monstrous Fish found on the North shore of England, Anno 1532.

Though this strange Beast was held for a Wonder by the people of that Countrey, and looked on with affonishment, by reason of its unusual magnitude; yet the Norway Coasts, between the mouths of Berg and Nidrofum, have fuch a Beaft as a constant Guest. Wherefore this is placed amongst the greater fishes of the Sea, by that Relation, as it is described by a certain Noble-Englishman in this form. In the Moneth of August, 1532, our Seas call upon the shore at Tinmouth a dead Beaft, of a vaft magnitude, which is now the greatest part wafled; yet there remains fill as much of it, as about one hundred great Waggons can draw. They that first faw this Beast, say it was about thirty Ells long, that is 90 foot, from the belly to the back-bone, as it lay in the Sands, it was about 8 or o Ells; but the certain measure is not set down. I came thither the 27 of August, when this Beast stank, that we could scarce endure it : Some conjecture that his back was three Ells under the Sand, because it is continually wasted and covered with floods of Sand. His wide Chaps were fix Ells long and a half; his Mandible contained seven Ells and half, in some places they were an Ell and half about, in some places lesse, and were as great as an Oke. He had 30 Ribs on his fides; for the most of them 21 foot long a piece, a foot and half about; it had three bellies like vast Caves, and 30 throats, whereof five were very great. It had two Fins, and each was 15 foot long, ten Oxen could learce draw one of them away. There grew to his Palate, Plates of Horn; on one fide hairy, whereof here you fee one above a thoufand, It is none of Polydorus's Tales, but a certain truth though they be not all of one magnitude. The length of the Head, from the Crown to the Chaps, was feven Ells: Concerning the Tongue, they differ ; the most say it was 7 Ells long. They say his Genital-members was of a prodigious magnitude. When a certain man rended off his share, he was like to be drowned, talling into the belly of the Beait, unless he had catche hold of one of his Ribs to support himself. The space between were 6 Ells, His Eyes and Notirils were like to an Oxes, and were far too small for so great a body. His tail was forked and Saw-like, 7 Ells broad. In his head he had two great holes, wherby it is supposed this Monster cast up Water, as by Spouts. Lastly, he had no Teeth, whence we collect, it was no Whale. For they fay, that Whales have huge Teeth, excepting some plates of horny-substance, that were in the mouth of this Creature.

and theit 6 ot relly

nels:

red Cobice

omerines above his

en fink the hath aliga

is ment of

ed deawns èmilien-

stail, He

2 for-

the thing

realon of

it Veffels.

th lizone

14 Stone

III- OC DA

impara of

9+ molt

inferma-

kinds of

e long

n quan-

ny. An

which, s body,

hat he

nd ot ficin

mty.

CHAP. X.

Of the Sword-fish, Unicon n, and Saw-fish.

Because this Beast is conversant in the Northern Waters, it is deservedly to be joyned with other monthrous Creatures. The Sword fish is like no other but in something it is like a Whale. He hath as ugly a head as an Owl: His mouth is wondrous deep, as a valt pit, whereby he terrifies and dri es away thole that look into it. His Eyes are horrible, his Back Wedge-fashion, or elevated like a (word; his Snour is pointed. Thele often enter upon the Northern Coaffs, as Thieves, and hurtful Guells that are always doing mischief to ships they meet, by boaring holes in them, and finking them. The Unicorn is a Sea-Beaft, having in his Fore-head a very great Horn, wherewith he can penetrate and deliroy the ships in his way, and crown multitudes of men. But di ine goodnesse hath provided for the fafery of Marriners herein; for though he be a very fierce Creature, yet is he very flow, that such as fear his coming may fly from him. The Sawfish is also a beast of the Sea; the body is buge great; the head hath a crest, and is hard, and dented like to a Saw: It will fwim under flrips, and cut them, that the Water may come in, and he may feed on the men when the (hip is drown'd. There is also another fort of Saw-fishes that rifeth against Marriners, that pre-Sently after 30 or 40 Furlongs is weary, and goes down into the Sea. The Seamen are often wounded with the fword of the Orea, which flicks upon his back, that they die of it: So by touching the Torpedo, their hand is drawn back flupi-

CHAP. XI.

Of the manner of fishing for Whales.

Because the Whale falls greedily to ear the Herring, and Sea-Calves, as Fish latter than all others; therefore is he often in danger on the Sandy Rocks, that by the ebbing and flowing back of the Waters, are often left naked without Waters; & this Beaft funk into them; can find no way out that he might return to the next deep Water: and therefore he works to forcibly with his ffrong Tail, that he makes a large Dirch, and is bound up as in a Neft, the fand flopping him on all fides, that he cannot fwim away. When Fisher-men know this, they run in Troops, and bind this Creature with frong Cords and Anchors, between his Chops and Gills, that he may not get off when the Sea comes in; and with a firong hand, and many together, they draw him to the Land, or bind him fosthat by no force he can be able to return to the Waters. And upon such a chance, they all joyfully divide the prey and every one returns prejently to his Houshold occafions, until the like, or more fortunate prize come again. And in Tempelts it happens, that some huge Beast, either wounded or nited by his Foe, or having holf all his might, is cast on the shore by force, or the Wines, as a prey for those that can lay hold of him. But when they doubt that he may revive again, they throft in fwords or huge great and tharp pikes into his fides, as he lies till; that much blood running forth by the fwords motion, he may die. Also it may fall out, and that more easily, that they may bind this Beast with Cords and Anchors, whilest he lies in the Sand very fast asleep, the Sun shining upon him, and so he may be made a prey.

the second restriction of the system of the second restriction of the system of the sy

TIX NOO

ictrediy to

e no other

wi: His

away thois

it eletated

im Coults.

ney meet,

all having

tellog the

inelle inth

.The Saw-

em, that

drowed.

that pre-The Sea-

tis back,

ack Hupi-

Fib

Rocks

without

or minister

Tailghat him on

y cun in

WILD 2

fo-that

eld oc

mpelis

having

ribote

B. they

1 that

tions,

fohe

CHAP. XII.

Of the wonderful affection of the Whales towards their Toung.

When a Temped is coming; and after the Temped, they vomit them up. When for want of water, the young are hindred, that they cannot follow their Dams, the Dams take water in their mouths, and cast it to them like a River, that she may so free them from the Land they are fast upon. Also she accompanies them long, when they are grown up: But they quickly grow up, and increase ten years.

CHAP, XIII.

Of Sperma-Ceti, which is called Amber-Greece, and the Medicaments thereof.

THE Whale copulating after the manner of men with the Female, by reason of the velocity of coition, he ejects much Sperm, and dissolves it; and when it is so dissolved, the Matrix doth not receive it all. It is scattered wide on the Sea, in divers figures, of a blew colour, but more tending to white; and these are glew'd together: and this is carefully collected by Marriners, as I observed, when in my Navigation I saw it scattered here and there: This they sell to Physicians, to purge it; and when it is purged, they call it Amber-Greece, and they use it against the Dropsie and Palsie, as a principal and most pretious unguent: It is white; and if it be found, that is of the colour of Gyp, it is the better. It is sophistiated with the powder of Lignum-Aloes, Styrax-Musk, and some other things. But this is discovered because that which is sophisticated, will easily become soft as Wax, but pure Amber-greece will never melt so, It hath a corroborating sorce, and is good against swoundings, and the Epilepsie.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the use of the parts of Whales.

W Hales, Hees or Shees, drawn out of the Sea by the Fisher-mans Art, or brought in by the force of Tempetts, or driven on the shore by the fury of fome other Creatures, are divided by the Inhabitants, with Axes and Hewing-Tools for a prey, o that of the flesh of one Whale, Fat & Bones, 250 or 300 Waggons may be loaded. They falt up the Flesh and Fat, in many great Vessels, amongst the rest of the huge Sea-fish; and they use these for their commodity, and Houshold-food, and they sell it to others for the same use, to be carried into semote parts of the World. The Fat of the Whale is very much in all the body, but chiefly in the head, about the marrow of the brain: fo that fometimes 12 Flagons are taken out thence, whereof a man can hardly carry one, and tometimes 30 or 40 Flagons full of this Far, (and each of these is greater than a Roman Barile) that can hardly be carried by so many strong men. The profit of this Fat is, that powred into Lamps, and always augmented, it will burn continually before the Altar, and other facted places, both night and day : allo it much ferves for domestique use in private, fince in the Winter there is no day at all. Moreover, the leffer bones of the Whale are burnt instead of wood in their houfes ; as are the heads of other fish. Lastly of the Whales Skin, they make Belts, G 2 2 Bags,

Bags, Ropes, to draw Bells, that will last long: Also when the Skin of one Whale is parted, 40 men may be cloathed with it. The Sea-men chiefly use the Fat of it to smeer the planks of their skips without side, that in the most rigid and sharp Winter, the Ice may not stick to the ship to drown it, or freeze about it, for this hinders the freezing of the Waters. Also Carters find great need of it to smeer their Wheels; and Skinners or Tanners, as I said before concerning the Fat of Sea-Calves.

CHAP. XV.

Of Buildings of Whale-Bones.

Aving spoken, that the bodies of Whales are very large, for their head, teeth, eyes, mouth, skin, the bones require a place to be described; and it is thus: Because the vehemency of Gold in the farther parts of the North, and horrid Tempests there, will hardly suffer Trees to grow up tall, whereof necessary houses may be builded: Therefore provident Nature hath provided for the Inhabitants, that they may build their houses of the most vast Ribs of Sea-Creatures, and other things belonging thereunto. For these Monsters of the Sea, being driven to Land either by some others that are their knemies, or drawn forth by the frequent sishing for them by men, that the Inhabitants there may make their prey of them, or whether they die and consume. It is certain, that they leave such vast bones behind them, that whole Mansson-houses may be made or them, for Walls, Gates, Windows, Coverings, Seats, and for Tables also. For these Ribs are 20, or 30, or more feet in length. Moreover, the Back-bones, and Whirl-bones, and the Forked-bones of the vast head, are of no small bigness: and all these by the Industry of Arrists, are so sitted with Saws and Files, that the Carpenter in Wood, joyn'd together with Iron, can make nothing more complear.

CHAP. XVI.

Of their houses, by raising up whole Ribs.

When therefore the flesh of this most huge Beast is eat and dissolved, onely his bones remain like a great Keel; and when these are purged by
Rain, and the Ayr, they raise them up like a house, by the force of men that are
called unto it: Then by the industry of the Matter-Builder; Windows being
placed on the top of the house, or sides of the Whale, it is divided into many convenient Habitations: and gates are made of the same Beasts Skin, that is taken
off long before for that and some other use, and is hardned by the sharpness of
the Winds. Also a part within this Keel raised up like a house, they make several Hog-sties, and places for other Creatures, as the sashion is in other houses of
Wood: leaving always under the top of this Structure, a place for Cocks, that
serve instead of Clocks; that men may be raised to their labour in the night,
which is there continual in the Winter-time. They that sleep between these
Ribs, see no other Dreams, than as if they were always toiling in the Sea-waves,
or were in danger of Tempests to suffer shipwrack.

The part of the property of the property of the surface of the part of t

CHAP, XVII.

tie!

ind thurs

to fracts

ad, teeth,

Inthu:

nd bottid

ary boo-

Inhahi-

tites and

eine di-

th by the

are foch

era, for

Ribs are I-banes

thele by

hat are being

y contaken

res at

lest-

its of

CHAP. XVII.

Of Anchors fast ned upon the Whales back.

THE Whale bath upon his Skin a Superficies, like the gravel that is by the Sea-fide: fo that oft-times, when he raitern his back above the waters, Saylors take it to be nothing elie but an Island and tayl unto it, and go down upon it, and they strike in piles unto it, and falten them to their ships: they kindle fires to boyl their meat: until at length the Whale teeling the fire, dives down so the bottome; and such as are upon his back, unless they can save themselves by ropes thrown forth of the ship, are drown'd. This Whale, as I said before of the Whirpool and Prittes, tometimes so believe hout the waves he hath taken in, that with a Cloud of Waters, oft-times, he will drown the ship: and when a Tempest ariseth at Sea be will rite above water, that he will sink the ships, during these Commotions and Tempests. Sometimes he brings up Sand on his back, upon which, when a Tempest comes, the Marriners are glad that they have found Land, cast anchor, and are secure on a faste ground; and when as they kindle their fires, the Whale, so soon as he perceives it, he sinks down suddenly into the depth, and draws both men and ships after him, unless the Anchors breaks.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the monstrous Hog of the German Ocean.

I Spake before of a monstrous Fish sound on the shores of England, with a clear description of his whole body, and every member thereof, which was seen there in the year 1532, and the Inhabitants made a prey of it. Now I shall revive the memory of that monstrous Hog that was found asterwards, Anno 1537, in the same German Ocean, and it was a Monsier in every part of it. For it had a Hogs head, and a quarter of a Circle, like the Moon, in the hinder part of its head; four feet like a Dragons, two eyes on both sides in his Loyns, and a third in his belly, inclining towards his Navel; behind he had a Forked-Tail, like to other Fish commonly.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Rolmarus or Norway Morfus.

THE Normay Coast, toward the more Northern parts, hath huge great Fifth as big as Elephants, which are called Morfi, or Rofmari, may be they are to from their sharp biting; for it they fee any man on the Sea-shore, and can catch him, they come suddenly upon him, and rend him with their Teeth, that they will kill him in a trice. Therefore, these Fish called Rofmari, or Morsi, have heads tall ioned like to an Oxes, and a hairy Skin, and hair growing as thick as firaw or corn-reeds, that lye loofe very largely. They will raife themselves with their Teeth as by Ladders to the very tops of Rocks, that they may feed on the Dewie Graffe, or fresh Water, and role themselves in it, and then go to the Sea again, unless in the mean while they tall very fall affeep, and rest upon the Rocks, for then Fisher-men make all the haste they can, and begin at the Tail, and part the Skin from the Fat; and into this that is parted, they put most firong Cords, and fallen them on the sugged Rocks, or Trees, that are near; then they throw stones at his head, out of a Sling, to raile him, and they compel him to descend, spoiled, or the greatest part of his Skin which is fastened to the Ropes: he being thereby debilitated, tearinl, and halt dead, he is made a rich prey, especially for

his Teeth, that are very pretious amongst the Scythians, the Moscovies, Russians, and Tartars, (as Ivory amongst the Indians) by reason of its hardness, whiteness, and ponderousnesse. For which cause, by excellent industry of Artificers, they are made fit for handles for Javelins: And this is also testified by Mechovita, an Historian of Poland, in his double Sarmatia, and Paulus Jovius after him, relates it by the Relation of one Demetrius, that was sent from the great Duke of Moscovy, to Pope Cloment the 7th.

CHAP, XX.

Of Winged Fish.

THere is found a Fish in the German Sea, between England and Normay, which hath two feet, and four wings, and the e move flopping to his breatt and lower part of his belly, as the wings of other Birds do. They are two before about his Gills, and two behind before his Tail, and thele are Parchment Wings, very thick near the body, in that part which stands in lead of an arm, and more thin, in the upper part of the Wing; and to it is with the hinder Wings. The gils of this fish have not a cleft that goes toward the belly or breat, but these fish have gils that terminate above the shoulders of the former wings, with four fquare holes, two of them are nearer to the head and two to the right wing; and in like manner are the gils on the left fide disposed of. But the head of this fish, colour, Skin, figure of his body, and tast of his sless, is like that sish we call a Ray, His legs are griftles withour joynts, and under his feet he hath holes, that he may take the better hold. But his Tail is not like the Ray, but like to the Tail of other fishes onely that it is something longer. Lastly, before the Tail, on that part of his back, where the folid part of his body is fallned, which is after the hollow of his belly, he hath a fin also as other fish have, yet very large, in respect of his body. This fish is taken between the Rays and the Skates, and most commonly is little worth, because of his lean flesh, and no far almost at all : yet he is hardly pulled from the bottome with Hook and Line, because of the refiftance he makes with his wings, &c. Moreover lome fifth have very long bodies, which have four wings, two on the belly, and two on the back: and these fins they use are ealled wings; and fuch have those fish called the Sea-Hares like to them in all; for these have two fins on their bellies, and two right above them on their fide toward their back. There is also of the forts aforelaid one called a Ludo-Lutra, that is a Sea-beaft, which hath four wings two on the face, two on the back, and with these he is carried exceeding swiftly to what place he will.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Polypus.

On the Coasts of Norway there is a Polypus, or Creature with many seet, which hath a pipe on his back, whereby he puts to Sea, and he moves that sometimes to the right side, sometimes to the lest. Moreover, with his Legs as it were by hollow places, dispersed here and there, and by his Toothed Nippers, he faltneth on every living Creature that comes near to him, that wants blood. Whatever he eats, he heaps up in the holes where he resides: Then he casts out the Skins, having eaten the sless, and hunts after fishes that swim to them: Also he casts out the shels, and hard out-sides of Crabs that remain. He changeth his colour by the colour of the stone he slicks unto, especially when he is frighted at the sight of his Enemy, the Conger. He hath 4 great middle seet, and in all 8; a little body, which the great seet make amends for. He hath also some small seet that are shadowed, and can scarce be perceived. By these he sures.

Anguni, whiteness, tets, they declared,

him, re-

5, which

bress and

Wo belose

I Wiles

nd more

St. The

but their

with foor

ng; and

hih,co-

Eag. His

t be may

e Tail of

on that

the bol-

ped of

off com-

yer he is ince he ch have tile are

int all: sent fide

·Lun.

k, and

feet,

sthat is Los No-

sep be pa mis n. He

en he

e tees

halo helu-Balas.

frains, moves, and defends himfelf, and takes hold of what is from him: and he lies on his back upon the flones, that he can learce be gotten off, unleffe you put fome finking imell to him. CHAP. XXII.

Of the cruelty of some Fish and the kindness of others.

There is a fish of the kind of Sea-Dog-fish, called Boloma, in Italian, and in Norway, Haafisck, that will let upon a man (wimming in the Salt-Waters, fo greecily, in Troops, unawares, but he will link a man to the bottome, not onely by his biting but also by his weight ; and he will eat his more tender parts, as his Noticils, Fingers, Privities, until fuch time as the Ray come to reveng thele injuries, which runs thorow the Waters armed with her natural fins & with iome violence drives away these fish that set upon the drown'd man, and doth what he can to urge him to fwim out. And he also keeps the man, until such time as his spirit being quite gone; and after some days, as the Sea naturally purgeth it self, he is cast up. This miserable spectacle is seen on the Coasts of Norway, when men to wash themselves, namely strangers and Marriners, that are ignorant of the dangers, leap out of their ships into the Sea. For there Dog hishor Boloma lie hid under the thips riding at Anchor, as Water-Rams, that they may catch men, their malicious Natures flirring them to it. But the Urinators avoid this danger with tharp files tyed by lines; for with there, they kill there Sea-Rains, and Dog-fish : and unlesse they be stricken through with theie, they will learce retrear. So cruel a fight is fought with them under water. For these Creatures cover for a mans privities, and his heel, and all parts that look white. The 5kin of this Dog-fish, for the roughnesse of it to polish wood and bones, is of the same nature with a Rays Skin. this body of the rith review a brown or Have but

CHAP. XXIII.

Sponges are much multiplyed near the Coasts of Norway; the nature of it is, Sthat it agrees with other living Creatures in the way of contracting, and dilating it felt : Yet some of them are immovable from rocks, and if they be broken off at the Roots, they grow again: some are movable from place to place; and there are found in huge plenty on the foresaid shores. They are fed with mud, small fish, and Oysters. When they are alive, they are black, as they are when they are wer. They slick neither by parts, nor altogether; for there are some empty hollow places, between four or five, whereby they are thought to feed. There are others, but they are grown together above, and it is known, that there are some membranes under their bottoms, It is apparent, that they live along time. Sometimes to energist him a return to the type of the type of the first him links in the formation of the first him links in the first of the first him to the

Changeth has colour bitein coloured enteriorettes best alle and miscoloured of

and to alk? a little body, which the great feet make amends for

is his since it the best of the Enemy, the Congress and marries that waster Prices.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of very long Worms.

A Life there is on the Coasts of Normay, a Worm of a blew and gray colour, that is above 40 Cubits long, yet is hardly to thick as the arm of a child. He goes forward in the Sea like a Line, that he can hardly be perceived how he goes; he hurts no man, unless he be crushed in a mans hand: for by the touch of his most render Skin, the fingers of one that touchesh him will swell. When he is vexed and tormented by Crabs, he twines himself about hoping to get away, but cannot. For the Crab with his Claws, as with Toothed Pincers, takes so fast hold at him, that he is held as fast, as a ship is by an Anchor. I oft saw this Worm, but touched it nor, being fore-warned by the Marriners.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Fish which the Norway people call Swamfilck; and of some other Sea-Monsters.

"HE variety of these Fish, or rather Monsters, is here set down, because of their admirable form, and many properties of Nature, as they often come to the Norway shores amongst other Creatures, and they are catcht for their Fat, which they have in great plenty and abundance. For the Fisher-men purge ir, by boyling it like fl fh on the fire, and they fell it to annoint Leather, or for Oyl to burn in Lamps, to continue light, when it is perpetual darkness: Wherefore the first Monster that comes, is of a round form, in Norway, called Swamfifek, the greatest glutton of all other Sea-Montters. For he is scarce satisfied, though he ear continually. He is taid to have no diffinet flomach: and to what he ears, turns into the thickness of his body, that he appears nothing else than one Lump of conjoyned Fat. He dilates and extends himfelf beyond measure, and when he can be extended no more, he easily casts out fishes by his mouth, because he wants a neck, as other fishes do. His mouth and belly are continued one to the other. But this Creature is to thick that when there is danger he can, (like the Hedg-Hog) re-double his flesh, far, and skin, and contract and cover himself : nor doth he that but to his own loss, because searing Beasts that are his Enemies, he will not open himfelt, when he is oppressed with hunger, but lives by feeding on his own flesh, choosing rather to be consumed in part by himself, than to be totally devoured by Wild-Bealts. If the danger be pat, he will fire to fave himfelf. There is also another Sea-Monster, called Sakab which hath small feet in respect of its great body, but he hath one long one, which he weth in place of a hand to defend all his parts; and with that he puts meat into his mouth, and digs up grals. His feet are almost grifily, and made like the feet of a Cow or Calf. This Creature (wimming in the Water breathes, and when he lends forth his breath, it returns into the Ayr, and he calls Water aloft, as Dolphins and Whales do. There is also another Monsier like to that called Cirches, which hath a crusty and soft Skin, partly black, partly red, and hath two cloven places in his foot, that ferve for to make three Toes. The right foot of this Animal is very small, but the left is great and long; and therefore when he walks, all his body leans on the left fide, and he draws his right foot after him: When the Ayr is calm he walketh, but when the Wind is high, and the Sky cloudy, he applies himfelf to the Rocks, and rests unmoved and sticks fast, that he can scarce be pulled off. The Nature of this is wonderful enough, which in calm Weather is found; but in flormy Weather is fick.

tologe,

是作

he goes;

ch or his

enheis

may, but

hit hold

Old Park

confe of

ometo

wir Far,

odrye ir.

IOF OVE

crefore

ok the

ough he he eats,

Lump

when wele

elothe

ike the

on: ile ies, be

ingen

total-

mfelf.

respect

end to

四 即

This

M.du.

Their

ndiof

e ferre

at the

on the

Meth,

Rocks

nte at Wet-

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Cow, Calf &c.

HE Sea-Cow is a huge Monfter, firong, angry, and injurious; the brings forth a young one like to her felf; yet not above two, but one often, which the loves very much, and leads it about carefully with her, whither toever the swims to Seasor goes on Land. She is great ten moneths. Lastly, this Creature is known to have lived 130 years, by cutting off her Tail. The Sea-Calf, in the former Chapters, was described in part; but I shall add this one thing to its story, that amongst all Sea-Monsters, none devours Herrings more; for he will come to the Net where the Herring is caught by the Gills, or other parts of her body, and will eat one after another, that he will leave but a few hanging there. The Sea-horie, between Britany and Norway, is oft feen to have a head like a horie, and to neigh; but his feet and hoof are cloven like to a Cows; and he feeds both in the Sea, and on Land. He is feldome taken, though he grow to be as big as an Ox. He hath a forked Tail like a fish. The Sea-Mouse makes a hole in the Earth, and lays her eggs there, and then covers them with Earth, on the 30 day she digs it open again, and brings her young to the Sea, first blind, and afterwards he comes to lee. The Sea-Hare is found to be of divers kinds in the Ocean, but lo toon as he is caught onely, because he is suspected to be venemous, how like socver he is to a Hare, he is let loofe again. He hath four Fins behind his head; two whole motion is all the length of the fith and they are long, like to a Hares ears a and two again, whose motion is from the back, to the depth of the fishes belly, wherewith he raileth up the weight of his head. This Hare is formidable in the Sea; on Land he is found to be as timerous and fearful as a Hare.

CHAP, XXVII

Of the greatness of the Norway, Serpent and of others.

Hey who in Works of Navigation, on the Couffs of Norway, employ themlelves in fishing or Merchandile, do all agree in this strange story, that there is a Serpenuthere which is of a past magnitude, namely 200 foot long, and moreover 20 foot thick; and is wont to live in Rocks and Caves roward the Sea-coast about Berge: which will go alone from his holes in a clear night, in Summer, and devour Calves, Lambs, and Hogs, or elle he goes into the Sea to feed on Polypus, Locusts, and all forts of Sea-Crabs. He hath commonly hair hanging from his neck a Gubit long, and thatp Scales, and is black, and he hath flaming thining eys. This Snake disquiets the Shippers; and he puts up his head on high like a pillar, and carcheth away men, and he devours them; and this happerh not, but it fignifies some wonderful change of the Kingdom near at hand; namely that the Princes shall die, or be banished; or some Tumustuous Wars shall presently follow. There is also another Serpent of an incredible magnitude in a Town, called Moos, or the Dioceis of Hammer; which, as a Comet portends a change in all the World, fo, that portends a change in the Kingdom of Norway, as it was feen, Anno 1522, that lifts himfelt high above the Waters, and rouls himfelt round like a sphere. This Serpent was thought to be fifty Cubits long by conjecture, by fight afar off; there followed this the banishment of King Christierms, and 2 great perfecution of the Bishops; and it shew'd also the destruction of the Coun-Separate lye in himow Rocke or I were any he evidence, and theep infless keeping broad to break some rebey eachers, you can be not an enward they one up

their feathers and wifigs again. Luffy, if they can get it, they delok milk and wine,

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the diversity, and divers colours of Serpents.

Any think that Serpents inhabit onely in hot Countries, because of the im-Vabred Cold that is bred in those Creatures, because in hear they multiply more, and sooner come to their growth : Yet the truth is, that cold Climate in the North hath in it, and breeds, many of the filthiest Serpents, though their Venome be weaker naturally, than they are in Africa; However this Contest may be,it is certain, that there are many and most dangerous Serpents in the cold Northern Climate; namely Land-Serpents, which fierce y tollow the Water-Serpents, and these live upon Land; and feed greedily on cavers Nutriments of small Herbs, wherein they know there is a greater venomed force contained, especially such as grow in Mountainy places: and these are worse to hurt men, than those that live on Banks, and shores of the Sea. Hungry Serpents are more cruel than tuch as are full ; so also are such as are angry and provoked. They are diffinguished by divers colours, as black, ash-colour, landy, white, red, various, changeable : And laftly, with spots. The Remedies that the Northern people we against stinging of Serpents, are Venice-Treacle, which is wont to be reputed for the best before the other kinds; and it is brought into those Countreys by forraign Merchants, in great quantity, for to win profit. Black-coloured Serpents, partly live on Land, partly under Toad-ficols, that are in the Lakes, (in Gothland they call them Tworr) and partly in hard Rocks, hard by the Waters. Thele Serpents are a kind of Water-Snakes, and are dangerous: amongst which also, a Water-Serpent, called Berm, is concluded, which is subtile, dangerous, and deadly. Serpents that live in Rocks are commonly black; and these they call in the Vulgar Tonguethey use, Snock, though there be many found there that are divers, and in great multitudes. These are not a little trouble to men that live in Rocks, especially in Summer : for they will kill men with their venome frequently. There are also many forts of Lizards living in Caves and Holes, they are not fo hurtful as Serpents ; yet we must take heed of them. The Shrew-Serpent is two-fold in shape: The one detains the beholders by its admirable beauty, it is flow and imall, and of a fiery venome : fo that he whom he hurts, shall prefently die of it : in Gothland they call it Slaa ; Ti is calls his Skin in the most cold Winter, as the supitying Aip doth, that changeth her Skin. This also, like other Serpents that lye hid in Winter, gets into the bowels of the Earth, namely from the time the Sun enters Libra till he be gone past Aries; In which time, if, allured by the Sun, he come forth of his Hold, and it ay too long, delighting himfelf in this unleasonable heat, he is left, and dies, by reason of the Cold and Frost that freezeth up his Hole, as I faid before of Swallows. Another Serpent is called Amphishana because it hath two heads, one in its proper place; another in the Tailsrunning from both heads with a circular drawing of his body. This Serpent onely commits himfelf to the Cold, and comes forth before all the reft,

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Habitation and Mansion for Serpents.

IT is seen, though but seldom in the Northern parts, a strange spectacle, how Serpents will rest deep under the Roots of Birch-trees, and the multitudes of them cau'e heat in the Roots with their breath; that the leaves of this Tree will continue always green so long as Winter lasts. Wherefore the people not knowing Natures secrets, think this an holy Tree, as consecrated to some great Diety. Yet Serpents lye in hollow Rocks or Trees all the Winter, and sleep instead of eating, but in Summer they eat sless, and birds; and asterwards they spue up their seathers and wings again, Lastly, if they can get it, they drink milk and wine, or else a little water.

TRX soos

cethe in-

Climate in beheir Ve-

Societ may

athecold

K Water-

MEETES OF

ontained.

out men,

are more

They are

d, various,

In people

e reputed

ys by for-

Serpents.

Getbland

hele Set-

ind deadry call in

that are

u live in

ome fre-

theyare

Serpent

tauty, it

prefeat-

toff cold

se other

ely from

If, all II-

nielt in

वर्धी क्षेत्र

called

in the

erpetit

wSer-

chem d conowing y. Yet of eat-

CHAP. XXX.

Of the fighting of the Shepheards against Sergents.

Here are also Vipers in the Northern parts, with a rough Skin, hard and dry, and ash-coloured, with sparkling eyes, and 3 or 4 Cubits long, that will kill men with the sharpnesse of their Venome in 4 hours time, unlesse it be stopt in time with fit Remedies, as with Venice-Treacle or Garlick drank with Ale, or the juyce of the Ash crushed forth and drank, or with Bran laid on for a Cataplaime. Shepherds u'e these Remedies to keep themselves saie; but they use their Treacle for their sheep to annoine round about the Tumour. For these Serpents will raise themselves on their breasts, and go half a Cubit high, and will spit forth their venom in great quantity, and of divers colours, that they collect in their throats, against a man that relists and comes against them: and then they will quickly run away into their holes, and under Rones. I can prove this to be true by my own example, because above 50 years fince, that accident besel me in the fields at Arros, whillt, as other Schollars did, in the middle of August, I was gathering Juniper-berries, which are then the first that are ripe in the North. There are also fome Serpents, who with a fecret or wheeling motion move iwiftly, and wil leap ten foot, and fight, befides making a most vehement noise amongst the dry graffe, which the Sun hath withered. But by the bounty of Nature it is that they are difcovered by their found when they run to do hurt. The venome that they spic forth on the garments of him they meet, is of divers colours, as it runs down, and when the Snake hath been so bold, as to spit her venome at a man, she will appear no more. There are also House-Serpents, that are accounted in the farthest Northern parts to be as Houshold-gods, and are fed with sheep or Cows milk, and play with the children in the houses, and are oft-times found to sleep with them in their Cradles, like faithful Keepers; and to hurt them, they count it a deadly fin. But these Customs are but the Reliques of the old Superstition, and are forbidden fince the time of the reception of the Catholick Faith. But if by Lightning or Fire at home, these houses chance to be burnt down, or when the plague spreads, are emptied of the Inhabitants, the Serpents will remain in the Dens of the house burnt, and lye close together in such great heaps, that the next Inhabitant is in a great distress how he may live safely amongst them. Also innumerable Serpens are feen under Okes at the beginning of Summer, following their Caprain, who wears a white Creft, like to a Crown, as Bees do their King, As the Antients say, they are supposed by their breath to produce a stone, that comes from fome venomous part found between the leaves where they lye, or brought forth there by them.

Hh 2

ebeli teachers and wines again. Laftly-rebeyon to more continue and wines

CHAP, XXXI

wice,

HAP.

TAHP.

CHAP, XXXI,

Of the Fish called Thrista, that was lately also found in Prussia.

Since the Italians are persuaded, even to this day, that they onely enjoy the delights of that fish which men commonly call Thrissa; and the Grecians of our time call it corruptly Phrissam: the Romans call it Laccia: some think it to be the Clapea because the Venerians call that kind of fish Chiepa: Also such fish is reported to have been taken in great multitudes this year in Prussia, about the new Seasas they call it, in that place where it exonerates it sell into the Baltick seasor Codanus, according to the Celter, namely about the Callles of Balge & Lock steads, that belong to the Duke of Prussia: For of those fish which the Prussians call Porpel, (a name never known before) a certain Fisher-man catche 600 and 12000 or which is the same 60 times (as they say) 1800 in the month of May, in 14 days, besides other fish, of which also there was no small number. Wherefore stally must not longer boast of this, as given onely to them by God, when as by he goodness of God, the very same kind is to be found in other parts also.

The End of the one and Twentieth Book.

there poor a base Managhall read and the best with this pad a room and

in trains Cave me are burthe Asiques of the Aburetii feet, and are

are a property of the property of the second of the property o

Said with tory in 17, Saw day outle Processes, which are called

The state of the s

ble ver termine Toyak Abone montamon i thad your

Olaus

1W2

Den Ich the Book XXX

Crements the chink is to focis fifth

about the

gen Lack Maericali má 12000 7, m14 Wherefore

hen as by



Olaus Magnus, the Goth,

Arch-Bishop of UP SAL:

OF

Insects, Living-Creatures.

An Epitome of the Two and Twentieth Book.

CHAP. I.

Of the most troublesome Gnats of the farthest Northern parts.

Here is a great trouble with very great Gnats, toward the utmost North-lands and Waters, especially for their biting, and most tedious noise, when men must sleep in the Light that shines night and day. But to avoid the trouble of these, the Northern people ale Wormwood, sleept in Vinegar, and burnt and smoakt, that when they perceive that strong smell, they may sly away. Also they will likewise depart, when a mans head is sprinkled, and all his body, with the decoction of Wormwood, or of Rue, or Nigella, when they can be procured. Or with Vitriol mingled with Juniper, burnt and made a smoak of. But when men sleep, it is necessary to make themselves a Covering of some Linnen-cloth, or some Bark of a Tree; under which, as under a safe guard, one may rest quiet against the injury of the Gnats; and that there may be no place left for those loud Insects to creep in at, less those that sleep should be troubled with a double mischief, namely their slinging and tedious noise.

CHAP. II.

Of the Remedy to drive away Gnats and Wig-lice,

Oreover, that the Cattle at Passure may be free from being troubled with Gnats and Flies, the shepherds are wont every where to ter Juniper bushes on fire by the Roots, which are abundant, both in fields and woods, or else Pinetrees, where their Cattle seed: likewise tweet Bull-rushes, and dry Roots of the Herb Serpentaria, because by the smoak of all these, they are strangely driven away. Then to drive away Gnats and Woodlice out of their houses, they make a sume with very small Saw dust of the Pinetree, which are collected in great

mul-

multitudes whileft it is lawed; or with Nigella; also with the dry Myrtle, and Brimttone, and Bdellium or with the tinking Thorn, and with Cow-dung. Allo, to drive away the same mischief, sprinkle the house with the decoction of the Root of Lupius, or of Nigella, or Wormwood or Rue. The Itrong fmell or Red-Skins, which the Germans call Renfeb-Leder, doth wonderfully drive away Wig-Lice, and these are carried from Aduscovia, through Bulgaria, to Italy and Rome, to be fold : fo Quick-Lime, with Brimttone, kills them. Moreover, Wig-Lice are killed with a mixture made of Oyl, Quick-filver, Salt, Vinegar, and a bitter Apple; and these are pounded together, and boyled, and are pur twice or thrice into the chinks of the beds : but the most plain and frequent way, is to destroy them with scalding water, which penetrates more inwardly, and deliroys the very seed of these hurtful Worms, But that Gnats play up and down to frequently in those Countries under the Pole, this is the chief Reaton, Because there are no Flitter-Mice that use to prey upon these and such like Insects in the night, because of the continual light night and day, that can remain there: nor any other birds of the night that fly from the light of the Sun; vet there are some deputed by Nature to gather up Flies and Gnats for food, But as they appear to receive increase suddenly from corruption; to one tharp blast makes them commonly vanish prefently; for when they want food, they fly to their Native putrifaction to feed and there they confume.

CHAP. III. COLLOSIGE

Of Bees, and sheir Food,

THE Northern Countries abound with very many things, as well necessary, as superfluous, to communicate to other Nations for their use: so by a singular providence of Nature, they have great plenty of honey, and they take great care always, and in all places, about their Bees, that they may be kept clean and prosper. But when they take the honey out of the Hives, the Custome of the Nation is to leave so much behind for the young Bees, as may be thought sufficient to keep them all the Winter; namely two parts, because in Winter, and beginning of the Spring, before flowers appear, they chiefly live of honey, bruited Figs and Raysins. But because those things are fortain commodities, and are but seldome found, honey is lest them for their principal food; and because it costs less than the former, yet when Necessity compels, in place of honey, they use bruised Beans, Pease, Cakes made of Poppy, and Wheat-meal, moystned with Metheglin, and with flesh also of Pullets new slain, broken into very small parts, to feed them.

CHAP. IV.

Of Honey, and the proof of it.

There is great abundance of Honey in the North Countries, as Plisy testifies, that the Northern Combs are greater than others are; and he gives for an example a Comb that was seen eight foot long. But there are far longer found in Podolia, a Land subject to the King of Poland: where Bees, by reason of the rich Patture, sweet Smell, pleasant Taste, fill great Caves, in the dry ground, sull of Honey-Combs loaded with Honey; so that huge Bears salling into such Caves, are choaked with eating too much honey; and hence it is, that so many great ships of the Eastern Countries, sull of Wax, are dispersed into all Europe: The Wax indeed they send to the Coasts near them: But they keep the honey for themselves

B. Alla.

top of the

or Red-

May Wiga

ad Rame ;

&-Lice are

qa mmd

atteimo

troythem

kry feet

In those o Flitter-

nie of the

rds of the Name 2 teale lodinith pre-

leed and

eceffary,

by a fin-

he great can and

e Nui-

creat to

gloning les and

eldome

els thin

bruned

ferher.

go leed

y teffises for found of the d, foll o fach many

nes for

felves in great abundance for all manner of nies especially for all kind of drinks, because they want Wine, as I shewed before, Lib. 13. After the Summer Solitice therefore, as the best honey is gathered, (excellent above the rest) to in those Countries they keep it in its purity, without fraud or deceit; though when it is once transported beyond Seas, it is adulterated by the unfatiable Covetousnesse of the Merchants. Honey that is githered after the Solidices, is to wholefome, that it is not onely used for some Meats, Bread, and Drink, but for Sawce for Meats also, and is kept for the most chosse Physicks. Because in the Northern Countries, there are very few Physitians; but there is wholelome Ayr, wholesome Food and Honey-drink; and these are their best Physick. This the older it is after it is boyled, namely fix or twelve years old, the more firing it is found to be used as a Remedy for many Dileales.

Of Ans.

THE Northern Countries have Ants of many kinds, some with Wings, and tome without. The great ones, and fuch as have Wings, dwell in Houses in Defarts, which they make of the Capillary leaves of Pine-trees, and lometimes of Firr-trees, and Sticks, heaped up into great heaps. The Bears when they irch in their Noies do mightily trouble their Ants, but they foon get away from them, left they should carry some of them home to their own Dens, which sometimes breeding there in great multitudes, may drive them out of their own houles. Moreover, they make their Nests on high Towers of Churches, and in fair Orchards of Kings; where sometimes they are observed to denotate the shortnesse of the Reign of Kings, by a wonderful Omen, namely that Kings shall be killed by the common people, or driven forth of their Kingdoms. But when any fuch montrous thing is near at hand, then the smaller Pismires, moved by the Injuries of the greater, ascend up into some old Tree, commonly a Pear-tree, where the great ones refide, and that in great multitudes to revenge their wrongs, and there they fight a fierce battail with them; and they are resolved never to give over, though on both sides multitudes of them fall dead from the leaves of the trees, until they have conquered the great ones, and got their bonfes from them. This kind of Wonder was observed to have hapned in two places, Anno 1521. namely at Upfal, and Holm, when the King of Denmark, Christiernas the 2d, was driven forth of the Kingdoms of the Goths and Sweens, by the Inhabitants of Sweden, and spoiled of all his Fortunes. For such creatures being of no effect, if they be provoked by injuries are invincible, and will cruelly revenge themselves, and are thought to be no other than prodigious Messengers of the angry God, and fignifie no good by their Battails. There are also red Pilmires, small; that with their piss will raise a most hurrful tingling; and these are called venomous by the Northern people, and they dwell in hills in the fields. But this kind of Pismire, for his continual labour, feems nothing behind the others I spake of before; for he will also leave the print of his way upon the hard flint. There is great their event of the control of the co

newex indeed they fend to the Could near than I for they keep the honey for

chart to be the first wind of CHAP. VIOCETTO STATE OF THE Of Pearls, and the Generation of them.

T Hat I may not leave untouched, the delicate matter of Pearls, after that I have spoken of fish, I must first say, that in the Northern Countries there are some Rivers that bring forth Jewels; because they produce Shell-fish; out of , whole shels are taken white Pearls, though they be pale by reason of the cold Ayr. For that Ayr mingled with Dew, about the middle of August, descends into the thei-fifh, and gives the cause that Dear's suddenly come to perfection. These, when they are taken forth, serve in the North parts for an Ornament, and are held to be dear; and when they are fet in dire-orders hey thing very finely, and with the illustration of Bawds, for beauty, this brightness is increased. And these also bring the more splendid oriental pearls in creat number to the Northern coasts, especially for the use, or rather abuse of the Noble-women, and of women sometimes of the common fort, who delight in such or maments as Frarities, and they use them in Coronets, Bracelets, Ornaments soreheir shoulders, and coverings for their heads. Yet no Woman there, how hoble footer the he, was ever feen to wear Pearls or Jewels in her ears, to avoid a greater dilgrace; as if God; the Author of Nature, had not given to every part its comeline's and grace; but that they must borrow some lustre and handsomeness from contemptible Worms, their No 22 do might by trouble theleft ore, backbey been get to be from them; lest they their desiry one of their liquid to their civin D mawhire lomerimes

breeding they in great contiguetes, may drive them out of their out hander. Moreover, they make their Nells on high Towers of thus hes, and in his Or-

Asoleover they where emeritare they make that Kiner inch be liked to the Keiga of Kings by a send that O the man forms Kiner inch be liked by the common people of diving than of their Kinerdoom. But when any hand a monditude in the desire in the desire in the day the liquest of the desire in the desire in the desire in the liquest of the desire of the desire in the liquest of the desire in the desire in the liquest of the desire in the desire in the liquest of the liquest

This kind of Wonder were the construction of the first state of the st

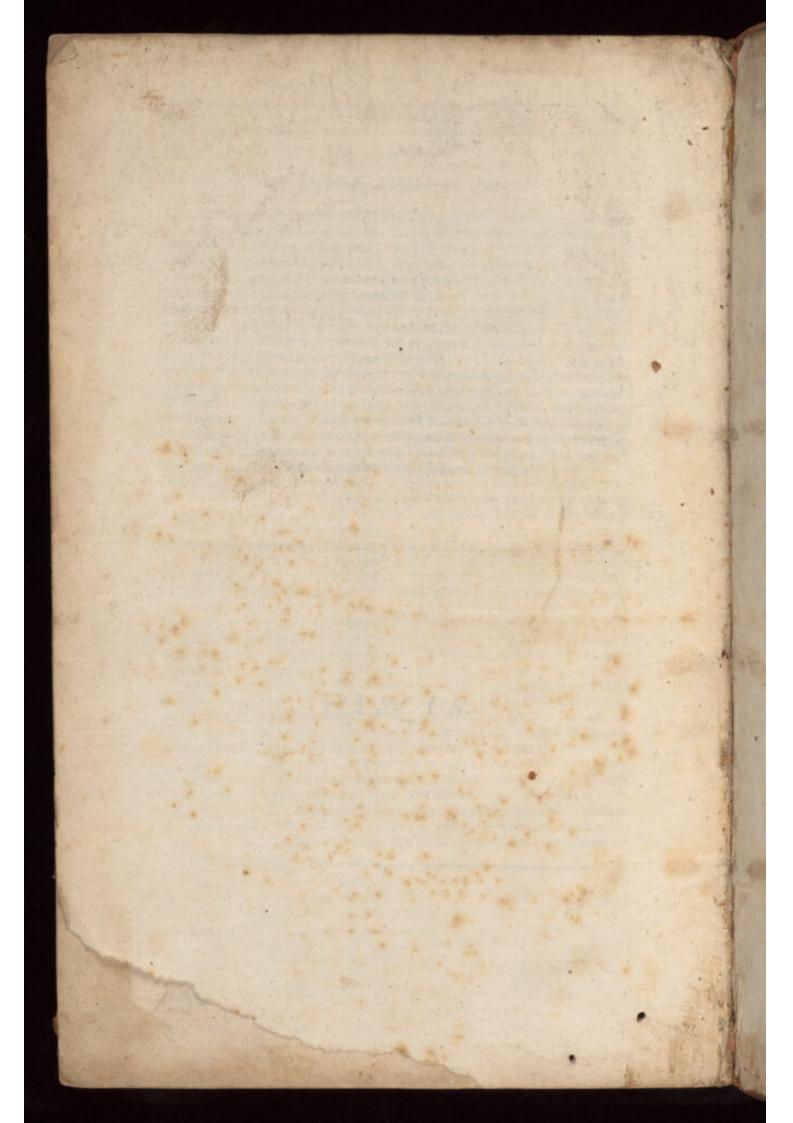
be proceed by injuries are incincib ound will cruelly received them elves, and

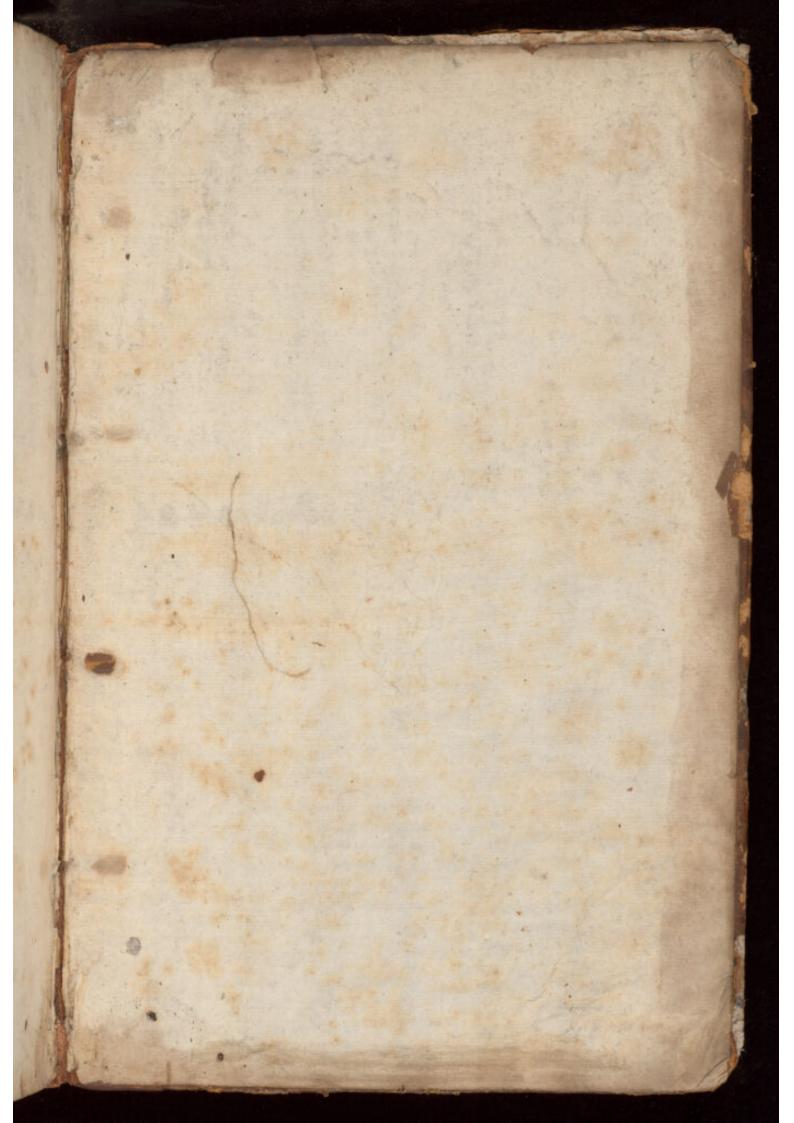
Charactines from a figure barral wall river - and about 10 of a lost to our on on both added multi Ruter of them foll deadfrom it electron of the court of them foll deadfrom it electron of the court o

are thou be no be no other than production bleft meters of she and not sent figuities o good by their Bertalla, There are able not I imise through that with their prewittene a most bortful tire ing; and their see called eromons by the Morthern people, and that I wall in bille in the fields. But this lind of Phi.

tor be will allo leave the print of his way agon the hard line.

Book XXX after that I entereste d out of or pre cold 032 2003 n. Trefe, date held andwith thelestio ero coaffs. nen fome. andthey coverings ericento heAmbor Control of the Contro A COLUMN TO THE PARTY OF THE PA

















A Compendious 0 Goths, Syvedes, & Vandals, AND Nations. calibrite colorchecker CLASSIC Wellcome Collection politan of harradantadantadantadantad 🗝 LONDON': Printed by J. Streater, and are to be fold by Humphrey Mofely, George Sambridge, Henry Twiford, Tho: Dring, John Place, and Henry Haringman, 1658.